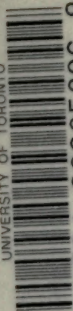


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 00905396 8

UNIV. OF  
TORONTO  
LIBRARY







BINDING LIST DEC 15 1924.











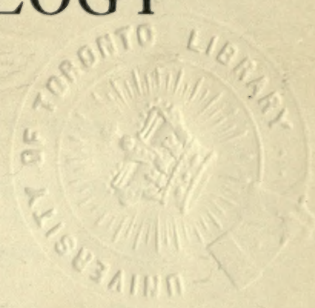




Handwritten marks at top left: a stylized 'P' with 'Harr.' and 'S' below it.

# University of California Publications in CLASSICAL PHILOLOGY

VOLUME V  
1918-1923



EDITORS

WILLIAM AUGUSTUS MERRILL  
HERBERT CHESTER NUTTING  
JAMES TURNER ALLEN  
IVAN MORTIMER LINFORTH



194010  
3.2.25

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA PRESS  
BERKELEY, CALIFORNIA





PA  
25  
C3  
V.5



## CONTENTS

---

- NUMBER 1.—Caesar's Use of Past Tenses in Cum-Clauses, by Herbert C. Nutting. Pages 1-53.
- NUMBER 2.—The Key to the Reconstruction of the Fifth Century Theater at Athens, by James Turney Allen. Pages 55-58.
- NUMBER 3.—The Death of Lepidus, Leader of the Revolution of 78 B.C., by Monroe E. Deutsch. Pages 59-68.
- NUMBER 4.—Notes on the *Silvae* of Statius, Book I, by William A. Merrill. Pages 69-83.
- NUMBER 5.—Notes on the *Silvae* of Statius, Book II, by William A. Merrill. Pages 85-100.
- NUMBER 6.—Notes on the *Silvae* of Statius, Book III, by William A. Merrill. Pages 101-116.
- NUMBER 7.—Notes on the *Silvae* of Statius, Book IV, by William A. Merrill. Pages 117-134.
- NUMBER 8.—The Supposed Autographa of John the Scot, by Edward Kennard Rand. Pages 135-141.
- NUMBER 9.—Lucretius and Cicero's Verse, by William A. Merrill. Pages 142-154.
- NUMBER 10.—Notes on the *Silvae* of Statius, Book V, by William A. Merrill. Pages 155-182.
- NUMBER 11.—Cicero's Conditional Clauses of Comparison, by H. C. Nutting. Pages 183-251.
- NUMBER 12.—The Lucretian Hexameter, I, by William A. Merrill. Pages 253-296.
- NUMBER 13.—The Lucretian Hexameter, II, by William A. Merrill. Pages 297-334.
- INDEX.—Pages 335-350.







## CAESAR'S USE OF PAST TENSES IN CUM-CLAUSES

BY

H. C. NUTTING

---

### I

A straightforward unbiased discussion of an individual author's usage in *cum*-clauses has been rendered very difficult by the comprehensive and more or less theoretical treatises that have been devoted to the subject in its larger aspects.

It is, to be sure, a topic that presents a most interesting historical problem. In early Latin the indicative is seen to be the regular construction with *cum* in all its meanings. Then the stream flows mostly underground for many years; when it emerges again into clear light in the time of Cicero, the tables are turned. It is now the subjunctive that has the right of way in the *cum*-clause, excepting within very narrow limits.

When the study of this problem was undertaken a generation or two ago, scholars were busy with attempts to solve the whole question of modal usage by discovering, for each mood, a separate and distinct "fundamental" meaning that would explain all the different uses of that mood. With this spirit in the air, it is easy to understand how it came about that an effort was made to settle the question of modal use in *cum*-clauses, in the same wholesale fashion, by arbitrarily assigning the category of absolute time to the indicative, and that of relative time to the subjunctive.



This was palpably a case of fitting facts to a theory; and it left room for a large advance in method in Professor Hale's acute historical study of modal usage in the *cum*-construction. Yet even he seems not to have shaken himself free from the *a priori* assumption that the solution of the problem must be sweeping and clear-cut—that the goal of the study is to find everywhere a hard and fast line of demarcation between the meaning of indicative and subjunctive in *cum*-clauses.

According to Hale's theory, as is well known, the *cum*-clause tended to follow the line of development of the *qui*-clause, the indicative originally used in the *cum*-clause giving way in favor of a qualifying subjunctive that set forth the *circumstances* under which an event took place. With this as a beginning, it is assumed that the subjunctive proceeded to penetrate farther and farther into the *cum*-construction, but that its victorious progress was abruptly halted at an impassable gulf separating the purely temporal (determinative) *cum*-clauses from others, and that the indicative was thus left with a secure tenure in *cum*-clauses of the "date-determining" type.<sup>1</sup>

In an investigation undertaken under the warping influence of this *a priori* assumption, impartial examination of the evidence was not to be expected. Everywhere it is the aim, not to find out what a subjunctive *cum*-clause really means, but rather to devise some way of denying to it date-determining force. With no theory to defend, an investigator would not go far without meeting with subjunctive date-determining *cum*-clauses in plenty, e.g.:

Cic. in Cat. iii. 3. 6: *Ipsi comprehensi ad me, cum iam dilu-  
cesceret, deducuntur.*

This sentence will be recognized as referring to the episode in which the Allobroges figured. Cicero has mentioned just above that the actual arrest took place near the end of the third watch

<sup>1</sup> In the Latin of the Ciceronian period, Professor Hale finds but a single case in which he is willing to admit that the subjunctive penetrated into a purely temporal (determinative) *cum*-clause, namely, *Caelius apud Cic. ad Fam. viii. 1.2* (see the *Cum-Constructions*, II, 207ff.).



("tertia fere vigilia exacta"), and he now adds the information that the prisoners reached his house "just at daybreak."

In view of this succession of "dates," it surely is riding a hobby rather hard to insist that the *cum*-clause has not date-determining force. If the theory is to be saved, it must be assumed that Cicero is proceeding as if with a *qui*-clause, and that he means to say "[at a time] such that day was now breaking." This method of interpretation simply begs the whole question. Cf. also the following:

Cic. *Tuso. Disp.* ii. 14. 34: Spartae vero pueri ad aram . . . verberibus accipiuntur, . . . nonnumquam etiam, ut, *cum* ibi *essem*, audiebam, ad necem.

Here it is hard to see how *cum* can mean anything else than *eo tempore quo*, which Professor Hale regards as the distinguishing mark of the date-determining *cum*-clause.

But why enter upon a discussion of this subject with a mind prejudiced by the gratuitous assumption that the goal of the study is to find a clear-cut line of demarcation between the meaning of the indicative cases and the subjunctive cases? When once the subjunctive had begun to invade the *cum*-construction, it is wholly unreasonable to assume that its further progress was marked by leaps and bounds that everywhere left a clear line of division between the two moods. This is not the way a modal shift takes place; rather, two forms come into competition as the expression of an identical thought. For a time the two forms are used side by side; then one is retired in favor of the other.<sup>2</sup> Doubtless the conquest of the *cum*-clause by the subjunctive proceeded in this same fashion, with a constantly shifting middle

<sup>2</sup> The process is illustrated in a very interesting way by the tense shift in conditional sentences of the present contrary-to-fact variety. In early Latin the imperfect subjunctive is invading the realm of the present subjunctive, which previously had been the accepted form for the expression of that type of thought. It is perfectly clear that Plautus used the two forms side by side *with the same meaning*, as is shown in the *Classical Review*, XV, 51 ff. Later the present subjunctive was rapidly retired, leaving the imperfect tense in practically undisputed possession of the field. See "The Unreal Conditional Sentence in Plautus," *American Jour. Philol.*, XXII, 297ff., and "The Unreal Conditional Sentence in Cicero," *ibid.*, XXVIII, 1ff.

ground in which both moods were used for the expression of an identical idea.

Approached from this point of view, Ciceronian examples like those cited above present not the slightest difficulty. For unprejudiced examination of the *cum*-clauses using the imperfect and pluperfect tenses cannot fail to show that the various meanings, so far as the context defines them, shade off into one another by indistinguishable gradations, and, in particular, that there is no sharp line of division between the purely temporal use and its nearest neighbors. Once fairly launched upon its career of conquest in the *cum*-construction, there was absolutely no bar to the spread of the use of the subjunctive to any class of *cum*-clauses using the two tenses mentioned.

Whatever the influence which, in early Latin, caused the subjunctive to begin the invasion of the *cum*-construction, the circumstance that pressed hardest upon the linguistic consciousness of writers of the Ciceronian period must have been the fact that it was becoming "fashionable" to use the subjunctive in *cum*-clauses when the imperfect and pluperfect tenses were chosen. That the purely temporal group should thus ultimately become a middle ground for the use of two moods is in no way surprising; indeed it may be hardly more significant than the fact that, in English, fashion has not yet quite settled the question whether we should use *-ise* or *-ize* as the termination of certain verbs.

## II

The strife has been so keen regarding the rival theories of modal usage in the *cum*-construction that it is hardly to be expected that an explanation so tame and commonplace as the one above proposed will at once appeal to the reader who expects a sensation whenever this subject is reopened. But before summary rejection of this explanation, it may be well to consider the following facts touching Caesar's usage.

Caesar has occasion to use the imperfect and pluperfect



tenses in *cum*-clauses more than four hundred times. In this total, aside from certain clauses of iterative action (in which both moods are used to a certain extent), there is just *one* clear case of the use of the indicative:

*B. G. i. 40. 5: Factum eius hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, cum Cimbris et Teutonis a C. Mario pulsus non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritus videbatur.*

Even this solitary case has not passed unchallenged; for, curiously enough, the *cum*-clause is subordinate in indirect discourse. On this ground Meusel regards the reading as impossible, and, in his late revision of the Kraner-Dittenberger text,<sup>3</sup> brackets *cum* and all the rest of the sentence after the word *pulsus*. Aside from this passage, there are three doubtful cases:

*B. C. i. 58. 2: Quoad licebat latiore uti spatio, producta longius acie circumvenire nostros aut pluribus navibus adoriri singulas . . . contendebant; cum propius erat ventum, necessario ab scientia gubernatorum . . . ad virtutem montanorum confugiebant.*

The meaning is not absolutely clear, but editors generally agree that the action of the *cum*-clause is iterative.

*B. G. vii. 35. 5: Cum iam ex diei tempore coniecturam ceperat in castra perventum, . . . pontem reficere coepit.*

In this passage there is good manuscript authority for reading either *ceperat* or *caperet*. The latter reading is favored in recent editions.

*B. C. ii. 17. 4: Postea vero cum Caesarem ad Massiliam detineri [Varo] cognovit, . . . de angustiis ad Ilerdam rei frumentariae accepit, atque haec ad eum elatius atque inflatius Afranius perscribat, se quoque ad motum Fortunae movere coepit.*

This complicated *cum*-clause, in which the writer, after using the perfect indicative twice, trails off into the imperfect indicative, supplies no decisive material for the present purpose. Moreover, "*postea . . . cum [quom]*" is commonly regarded as a corruption of "*postea . . . quam,*" which would introduce aptly the perfect indicatives which come first in the clause.

<sup>3</sup> Wiedmann, 1913.

Aside from clauses of iterative action, then, Caesar's use of the imperfect and pluperfect indicative in *cum*-clauses is confined to one clear case and three doubtful cases. The obvious inference is that in Caesar's writings the subjunctive has penetrated into *every* type of *cum*-clause natural to these tenses. The only escape from this conclusion would be to fly to the desperate expedient of asserting that the absence of the indicative in *cum*-clauses using the imperfect and pluperfect tenses is due to the fact that Caesar has no occasion to write "purely temporal" clauses requiring those tenses.

If this were the case, we should certainly expect that he would avail himself freely of *cum* with the perfect indicative to secure at least some "purely temporal" *cum*-clauses of the past. But this is exactly what he does *not* do; for, except for three cases of *cum primum* and *cum inversum*, Caesar's use of the perfect indicative with *cum* is confined almost entirely to sentences of general import, "*present general*" type, describing the customs of the Gauls, Germans and Britons. Indeed, in the whole range of the Gallic and Civil Wars there is just *one* undisputed case of the perfect indicative used in a plain straightforward purely temporal *cum*-clause of the past namely, *B. G.* vi. 12. 1.<sup>4</sup>

Every presumption, therefore, is in favor of the view that while in the writings of Cicero the subjunctive and the indicative were coming to be used on an equal footing in purely temporal *cum*-clauses requiring the imperfect and pluperfect tenses, Caesar's usage shows a still further development—namely, that the completing indicative has been all but eliminated in these tenses, thus leaving the subjunctive in practically undisputed possession, excepting in cases where the action is iterative. To escape this conclusion, probably few would care to go to the

<sup>4</sup> Strictly, even in this passage the form of the verb is ambiguous (*venit*), but the context seems to define the tense as perfect. A second case is preserved in Cicero's correspondence (*ad Att.* x. 8. b. 1). In *B. C.* ii. 17. 4 the reading should, perhaps, be "*Postea . . . quam*," as noted above, and the meaning is not purely temporal; so in *B. C.* iii. 87. 7, where some editors question the manuscript reading.



length of asserting that, in the course of his two long historical treatises, Caesar had practically no occasion to use purely temporal *cum*-clauses in any past tense whatsoever.<sup>5</sup>

### III

Probably no other author is more used as a model for the writing of Latin than Caesar; and thus far dire confusion has resulted from attempting to teach his usage in *cum*-clauses from the point of view of an *a priori* theory as to the previous history of the construction. A "grand division" made up of "purely temporal *cum*-clauses using past tenses of the indicative" is a mere figment of the imagination, so far as Caesar's writings are concerned. And, to make a bad matter worse, very few students who attempt to use the orthodox rules have any clear conception of the difference of meaning which the terms *circumstantial* and *temporal* are designed to mark.

What the earlier history of the construction was we do not certainly know. Whatever it was, it seems clear from the facts above cited that Caesar, at any rate, in his writing of the *cum*-clause was not dominated by the feeling that he was everywhere dealing with a *relative* construction.<sup>6</sup> That he occasionally used *cum* as a relative word is perhaps true; but this sporadic use may be little more significant than the occasional relative use of other conjunctions and adverbs, such as *cur*, *quo* and *ubi*—a phenomenon encountered in the writings of authors of every period.

In the present investigation the fact is frankly recognized that the shift from the indicative to the subjunctive is a prac-

---

<sup>5</sup> Upon this forlorn hope Professor Hale himself opens a withering fire when he insists more than once (*Cum-Constructions*, II, 195 and 254) that *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, etc., with the perfect indicative are not equivalent to purely temporal *cum*-clauses, but rather are convertible into qualifying *cum*-clauses. If purely temporal clauses of the past are to be found neither in the *cum*-construction nor here, it may be asked: Where are they to be found?

<sup>6</sup> In this connection it is interesting to note that in Caesar's writings *cum* seldom has an antecedent. Even so conventional an "antecedent" as *tum* is cited but twice (*B. C.* i. 79. 3 and *apud Cic. ad Att.* x. 8. b. 1).

tically accomplished process in Caesar's *cum*-clauses requiring the use of the imperfect and pluperfect tenses. The sentences are considered objectively, and an attempt is made to determine the meaning of each case in the light of the context.

In such a quest as this it is of course true that no two investigators could ever be found who would classify in exactly the same way the hundreds of examples of past tenses in the *cum*-clauses of Caesar. But it is possible to single out the outstanding uses and to show, in a general way at least, what their relative frequency is. This, with incidental comment, is the programme of the present paper.

#### A. THE IMPERFECT AND PLUPERFECT TENSES

##### CLASS 1. THE CAUSAL USE

In the discussion of the *cum*-clause, it is customary to treat under the heading *causal* both those sentences which state a ground and inference, and those which deal with a cause and effect. The difference between the two types is illustrated in the two following English sentences:

- (1) Since two and two are four, four and four are eight.
- (2) Since the water was used up, they broke camp and withdrew.

Among Caesar's *cum*-clauses of the past there is to be found hardly a case of the ground-and-inference variety. This is due, of course, to the non-speculative character of the *Commentaries*.

The cause-and-effect type is itself of two varieties, and these again may be illustrated by English sentences:

- (1) The enemy are retreating, because they have been outflanked.
- (2) Since the roads were well guarded, [it resulted that] no one could leave the city.

In the first of these examples the causal clause is explanatory and static; it merely answers the question *why*? In the other sentence the causal clause is *forward-moving*, i.e., it deals with a situation that *results* in something else.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>7</sup> In the case of conditional sentences, an analogous difference has been marked by the names *Proviso Period* and *Consequence Period*. See "The Order of Conditional Thought, and the Modes of Conditional Thought," *Amer. Jour. Philol.*, XXIV, 25ff., 149ff., and 278ff.



The forward-moving clause necessarily precedes the main clause upon which it is grammatically dependent, but an explanatory causal clause may either follow or precede. In the absence of a perfectly clear context, therefore, it may not be possible to assign definitely to one category or the other a *cum*-clause that precedes the main clause. But most of Caesar's causal *cum*-clauses of the past appear to be of the explanatory order. As a matter of fact, the distinction between the two types would call for no special mention here, were it not that the forward-moving type is somewhat more closely related than the explanatory type to the class of *cum*-clauses next to be considered.

Before passing to this next class, a slight peculiarity of a few of Caesar's purely causal *cum*-clauses should be noted. Contrast the two following sentences:

*B. C. iii. 1. 2:* His rebus confectis, *cum* fides tota Italia esset angustior neque creditae pecuniae solverentur, [Caesar] constituit ut arbitri darentur.

*B. G. vii. 6. 1:* His rebus in Italiam Caesari nuntiatis, *cum* iam ille urbanas res virtute Cn. Pompei commodiorem in statum pervenisse intellegeret, in Transalpinam Galliam profectus est.

The first of these sentences shows no peculiarity, but in the second passage the *cause* of Caesar's march northward is the receipt of alarming news from beyond the Alps, while the *cum*-clause deals merely with a circumstance that *set him free* to go. For other cases thus peculiar see *B. G. i. 42. 4, iii. 1. 6; B. C. iii. 34. 2, 45. 3, and 101. 1* ("esset divisa"). A tentative estimate for the whole causal group shows the following totals:

Subjunctive: Imperfect, 50;<sup>8</sup> pluperfect, 10. Indicative: 0.

#### CLASS 2. THE MOTIVATING USE

The nature of this use can be seen most clearly against the background of a causal *cum*-clause of the explanatory or static type, e.g.:

<sup>8</sup> In conformity with the usual practice, each *verb* is counted, i.e., a *cum*-clause containing two verbs is counted twice, etc.

*B. G. v. 57. 1:*<sup>9</sup> [Indutiomarus] pronuntiat . . . se . . . castra Labieni oppugnaturum. . . . Labienus, *cum* et loci natura et manu munitissimis castris sese *teneret*, de suo ac legionis periculo nihil timebat.

Here is a little story made up of three items. Stripped of their present syntactical dress, they appear as follows: (1) Indutiomarus planned to attack Labienus; (2) Labienus was not concerned; (3) he was strongly fortified.

In this series, there is a sharp break between items 1 and 2 because of their antithetical character. On the other hand, items 2 and 3 cohere very closely. These relations Caesar has brought out in a simple and direct way by assigning main clauses to the contrasted items 1 and 2, bringing in 3 as an explanatory causal *cum*-clause attached to the second main clause.<sup>10</sup>

In such a series, the essential elements are the main clauses representing items 1 and 2, whereas the causal *cum*-clause is a more or less optional tag; in many cases its omission would not disturb at all the continuity of the story. In the motivating use of the *cum*-clause there is a very different situation, e.g.:

*B. G. vi. 2. 2:* [Treveri] finitimos Germanos sollicitare . . . non desistunt. *Cum* a proximis impetrare non *possent*, ultiores temptant.

This again is a little story of three items: (1) The Treveri continue to solicit the near-by Germans; (2) their efforts are not crowned with success; (3) they turn their attention to the more remote Germans.

Here, however, there is a uniform movement from one end of the series to the other, each item, as it is added, revealing a new development in the progress of the action; and, so far as development of the action is concerned, each item is coördinate with the others. But Caesar has chosen to assign main clauses to

<sup>9</sup> The citation by chapter and paragraph is always for the sentence of which the *cum*-clause is a part. For example, in this passage a sentence from chapter 56 is prefixed to bring in the context.

<sup>10</sup> For the position in the sentence of the attached explanatory causal clause cf. Sallust, *B. C.* 46. 4: Consul Lentulum, quod praetor erat, ipse manu tenens perducit.



items 1 and 3, arbitrarily apportioning to item 2 the *grammatically* subordinate rôle of a motivating *cum*-clause.

Serving thus as a *link* that carries forward the action (just as a coördinate clause might do), the function of a motivating *cum*-clause is not inaptly described by the French term *l'enchaînement*. It is as if a child had set on end a row of narrow blocks. Push over the first block, and it falls against another, which in turn overthrows a third, etc. So in the description of the onward march of events, a motivating *cum*-clause advances the narrative a step, thus *leading up* to the next development in the action. To omit the *cum*-clause would break the thread of the story, just as the removal of one block would disorganize the experiment just referred to.

In this particular the motivating *cum*-clause stands in sharp contrast to causal *cum*-clauses of the explanatory or static type, which, as above noted, might often be omitted without disturbing in any way the course of the story. Somewhat less pronounced is the distinction between it and the forward-moving type of causal *cum*-clause; but even here there are two points of difference: (1) a forward-moving causal *cum*-clause is not a new *link* in a *homogeneously* related series, and (2) while a motivating *cum*-clause does *lead up* to the next development in a series, the relation between the two items need not be that of full-rounded cause and effect; it is enough that one action *lead on* to another. The term "motivating" is designed to cover this latitude in the degree of causal connection.

Even in cases where careful analysis would show a strong cause-and-effect relation, attention seems to be distracted from the presence of this relation by the fact that it is the chief function of a motivating clause to carry on the thread of the story. Hence it is, perhaps, that even when a strong cause-and-effect connection might thus be made out, we are abundantly content to render *cum* by a colorless, continuative "when," which fits well with the notion of sequence that is inseparably attached to the description of a train of events.

The problem of the motivating *cum*-clause is manifestly stylistic as well as syntactical. In Caesar's *Commentaries* there are endless series of events to describe. Had he always chosen coördinate clauses for this purpose, the monotony would have been unendurable. The charm of his style is due in part to the skill with which he handles his motivating devices, prominent among which are the *cum*-clause and the ablative absolute. Note the variety of expression in the following description of a series of events:

B. G. iv. 15. 1: Germani, post tergo clamore audito, *cum* suos interfici *viderent*, armis abiectis . . . , se ex castris eiecerunt.

Here are four items that might have been represented by coördinate clauses: (1) The Germans hear a shout in the rear; (2) they [look back and] see their friends falling; (3) they throw away their arms; (4) they dash out of the camp. The motivating clauses give flexibility to the passage, while yet steadily carrying forward the thread of the story. The correct understanding of periods of this sort often is not to be reached through formal grammatical analysis, e.g.:

B. C. iii. 22. 2: Interim Milo, . . . quos ex aere alieno laborare arbitrabatur, sollicitabat. Apud quos *cum* proficere nihil *posset*, quibusdam solutis ergastulis, Compsam in agro Hirpino oppugnare coepit.

In this passage, too, there are four items: (1) Milo tried to enlist debtors; (2) in this attempt he failed; (3) he secured a following by liberating slaves; (4) he utilized his force to attack Compsa.

Formal grammar would probably rule that the *cum*-clause representing item 2 "modifies" the main clause representing item 4. But, from the point of view of logic, the *cum*-clause (2) motivates the ablative absolute (3), and, had he so chosen, Caesar might have written: *Apud quos cum proficere nihil posset, quaedam ergastula solvit*, etc." To drop the ablative absolute out of the motivating series would leave between 2 and 4 an impassable gap and make nonsense of the passage. Whatever the formal grammatical analysis, it is clear that the logical



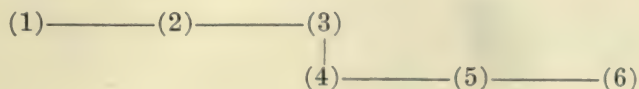
connection of the *cum*-clause is with the ablative absolute, and not with the phrase which Caesar has chosen to make the "main clause."

In the following passage, which concentrates into a single sentence the action of a whole episode, the varied combination of motivating devices is particularly noteworthy:

B. G. iii. 22. 4: *Adiatunnus eruptionem facere conatus, clamore ab ea parte munitionis sublato, cum ad arma milites cucurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen uti eadem deditionis condicione uteretur a Crasso impetravit.*

In this passage there are six items: (1) A. attempts a sortie; (2) an alarm is raised at the threatened point; (3) the soldiers rush to arms; (4) there is an obstinate fight; (5) A. is driven back into the town; (6) he is allowed to surrender on terms previously offered. Here, too, formal grammatical analysis would only work havoc. Logically, the *cum*-clause motivates *repulsus in oppidum*; and it seems to be this latter phrase that evokes *tamen* in (6). The sentence is built piece by piece as it goes along; and only by approaching it from that point of view can it be rationally analyzed.

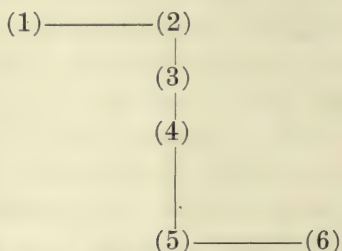
It often happens, particularly when the pluperfect tense is used, that a motivating *cum*-clause has more than one verb. This is true of the example last cited; and it is worth noting there that the verb actions of the *cum*-clause do not bear an equally direct relation to *repulsus in oppidum*; rather the rush to arms (3) motivates (leads up to) the long fight (4), and it is the latter that issues directly in the repulse of Adiatunnus. In other words, there is a closely knit motivating series of two members within the *cum*-clause itself. Using the numbers above assigned to the items of the story, the sentence might be plotted as follows, the vertical column showing the elements of the *cum*-clause:



A much more striking illustration is afforded by the following passage, in which the *cum*-clause begins with a closely knit motivating series of three, and then, with the help of an annexing *atque*, is stretched to take in an element corresponding to *repulsus in oppidum* of the passage last discussed:

B. G. i. 27. 2: Helvetii . . . legatos de deditione ad eum miserunt. Qui *cum* eum in itinere *convenissent*, seque ad pedes *proiecissent*, suppliciterque locuti flentes pacem *petissent*, atque eos in eo loco, quo tum essent, suum adventum expectare *iussisset*, paruerunt.

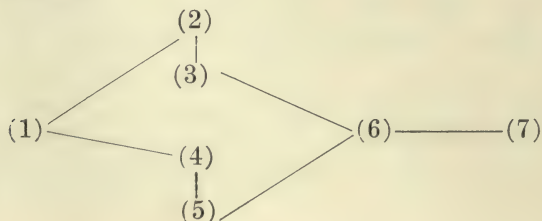
Plotted in the same way, with the elements of the *cum*-clause represented by the vertical column, this period would take the following form :



In the passage next to be considered the initial item of the series motivates in two directions, setting in motion two closely knit series, which ultimately unite to carry on the thread of the story:

B. G. v. 26. 3: [Hostes] magna manu ad castra oppugnanda venerunt. *Cum* celeriter nostri arma cepissent vallumque ascendissent, atque una ex parte Hispanis equitibus emissis equestri proelio superiores fuissent, desperata re hostes suos ab oppugnatione reduxerunt.

Note again the presence of the annexing *atque* as the *cum*-clause is enlarged to take in a second motivating series. The plot of the passage follows:

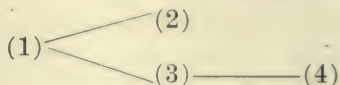




The following example has a somewhat similar plot, but it lacks any closely knit motivating series:

*B. C. iii. 31. 4: Legiones equitesque ex Syria [Scipio] deduxerat. Summamque in sollicitudinem ac timorem Parthici belli provincia cum venisset, ac nonnullae militum voces cum audirentur sese, contra hostem si ducerentur, ituros, contra civem et consulem arma non laturos, deductis . . . in locupletissimas urbes in hiberna legionibus, maximas largitiones fecit et confirmandorum militum causa diripiendas his civitates dedit.*

Here again the initial item motivates in two directions, i.e., the withdrawal of the troops from Syria both alarmed the province and roused opposition among the soldiers themselves. But the first of these lines of development is left hanging in mid air, so to speak, while the other carries forward the thread of the story.<sup>11</sup> These relations may be represented as follows:



In one or two passages Caesar goes a step farther than this, and, through a process of annexation,<sup>12</sup> extends a motivating *cum*-clause by attaching a really extraneous element, and uses the latter as the link to carry forward the story. This procedure is likely to lead to an ending of the sentence that disappoints the expectation roused by the first part of the *cum*-clause, e.g.:<sup>13</sup>

*B. G. ii. 13. 2: [Caesar] in deditionem Suessiones accepit, exercitumque in Bellovacos ducit. Qui cum se suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent atque ab eo oppido Caesar cum exercitu circiter milia passuum V abesset, omnes maiores natu ex oppido egressi manus ad Caesarem tendere . . . coeperunt.*

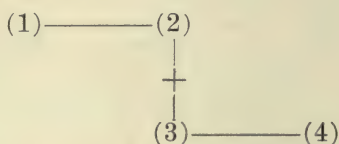
When Caesar invades the territory of the Bellovaci, and they retire in good order to a strong town, the reader expects to hear

<sup>11</sup> Observe once more the annexing *atque* (*ac*), here reinforced by a second *cum*.

<sup>12</sup> With the help again of *atque*.

<sup>13</sup> In this passage the appended element, while motivating, has also another aspect that marks its place as in the group next to be taken up (Class 3). This additional feature has nothing to do with the matter of sentence architecture which is under discussion at this point.

next of preparations for the defense of the city. But the even swing of the period is interrupted at this juncture by the rather violent stretching of the *cum*-clause to include the extraneous item regarding Caesar's arrival at a point about five miles distant, this latter item motivating an inglorious issue, namely, the surrender of the town without a blow. The graphic representation takes the following form:



The interpretation of the following example is not altogether certain; but it seems to be of the same nature as the preceding:

*B. C. iii. 93. 1: Sed nostri milites, dato signo, cum infestis pilis procucurrissent atque animadvertissent*<sup>14</sup> non concurrere a Pompeianis, usu periti . . . sua sponte cursum represserunt.

The expectation roused by the forward dash of Caesar's troops does not prepare the reader for the dead halt at the end of the sentence, especially as this passage follows immediately upon a chapter in which Caesar has digressed to point out that maximum efficiency is secured by allowing soldiers to go into battle on the run. Both here and in the passage last discussed it would seem that a more logical form of expression might have been secured by recognizing the extraneous character of the final item crowded into the *cum*-clause and giving it separate treatment; for example, this second passage might have been made to read: "Sed nostri milites, dato signo, infestis pilis procucurrerunt; cum autem animadvertissent non concurrere a Pompeianis, usu periti . . . sua sponte represserunt cursum."<sup>15</sup>

<sup>14</sup> The situation here is the same as that described in footnote 13 above

<sup>15</sup> This tendency to crowding, with consequent incongruity of beginning and ending of a sentence, is rather marked in Caesar's writings, and it is by no means confined to passages containing *cum*-clauses: e.g., *B. G. vi. 12. 5*: "Qua necessitate adductus, Divitiacus auxilii petendi causa Romam ad senatum profectus infecta re redierat."



Many *cum*-clauses whose function is in part motivating fall within the group next to be taken up (Class 3). For the purely motivating *cum*-clause the estimated totals are as follows:

Subjunctive: Imperfect, 26; pluperfect, 47. Indicative, 0.

Before proceeding with the next class of *cum*-clauses, a word should be said parenthetically of a stylistic development that is not confined to the use of purely motivating *cum*-clauses, but which is so often illustrated by them that it is conveniently noticed here, namely, overlapping and resumption:

*B. G. i. 11. 2: Helvetii . . . in Haeduum fines pervenerant eorumque agros populabantur. Haedui cum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium.*

Inasmuch as the opening statement of this passage affirms that the Helvetians were overrunning the territory of the Haeduians, it goes without saying that the Haeduians were unable to cope with the invaders. The *cum*-clause, therefore, repeats or overlaps, at least to a certain extent, and advances the story but little. Such overlapping naturally imparts a resumptive force to a *cum*-clause. Cases with the imperfect subjunctive are not common, the most striking example being found in *B. G. i. 20. 5*. There the amount of intervening text renders resumption exceedingly natural.

When the pluperfect subjunctive is used, the situation is very different; for when an antecedent action is in question, overlapping and resumption are distinctly favored. In extreme cases the resumptive clause becomes little more than a purely stylistic ornament, as may be seen by comparing the three following sentences:

*B. C. i. 34. 1: In ulteriorem Galliam pervenit. Quo cum venisset, cognoscit missum in Hispaniam . . . P. Vibullium Rufum.*

*B. G. vii. 9. 4: Quam maximis potest itineribus Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus recentem equitatum, . . . in Lingones contendit.*

*B. C. i. 32. 1: Ipse ad urbem proficiscitur. Coacto senatu, iniurias inimicorum commemorat.*

In the first of these passages, the opening statement is resumed by a full *cum*-clause; in the second, the resumptive element has shrunk to the adverb *ibi*; and in the third there is no resumption whatever. As the thought of the three passages is quite parallel, the redundant character of the *cum*-clause in the first is obvious; for the last passage lacks nothing in clearness, though there is no resumption.<sup>16</sup>

The resumptive *cum*-clause as a stylistic device imparts a touch of precision that reminds one of the quaint exactness of a well kept record book of a hundred years ago. Rhetorically, it introduces a slight pause in the action, allowing the reader to draw his breath, so to speak, in anticipation of the next plunge forward. In general, Caesar is not a man to waste words; but he has a strong liking for resumptive clauses, especially when certain verbs can be employed. The elimination of his resumptive clauses would change his style strangely. Other cases with the verb *venio* follow:

*B. G. iv. 6. 2:* Ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo *cum venisset*, ea, quae fore suspicatus erat, facta cognovit.

*B. G. v. 1. 6:* Ipse . . . in Illyricum proficiscitur. . . . Eo *cum venisset*, civitatibus milites imperat.

*B. G. v. 2. 2:* Ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo *cum venisset*, . . . naves . . . invenit instructas.<sup>17</sup>

So, after a speech that is reported verbatim, there is apt to be a resumptive *cum*-clause with the verb *dico*, though the adverb *tum* would abundantly suffice for the full expression of the thought, e.g.:

*B. C. iii. 94. 6:* [Pompeius] se in castra equo contulit et . . . centurionibus . . . "Tuemini," inquit "castra et defendite diligenter . . ." Haec *cum dixisset*, se in praetorium contulit.<sup>18</sup>

### CLASS 3. THE COMPLEX-TEMPORAL USE

Under this head are included the cases in which the time element is an important feature, though some motivating, causal,

<sup>16</sup> So *B. G. v. 21. 4.*

<sup>17</sup> Cf. *B. G. v. 18. 2*, *vii. 7. 4*, *vii. 9. 5*, and *B. C. i. 16. 2.*

<sup>18</sup> Cf. *B. G. iv. 25. 4*, *v. 44. 3*; *B. C. iii. 87. 5*, *iii. 91. 4.*



or other force may be felt to intermingle more or less clearly. For example, when Caesar was besieging Alesia, the Gauls who were encamped outside his lines planned to surprise him; and of their choice of time Caesar says: "Adeundi tempus definiunt, cum meridies esse videatur," the interjection of the verb *videor* apparently indicating merely that the Gauls had no more exact method of determining the hour than by observing the position of the sun. Proceeding with the sequel, Caesar goes on to say:

*B. G. vii. 83. 8: Cum iam meridies adpropinquare videretur, ad . . . castra . . . [Vercassivellaunus] contendit; eodemque tempore equitatus ad campestris munitiones accedere et reliquae copiae pro castris sese ostendere coeperunt.*

Whatever of causal or motivating force may be found in the *cum*-clause of this passage, the fact remains that the temporal element is dominant. Note particularly in the second part of the sentence how, in referring back to the *cum*-clause, Caesar uses the phrase *eodem . . . tempore*.

The prevalence of the *a priori* theory that the *cum*-construction must be interpreted in terms of the *qui*-clause has tended to obscure the essentially temporal character of *cum*-clauses such as the one just cited. As a matter of fact, *cum lux appeteret* (*B. G. vii. 82. 2*<sup>19</sup>) is temporal in exactly the same degree as *solis occasu* (*B. G. i. 50. 3*); and in regard to the latter phrase, who would exert himself to show, by hair-splitting, that after all "the thought is not purely temporal"? However, the term complex-temporal is here employed in recognition of the fact that careful scrutiny may reveal in *cum*-clauses included under this heading some intermixture of causal, motivating, or other force.

#### a. IMPERFECT TENSE

In the cases using the imperfect subjunctive, the temporal element is not always of the same kind, but may mark either (1) time at which, or (2) time within which.

<sup>19</sup> Cited in full below.

1. *Time at which*

*B. G. ii. 2. 2:* Ipse, *cum primum* pabuli copia esse inciperet, ad exercitum venit.

*B. G. i. 26. 1:* Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. *Diutius cum* sustinere nostrorum impetus (hostes) non possent, alteri se . . . in montem receperunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt.

*B. G. vii. 82. 2:* Multis undique vulneribus acceptis nulla munitio perrupta, *cum lux appeteret*, veriti ne ab latere aperto . . . circumvenirentur, se ad suos receperunt.

In the second of these examples note particularly how the sharp contrast of *diutius cum* emphasizes the temporal aspect of the function of the clause.

2. *Time within which*

Under this heading the examples are not so clearly defined:

*B. C. iii. 15. 6:* Sed *cum essent* in quibus demonstravi angustias ac se Libo cum Bibulo *coniunxisset*, loquuntur ambo ex navibus . . . : velle se de maximis rebus cum Caesare loqui.

*B. C. i. 54. 1:* Cum in his angustias res *esset* atque omnes viae . . . *obsiderentur* nec pontes perfici *possent*, imperat militibus Caesar ut naves facerent.

In both these passages there is some complication arising from the length of the *cum*-clause. In each case the opening words suggest the time notion strongly, but this becomes less pronounced as subsequent phrases are added.

*B. G. iv. 12. 5:* Hic [Piso] *cum* fratri intercluso ab hostibus auxilium *ferret*, illum ex periculo eripuit, ipse equo vulnerato deiectus, quoad potuit, fortissime restitit.

This is part of a longer passage which is marked throughout by its peculiarity in the use of *cum*-clauses. In the sentence here quoted the force of the *cum*-clause seems held in suspense during the words "illum ex periculo eripuit," becoming more clearly defined as the following clause is reached.

## b. PLUPERFECT TENSE

In view of the normal force of this tense, it might be expected that the temporal element of the complex-temporal *cum*-



clauses using the pluperfect subjunctive would be of the "time *after* which" variety; but, in most cases at least, the conception seems to be rather that of time *at* which. Two or three examples are noted in which the normal tense force stands out with some clearness:

*B. G. v. 23. 5: Quas [naves] cum aliquamdiu Caesar frustra exspectasset, . . . necessario angustius milites conlocavit.*

*B. G. i. 26. 4: Diu cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt.*

The "time *at* which" notion, which is far more characteristic of this group, is most manifest in cases where a definitely indicated state of suspense or sustained effort is broken off,<sup>20</sup> the *cum*-clause marking the occasion of the break and utilizing the same to *date* the action of the main clause, e.g.:

*B. G. v. 32. 2: [Hostes] conlocatis insidiis . . . occulto loco . . . Romanorum adventum exspectabant; et cum se maior pars agminis in magnam convallem demisisset, ex utraque parte eius vallis subito se ostenderunt.*

The Gauls were waiting for a certain situation to develop; and, *as soon as* it did, they closed in suddenly. In other words, they closed in not merely *after* the situation had developed, but *immediately after* its development; so that the *cum*-clause really marks the point *at* which. Other cases of the *cum*-clause marking the stage at which an action occurs may be seen in the following examples:

*B. C. iii. 75. 4: Neque vero Pompeius . . . moram ullam ad insequendum intulit . . . neque [Caesarem] consequi potuit. . . Sed cum ventum esset ad flumen Genesum, quod ripis erat impeditis, consecutus equitatus novissimos proelio detinebat.*

*B. G. vii. 5. 4: Haedui . . . copias equitatus peditatusque . . . subsidio Biturigibus mittunt. Qui cum ad flumen Ligerim venissent, quod Bituriges ab Haeduis dividit, paucos dies ibi morati . . . domum revertuntur.*

*B. C. iii. 88. 1: Caesar cum Pompei castris appropinquasset, ad hunc modum aciem eius instructam animadvertit.*

<sup>20</sup> Cf. the situation in *B. G. i. 26. 1*, which was quoted in the discussion of the cases using the imperfect tense. Observe there the effect of the combination *diutius cum . . . non*.

In the great majority of the complex-temporal *cum*-clauses using the pluperfect tense the element combining with the temporal notion seems to be motivating in its character. And just as in the purely motivating group, here, too, the *cum*-clause not infrequently contains more than one verb, generally in a closely knit motivating series, e.g., *respexissent et vidissent, venissent et cognovissent, occupasset et munire coepisset*, etc.

In one passage the *cum*-clause is rather awkwardly extended (again with the help of an annexing *atque*), thus crowding into a single sentence material that might well have been shared between two:

*B. G. iv. 12. 6: [Piso] quoad potuit, fortissime restitit; cum circumventus multis vulneribus acceptis cecidisset atque id frater, qui iam proelio excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitato equo se hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.*

An interesting series of pluperfects is found in *B. C. iii. 21. 5*, which is perhaps causal in its affiliation; each item of the *cum*-clause is coördinate with the others, and each helps to account for the action noted in the main clause. A somewhat similar situation is found in *B. C. iii. 15. 6*; so perhaps also in *B. C. iii. 102. 7*.

For the whole motivating-temporal group the estimated totals are as follows:

Subjunctive: Imperfect, 55; pluperfect, 77. Indicative: Imperfect, 1;<sup>21</sup> pluperfect, 0.<sup>22</sup>

#### CLASS 4. THE TEMPORAL USE

At this point it should perhaps be said again that this investigation is not undertaken with any purpose of squaring with an

<sup>21</sup> *B. C. ii. 17. 4*, a peculiar and rather doubtful case. The imperfect is preceded in the *cum*-clause by two perfect indicatives; and *postea . . . quam* is plausibly conjectured for the received reading *postea . . . cum (quom)*. If included at all, the case belongs under this heading; for the elements of cause and time both clearly enter into the meaning.

<sup>22</sup> With the variant reading *ceperat*, *B. G. vii. 35. 5* also would belong to this group. There is another possible case in *B. C. i. 58. 2*; but the editors agree generally that the meaning is iterative, and the example is here included under that head (Class 4*b*).



*a priori* theory as to the forces which first led the subjunctive to invade the *cum*-construction. It is the aim here to treat the material objectively; and from that point of view complex-temporal passes over into purely temporal just as soon as a motivating, causal, or other complicating element can no longer be discerned. Contrast the two following sentences:

*B. C. ii. 7. 3: At ex reliquis una [navis] praemissa Massiliam, . . . cum iam appropinquaret urbi, omnis sese multitudo ad cognoscendum effudit.*

*B. G. iv. 28. 2: Quae [naves] cum appropinquarent Britanniae et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut. . . .*

In the first of these passages, it may be said that the near approach of the ship caused the throng to press out of the city to learn the news it was bringing. But in the other case the movement of the ships had nothing whatever to do with the sudden advent of the storm. The *cum*-clause tells merely *at what point* the storm broke.

#### a. IMPERFECT TENSE

##### 1. Time at which

*B. G. iii. 29. 2: Magno spatio paucis diebus confecto, cum iam pecus atque extrema impedimenta ab nostris tenerentur, ipsi densiores silvas peterent, eius modi sunt tempestates consecutae, uti. . . .*

*B. G. iii. 1. 1: Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Ser. Galbam cum legione duodecima . . . in Nantuatis misit. . . . Causa mittendi fuit quod iter per Alpes, quo magno cum periculo . . . mercatores ire consueverant, pateferi volebat.*

The second of these examples is specially interesting; for the *cum*-clause tells the *time* of the action of the main clause, and a separate sentence is appended to explain the *reason* for the action. In the two following passages the time is doubly defined:

*B. C. iii. 41. 5: Caesar, . . . parvam partem noctis itinere intermisso, mane Dyrrachium venit, cum primum agmen Pompei procul cerneretur, atque ibi castra posuit.*

*B. G. i. 22. 1: Prima luce, cum summus mons ab Labieno tenebatur, ipse [Caesar] ab hostium castris non longius MD passibus abesset. . . . Considius equo admisso ad eum accurrit, dicit. . . .*

2. *Time within which*

*B. C. ii. 36. 3: Haec cum agerentur, nuntii praemissi ab rege Iuba venerunt.*

*B. G. ii. 19. 5: Cum se illi [sc. Nervii] identidem in silvas ad suos recipere ac rursus ex silva in nostros impetum facerent, neque nostri longius . . . insequi auderent, interim legiones sex . . . castra munire coeperunt.*

*B. G. vii. 12. 4: Parte iam obsidum tradita, cum reliqua administrarentur, . . . equitatus hostium procul visus est.*

*B. G. i. 4. 3: Cum civitas ob eam rem incitata armis ius suum exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus cogerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.*

For the function of *haec cum agerentur* in the first of these passages, compare *dum ea geruntur* of *B. G. iv. 32. 1*. In the second example, note the presence of *interim* in the main clause.

## b. PLUPERFECT TENSE

As in the complex-temporal group, very few cases of simple "time *after* which" are to be found here. The clearest follows:

*B. G. iii. 2. 1: Cum dies hibernorum complures transissent frumentumque eo comportari iussisset, subito . . . certior factus est ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctu discessisse. . . . Id aliquot de causis acciderat.*<sup>23</sup>

The "time *at* which" notion is better attested; e.g.:

*B. C. i. 16. 2: [Caesar] Corfinium contendit. Eo cum venisset, cohortes V praemissae a Domitio . . . pontem . . . interrompebant.*

*B. C. iii. 26. 2: [C. Coponius] naves ex portu educit; et cum iam nostris remissiore vento adpropinquasset, idem Auster increbruit nostrisque praesidio fuit.*

The first of these examples is the clearer, telling, as it does, what was happening at the time *when* Caesar arrived. It is doubtless true that his *coming* motivated the attempt to break down the

<sup>23</sup> In *B. G. iii. 20. 1* there seems to be a case of anacoluthon, the phrase *cum . . . pervenisset* being left in suspense as the sentence develops in complexity.



bridge; but his *arrival* did not. For the whole temporal group the estimated totals are as follows:

Subjunctive: Imperfect, 39; pluperfect, 14.<sup>24</sup> Indicative, 0.

#### CLASS 4a. THE RELATIVE USE

It has already been noted that various conjunctions and adverbs sporadically assert their kinship to *qui* by displaying a full relative function; e.g.:

Cic. in *Cat.* i. 10. 26: Habes *ubi ostentes* tuam illam praeclaram patientiam famis, frigoris, inopiae rerum omnium.

Pliny, *Ep.* ii. 20. 9: Sufficiunt duae fabulae, an . . . tertiam possis? Est *unde fiat*.

Cic. *Cat. Mai.* 5. 15: Quattuor reperio causas, *cur* senectus misera videatur.

In the second sentence of this group, *unde* represents *ex* and the ablative of the relative—" (there is material) *out of which* to make it." In the third passage, *cur* replaces *quibus* or *propter quas*: " (four grounds) *on which* old age may seem wretched."

In view of the fact that this principle is found operative at all periods of the language, the rare cases in which Caesar may seem to use *cum* with relative force afford no presumptive evidence in favor of the view that the subjunctive in early Latin forced its way into the *cum*-construction along this route.

The relative use has here been made a sub-class of the temporal use for the reason that the expressed or implied antecedent of *cum* is necessarily a temporal word. The poverty of the relative use in Caesar's writings is attested from the very start by the almost total absence of expressed antecedents for *cum*.<sup>25</sup> The clearest case follows:

B. G. vi. 24. 1: Ac fuit antea *tempus cum* Germanos Galli virtute superarent, ultro bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem . . . trans Rhenum colonias mitterent.

<sup>24</sup> This includes B. C. iii. 36. 2, in which *afuisset* reads like an awkward substitute for *abesset* (cf. B. G. vii. 38. 1). Some editors seek a way out of the difficulty by assuming a concessive meaning for the *cum*-clause.

<sup>25</sup> As already noted, even so common an "antecedent" as *tum* is cited but twice; once in a case of repeated action (B. C. i. 79. 3), and once with *cum* and the perfect indicative (*apud* Cic. *ad Att.* x. 8. b. 1).

In two other passages *cum* should perhaps be recognized as having an antecedent:

*B. G. i. 23. 1:* Postridie eius diei, quod omnino *biduum* supererat, *cum* exercitui frumentum metiri *oporteret*, . . . rei frumentariae prospiciendum [Caesar] existimavit.

*B. G. i. 41. 5:* Septimo *die*, *cum* iter non *intermitteret*, ab exploratoribus [Caesar] certior factus est Ariovisti copias ab nostris milia passuum XXIV abesse.

The first of these sentences baffles literal translation, but the general sense seems clear, namely, that but two days remained *in which* to provide for the next distribution of corn, *cum* being used in the sense of the relative *quo*.<sup>26</sup> In the other passage, the use of the imperfect tense (rather than the pluperfect) insidiously suggests the relative use. Had the pluperfect tense been chosen, it would have been easy to make *certior factus est* the logical point of support of the *cum*-clause; but as it is, the feeling easily intrudes that *septimo die* is antecedent, the general meaning being "On the seventh day of uninterrupted marching."<sup>27</sup>

There seems to be no case in which it is imperative to supply an antecedent for *cum*, though there are a few passages for which such an interpretation could be supported, e.g.:

*B. G. i. 40. 5:* Factum eius hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, *cum* Cimbris et Teutonis a C. Mario pulsus non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritus *videbatur*.

This will be recognized as the one clear case (aside from sentences of iterative action) in which Caesar uses the imperfect indicative with *cum*. Even here the reading is doubted by some, inasmuch as the sentence is part of a long passage in indirect discourse.

Some examples in which the time is doubly defined lend themselves, readily to a relative interpretation for *cum*, e.g.:

<sup>26</sup> Cf. the use of *quo* in Cic. *p. Sex. Rosc.* 7. 20: "Quadrduo, quo haec gesta sunt, res ad Chrysogonum . . . defertur." See also Caes. *B. G. i.* 16. 5: "diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri *oporteret*."

<sup>27</sup> Despite the tense, it may be that this case should be brought under Class 7, which will be described later.



*B. G. vii. 32. 2: Iam prope hieme confecta, cum ipso anni tempore ad gerendum bellum [Caesar] vocaretur et ad hostem proficisci constituisset, . . . legati ad eum principes Haeduum veniunt oratum ut . . . civitati subveniat.*

Here the ablative absolute tells what the time was; and the *cum*-clause might be interpreted as characterizing the time, i.e., as telling how inopportune it was—it was just the time when important business was calling Caesar in another direction. Cf. too the following:

*B. G. v. 17. 2: [Hostes] lenius quam pridie nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed meridie, cum Caesar pabulandi causa tres legiones . . . misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus . . . advolaverunt.*

*B. C. ii. 14. 1: [Hostes] interiectis . . . aliquot diebus, nostris languentibus, . . . subito meridiano tempore, cum alius discessisset, alius ex diutino labore in ipsis operibus quieti se dedisset, arma vero omnia reposita conlectaque essent, portis foras erumpunt.*

In these two passages also it may be that *cum* does not find its logical point of support in the verb of the main clause, but rather in an implied antecedent. As we say in English: "The accident happened at noon, (a time) when the streets were crowded." Less clear is the following:

*B. C. iii. 111. 5: Itaque tanta est contentione actum, quanta agi debuit, cum illi celerem in ea re victoriam, hi salutem suam consistere viderent.*

At first sight it might seem that this *cum*-clause should be classed as causal, and yet the meaning may be: "And so the action proceeded with such dash as was to be expected at a time when (i.e., at a crisis such that) one party saw that therein lay the prospect of speedy victory, and the other that it was their one hope of safety." This interpretation might be supported by a parallel passage:

*B. G. ii. 33. 4: Pugnatumque ab hostibus ita acriter est, ut a viris fortibus in extrema spe salutis iniquo loco contra eos, qui ex vallo turribusque tela iacerent, pugnari debuit, cum in una virtute omnis spes salutis consisteret.*

Disregarding for the moment the *cum*-clause of this sentence, it will be found that the remainder of the passage exactly balances the sentence last quoted, the *cum*-clause there corresponding here to the phrase *in extrema spe salutis iniquo loco*, etc. This latter phrase is, of course, not causal; but it might very easily be viewed as setting forth the nature of the time. If this be so, the same interpretation could be given in the first sentence to the *cum*-clause which it balances. The second passage would have been complete had it closed with *pugnari debuit*; but the sentence is somewhat involved, and Caesar has attached a *cum*-clause that emphasizes and practically repeats what has gone before.

The relative use is manifestly one of the least important of the uses of the *cum*-construction in Caesar's writings. The ground is very uncertain in the matter of supplying antecedents for *cum*, and the following estimated totals should be regarded merely as indicating the possible extent of the relative use.

Subjunctive: Imperfect, 9; pluperfect, 8.<sup>28</sup> Indicative: Imperfect, 1; pluperfect, 0.

#### CLASS 4b. THE ITERATIVE USE

In this heading the term "iterative" is used in the restricted technical sense. Thus, the mere fact that a *cum*-clause refers to a repeated act does not necessarily constitute a case of "iterative action," e.g.:

*B. G. i. 32. 3: Cum [Caesar] ab his [sc. Sequanis] saepius quaereret neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset, idem Divitiacus Haedus respondit.*

Here the idea of repetition does not carry over into the main clause of the sentence—the repeated inquiry brings but *one* response. Cases like this belong to the standard categories (causal, motivating, etc.), and have been so classified.<sup>29</sup>

<sup>28</sup> Cf. also *B. G. vii. 52. 2*, where, however, the *cum*-clause is dependent upon another subjunctive clause. All cases thus dependent are excluded wherever there is a comparison of modal usage.

<sup>29</sup> Cf. *B. G. i. 42. 4* (*saepe*), *ii. 19. 5* (*identidem*), *iii. 17. 5* (*cotidie*), etc.



It is only when both the *cum*-clause and the main clause are affected that a *cum*-clause takes on the meaning "whenever," and the usage becomes technically iterative. And even in sentences of general import throughout, this meaning of *cum* can not, of course, be developed unless the clause introduced by *cum* has real temporal force, e.g.:

B. C. iii. 47. 2: Nam quicumque alterum obsidere conati sunt, percussos atque infirmos hostes adorti aut proelio superatos aut aliqua offensione permotos continuerunt, *cum* ipsi numero equitum militumque *praestarent*.

This sentence is a commentary upon Caesar's anomalous situation at Dyrrachium, where, with an inferior force, he was hemming in Pompey. The phrase introduced by *quicumque* is the leading subordinate clause, and in it iterative force is clearly felt. The *cum*-clause, on the other hand, is adversative in meaning: "whereas they themselves were superior in horse and foot."

#### a. IMPERFECT TENSE

In this tense clear cases of the use of the indicative are found only in a single sentence:<sup>30</sup>

B. C. i. 79. 2: Si mons erat ascendendus, facile ipsa loci natura periculum repellebat . . .; *cum* vallis aut locus declivis *suberat*, neque ii, qui antecesserant, morantibus opem ferre *poterant*, equites vero ex loco superiore in aversos tela *coiciebant*, tum magno erat in periculo res.

It is noteworthy that this passage opens with an iterative *si*-clause using the imperfect indicative; this fact may be not without influence upon the choice of mood in the *cum*-clause. Examples of the use of the subjunctive follow:

B. G. vii. 16. 3: [Vercingetorix] omnes nostras pabulationes frumentationesque observabat dispersosque, *cum* longius necessario *procederent*, adoriebatur.

B. C. iii. 47. 6: Ipse [Caesar] consumptis omnibus longe lateque frumentis summis erat in angustiis. Sed tamen haec singulari pati-

<sup>30</sup> B. C. iii. 44. 5 seems in obvious need of emendation.

entia milites ferebant. . . . Non illis hordeum *cum daretur*, non legumina recusabant; pecus vero . . . magno in honore habebant.

B. G. ii. 20. 1: Quod erat insigne, *cum* ad arma concurri oporteret.<sup>31</sup>

Two other cases should be mentioned in this connection:

B. C. ii. 39. 4: Erant per se magna, quae gesserant equites, *praesertim cum* eorum exiguus numerus cum tanta multitudine Numidarum *conferretur*. Haec tamen ab ipsis inflatus commemorabantur.

This passage refers to the night raid in which a detachment of Curio's cavalry had surprised and routed a large force of Numidians. Apparently the sentence is elliptical: "On its merits the exploit of the horsemen *was* noteworthy, especially (so seen to be the case) when(ever) their small number was compared with the mighty host of the Numidians."<sup>32</sup>

B. C. iii. 48. 2: Est etiam genus radicis inventum. . . . Id ad similitudinem panis efficiebant. . . . Ex hoc effectos panes, *cum* in conloquiis Pompeiani famen nostris *obiectarent*, vulgo in eos iaciebant, ut spem eorum minuerent.

In this sentence the import certainly is general throughout; but this import is curiously limited by the presence of *vulgo* in the main clause. It is a case, not of "whenever," but of "often when."

#### b. PLUPERFECT TENSE

Here the indicative holds its own very well. But the insidious intrusion of the subjunctive can be seen by comparing the two following sentences:

B. G. v. 35. 1-3: Quo praecepto . . . observato, *cum* quaequam cohors ex orbe *excesserat* atque impetum *fecerat*, hostes . . . *refugiebant*. . . . Rursus *cum* in eum locum, unde erant progressi, *reverti coeperant*, . . . ab iis . . . *circumveniebantur*.

<sup>31</sup> This passage is regarded by some as interpolated.

<sup>32</sup> It is interesting to note that Meusel's *Lexicon* suggests that in this passage *praesertim cum* = *praesertim si*. A rather striking parallel with the indefinite second singular is found in Tacitus, *An.* ii. 52. 5: modicam manum [Romanorum], si multitudinem Numidarum . . . spectares. Cf. too the *qui*-clauses in B. G. vii. 19. 3.



*B. C. ii. 41. 6: Cum cohortes ex acie procucurrissent, Numidae integri celeritate impetum nostrorum effugiebant, rursusque ad ordines suos se recipientes circumibant at ab acie excludebant.*

The subjunctive is found in but one other case, and there *cum* means something like "when(ever) once," of irrevocable action:

*B. G. i. 25. 3: Gallis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento, quod pluribus eorum scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et conligatis, cum ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere neque . . . satis commode pugnare poterant.*

For this group the estimated totals are as follows:

Subjunctive: Imperfect, 5;<sup>33</sup> pluperfect, 2.<sup>34</sup> Indicative: Imperfect, 3; pluperfect, 11.<sup>35</sup>

#### CLASS 5. THE CONCESSIVE USE

There is nothing noteworthy in the cases that fall under this heading except that they are not as numerous as might have been expected, and that they often are not sharply defined. For example, in the following sentence no concessive force is felt until *tamen* is reached:

*B. G. vii. 62. 4: Ab sinistro [cornu] . . . cum primi ordines hostium transfixi pilis concidissent, tamen acerrime reliqui resistebant.*

Estimated totals for this use:

Subjunctive: Imperfect, 8; pluperfect, 11. Indicative, 0.

#### CLASS 6. THE ADVERSATIVE USE

In the concessive use of the *cum*-construction, the characteristic feature is the notion "despite the fact that." When the

<sup>33</sup> There are besides some very interesting doubtful cases, such as *B. G. i. 50. 4: "Cum ex captivis quaereret Caesar, . . . hanc reperiebat causam, quod. . ."* On the strength of the tense of *reperiebat* and the fact that various prisoners were questioned, it would be easy to build up an argument for an iterative interpretation of this passage; but it has been deemed best to exclude all such doubtful cases, among them *B. G. vii. 17. 4*. In this connection should be mentioned also *B. C. iii. 84. 4*, where the *cum*-clause is subordinate to another subjunctive construction; cf. footnote 28 on page 28.

<sup>34</sup> Possibly *B. C. iii. 50. 1* should also be classed here.

<sup>35</sup> *B. G. iii. 15. 1* has the variant reading *circumsisterent*. With this reading, the clause should perhaps be regarded as motivating (Class 2) rather than as iterative.

*cum*-clause contains elements that stand in antithetical relation to items in the main clause, the meaning tends to shift insensibly from concessive to adversative, especially if the *cum*-clause follows the main clause. The ambiguity of *cum* in Latin, and of "while" and "whereas" in English, is admirably designed to obscure this shift.

B. C. iii. 61. 2: Nam ante id tempus nemo . . . a Caesare ad Pompeium transierat, *cum* paene cotidie a Pompeio ad Caesarem profugerent.

This sentence explains why the Pompeians were so delighted by the desertion of some Allobroges from Caesar's camp to their own. Had the *cum*-clause been placed first, a concessive interpretation would have been satisfactory; as it is, the effect of the *cum*-clause is little different from that of a coördinate sentence with *autem*, i.e., "paene autem cotidie a Pompeio ad Caesarem profugiebant" ("whereas people were deserting from Pompey to Caesar almost every day"). The adversative function is even more pronounced in the following passage:

B. G. iv. 12. 1: At hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, quorum erat V milium numerus, *cum* ipsi non amplius DCCC equites haberent, quod ii, qui . . . erant trans Mosam profecti, nondum redierant, nihil timentibus nostris, quod . . . impetu facto celeriter nostros perturbaverunt.

Here *cum ipsi* merely marks the antithesis "whereas they themselves."

Since *autem* shades off in meaning from a sharply adversative "whereas" to a merely continuative "moreover" appending another detail, it may be that the adversative *cum*-clause has similar elasticity of function. If this be true, the difficulty of the following passage disappears:

B. G. iv. 29. 3: Compluribus navibus fractis, reliquae *cum essent* funibus . . . amissis ad navigandum inutiles, magna . . . totius exercitus perturbatio facta est.

Logically, the opening ablative absolute and the *cum*-clause of this sentence seem to be coördinate; with the proposed interpre-



tation, the general meaning of the passage would be somewhat as follows: "As several of the ships were wrecked (and) the others moreover incapacitated for sailing, blank dismay fell upon the entire army." Had the wording allowed, a second ablative absolute attached by *autem* or *vero* might have replaced the *cum*-clause with considerable benefit to the symmetry of the passage; cf. the following sentence:

*B. C. i. 32. 3: Latum ab X tribunis plebis, contradicentibus inimicis, Catone<sup>36</sup> vero acerrime repugnante et pristina consuetudine dicendi mora dies extrahente, ut sui [sc. Caesaris] ratio absentis haberetur, ipso consule Pompeio.*

The adversative use is confined mostly to cases using the imperfect tense. The estimated totals for the group follow:

Subjunctive: Imperfect, 7;<sup>37</sup> pluperfect, 2. Indicative, 0.

#### CLASS 7. THE ATTENDANT CIRCUMSTANTIAL USE

*B. G. ii. 33. 6: Postridie eius diei refractis portis, cum iam defenderet nemo, atque intromissis militibus nostris . . . , sectionem eius oppidi . . . Caesar vendidit.*

In this passage the clause *cum iam defenderet nemo* means something like "with no farther resistance"—a notion of attendant circumstance that might have found expression in an ablative absolute (cf. *B. C. iii. 68. 3: "Prorutis munitionibus, defendente nullo, transcenderunt"*). In this particular sentence, however, there are two leading ablative absolutes connected by *atque*; with this structure in prospect, it would have been very awkward to interject still another ablative absolute supplementary to the first.

By virtue of its function (as measured by the parallel ablative absolute construction) the above *cum*-clause and a few others like it are classed as "attendant circumstantial."<sup>38</sup> In

<sup>36</sup> The MS. reading *Catonem*, etc., is a manifest blunder.

<sup>37</sup> Another case should perhaps be recognized in *B. C. iii. 74. 2*; but there the *cum*-clause seems to modify another subjunctive clause.

<sup>38</sup> The term is not used in the broad sense assigned to it by Roby in his *Latin Grammar*, §1710.

this use, too, the postpositive position of the *cum*-clause has marked influence in defining the meaning, e.g.:

*B. G. v. 18. 5: Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, cum capite solo ex aqua exstarent, ut hostes impetum . . . sustinere non possent.*

With a different order, the *cum*-clause of this passage might easily be felt to be concessive; but in its present position it means little more than "capitibus solum ex aqua exstantibus"—again an expression of attendant circumstance.

Recognition of this use of the *cum*-construction suggests a solution of the following puzzling passage:

*B. C. ii. 44. 2: Quorum cohortes militum. . . Iuba conspicatus, . . . magnam partem eorum interfici iussit, paucos electos in regnum remisit, cum Varus suam fidem ab eo laedi quereretur neque resistere auderet.*

The reference here is to the situation that developed after Curio's defeat in Africa. The victory had been won by the Numidians; and their king Juba quite disregarded the wishes of Varus, the Pompeian commander, in the matter of disposing of the prisoners. Considered by itself, the first phrase of the *cum*-clause might suggest a concessive meaning; but on that basis *neque . . . auderet* is baffling. The difficulty disappears at once, however, if the *cum*-clause as a whole is recognized as a substitute for an ablative absolute expressing attendant circumstance: "Varo . . . querente neque resistere audente."

The pluperfect tense shows but one case of this use, and that example is none too clear:

*B. G. iii. 28. 3: Ad quarum initium silvarum cum Caesar pervenisset castraque munire instituisset, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostris subito ex omnibus partibus silvae evolverunt.*

The *cum*-clause of this passage in its general trend is of the complex-temporal variety (Class 3); but the phrase "neque hostis interim visus esset" seems a parenthetical description of an



attendant circumstance: "with no sight of the enemy the while." For this group the estimated totals are as follows:

Subjunctive: Imperfect, 8; pluperfect, 1. Indicative, 0.

#### CLASS 8. THE EXPLANATORY OR APPositionAL USE

*B. G. v. 31. 4:* Consumitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, *cum* sua quisque miles *circumspiceret*, quid secum portare posset, quid ex instrumento hibernorum relinquere cogeretur.

*B. C. iii. 77. 3:* Pompeius enim primi diei mora inlata et reliquorum dierum frustra labore suscepto, *cum* se magnis itineribus *extenderet* et praegressos consequi *cuperet*, quarto die finem sequendi fecit.

*B. G. v. 35. 5:* Tamen, tot incommodis conflictati . . . et magna parte diei consumpta, *cum* a prima luce ad horam octavam *pugnaretur*, nihil, quod ipsis esset indignum, committebant.

These three examples have been introduced in the above order to show the point of contact between this use and the one last considered. In the *cum*-clause of the first sentence it would not be hard to find a circumstantial idea; but in the second example another aspect obtrudes more clearly, and the *cum*-clause begins to be felt as an appositional element that supplies an exegesis of "reliquorum dierum frustra labore suscepto." In the third sentence this function of the *cum*-clause shines out unmistakably. In the following interesting case the order of words is confused in the manuscripts and the reading is somewhat doubtful:

*B. G. v. 54. 1:* At Caesar, principibus cuiusque civitatis ad se evocatis, alias *territando*, *cum* se scire, quae fierent, *denuntiaret*, alias cohortando magnam partem Galliae in officio tenuit.

If this chances to be the original reading, the function of the *cum*-clause could never be a subject of debate; for the excision of the phrase is recommended on the ground that it is an interpolation introduced as an exegesis of *territando*!<sup>39</sup>

The explanatory or appositional use has a point of contact with the causal use also, as may be seen from the following example:

<sup>39</sup> Perhaps the rather difficult case in *B. G. v. 55. 2* is to be explained in this way. The Menge-Preuss Lexicon, however, suggests treating *cum dicerent* as if *quod dicerent*, i.e., *cum*, *ut dicebant*.

*B. G. v. 17. 3:* Nostri acriter in eos impetu facto reppulerunt, neque finem sequendi fecerunt quoad subsidio confisi equites, *cum* post se legiones *viderent*, praecipites hostes egerunt.

It is not difficult to see some causal force in this *cum*-clause, and yet, at the same time, it is an exegesis of "subsidio confisi."<sup>40</sup>

This use is not to be confused with those to which the technical designation "explicative" has become attached; and in particular it must be distinguished from explicative cases of the "*cum* tacent, clamant" type. For in the latter the main clause passes judgment upon the action of the *cum*-clause ("their silence is a shout"), whereas in the use now under discussion the *cum*-clause is an explanatory adjunct appended to a sentence that would be complete without it.

The explanatory or appositional *cum*-clause is regularly post-positive, and very often it is made up of two antithetical elements that develop both sides of a situation:

*B. C. iii. 67. 5:* Hic paulisper est pugnatum, *cum* inrumpere nostri *conarentur*, illi castra *defenderent*.

*B. C. iii. 82. 4:* Magna . . . inter eos in consilio fuit controversia oporteretne Lucilli Hirri . . . proximis comitiis . . . absentis rationem haberi, *cum* eius necessarii fidem *implorarent* Pompei, . . . reliqui . . . *recusarent*.

*B. C. iii. 94. 2:* Ita, *cum* recentes . . . defessis *successissent*, alii autem a tergo *adorirentur*, sustinere Pompeiani non potuerunt.<sup>41</sup>

The last of these examples is especially interesting because it seems to display a rhetorical polish which Caesar does not usually employ in description of swift and decisive action. He is speaking here of the turn of the tide at the battle of Pharsalus. He has just told how his fourth line drove back the cavalry of Pompey and took the enemy in the rear, and, how, at that critical moment, he ordered his third line to attack in front. The adverb *ita* refers to these two manoeuvres, and thus is resumptive in force. The adverb, in its turn, is explained and expanded

<sup>40</sup> A somewhat similar case, but subordinate to an indirect question, is found in *B. G. vi. 31. 1.*

<sup>41</sup> A good case, but subordinate in indirect discourse, is found in *B. G. vii. 41. 2.*



by a *cum*-clause which (in chiasmic order) enlarges upon the advance of the third line and the successful flank movement of the fourth.

There is a wide difference between this bit of exposition and the hammering smash of the terse coördinate clauses in which Caesar tells of the turn of the tide at Alesia in the battle that sealed the fate of his greatest barbarian opponent:

*B. G. vii. 88. 3: Repente post tergum equitatus cernitur. Cohortes aliae adpropinquant. Hostes terga vertunt. Fugientibus equites occurrunt. Fit magna caedes.*

When in an explanatory or appositional *cum*-clause the number of items exceeds two, the sentence easily becomes cumbersome and may wander a little from the point:

*B. C. iii. 11. 3: L. Torquatus, . . . conatus portis clausis oppidum defendere, cum Graecos murum ascendere atque arma capere iuberet, illi autem se contra imperium populi Romani pugnaturos negarent, oppidani autem etiam sua sponte Caesarem recipere conarentur, desperatis omnibus auxiliis portas aperuit.*

The *cum*-clause of this passage opens very obviously as an exegesis of *conatus . . . oppidum defendere*; but this notion seems to fade more or less as the clause grows in length. With this sentence may be contrasted a very neat Ciceronian example:

*ad. Fam. xv. 4. 8: Distributis cohortibus et auxiliis (cum aliis Quintus frater legatus mecum simul, aliis C. Pomptinus legatus, reliquis M. Anneius et L. Tullius legati praessent), plerosque [sc. hostes] necopinantis oppressimus.*<sup>42</sup>

Though normally postpositive, as befits their appositional character, *cum*-clauses of this class sometimes precede the governing clause, e.g.:

<sup>42</sup> *B. G. vi. 12. 6* affords an interesting parallel wherein a leading ablative absolute finds its exegesis, not in a long *cum*-clause, but in a series of subordinate ablative absolutes: "Adventu Caesaris facta commutatione rerum (obsidibus Haeduis redditis, veteribus clientelis restitutis, novis per Caesarem comparatis, . . . reliquis rebus eorum gratia dignitateque amplificata), Sequani principatum dimiserant." In *B. G. vii. 85. 2-3* there is a similar aggregation of main clauses. Cf. also the latter part of the *cum*-clause of *B. C. iii. 101. 1*.

*B. C. iii. 87. 1: Hunc Labienum excepit, et cum Caesaris copias despiceret, Pompei consilium laudibus efferreret, "Noli," inquit, "existimare, Pompei, hunc esse exercitum, qui. . . ."*

Here again the characteristic antithetical relation between the elements within the *cum*-clause will be noted. In general a prefixed appositional element is no anomaly, e.g., Vergil, *Aen. i. 358-359*:

Auxiliumque viae veteris tellure recludit  
Thesauros.<sup>43</sup>

Though as a whole the class is a large one, in this use also the pluperfect subjunctive is but scantily represented:

*B. G. ii. 24. 4: Quibus omnibus rebus permoti, equites Treveri . . . qui auxilii causa a civitate ad Caesarem missi venerant, cum multitudine hostium castra compleri nostra, legiones premi et paene circumventus teneri, calones, equites . . . in omnes partes fugere vidissent, desperatis nostris rebus domum contenderunt.*

In this passage the *cum*-clause might well serve as an exegesis of "Quibus omnibus rebus permoti," but the length and prolixity of the sentence weaken the solidarity of the period somewhat. For the whole group the estimated totals are as follows:

Subjunctive: Imperfect, 40;<sup>44</sup> pluperfect, 4.<sup>45</sup> Indicative, 0.

#### CLASS 9. THE OBJECTIVE USE

This designation is chosen to describe *cum*-clauses that take the place of a participle or infinitive in an object clause. There is but one example, and that in a passive construction:

*B. C. ii. 34. 2: Simul . . . equitatus omnis et una levis armaturae interiecti complures, cum se in vallem demitterent, cernebantur.*

The meaning seems pretty clearly to be: ". . . were seen descending."

<sup>43</sup> A newspaper clipping provides a very close parallel to the Caesarian passage: "The most visible signs of the bitterness engendered by the gubernatorial contest were locked doors in the Capitol building, and, *constituting a rather humorous phase*, the reception held by Campbell on the lawn in front of the State House."

<sup>44</sup> Cf. *B. C. iii. 69. 4 (haberent)* and *iii. 72. 2*, in both of which passages the *cum*-clause modifies a clause itself subordinate.

<sup>45</sup> Cf. *B. G. i. 35. 2*, which is likewise subordinate.



It will be noted that this single case uses the imperfect subjunctive, as is natural in examples of this sort. Glancing backward at this point, it will be observed that, in general, the range of the use of the imperfect subjunctive is much wider and freer than that of the pluperfect. The clauses using the latter tense are largely of a stereotyped variety, and the bulk of the usage centers about the time idea. Altogether the pluperfect subjunctive is used with *cum* about two hundred times; and more than forty of the cases consist of the phrase "*cum . . . venisset*" with its variations (e.g., *ventum esset*).

#### CLASS 10. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN DEPENDENT RELATION

Under this head are included *cum*-clauses which depend upon constructions which are themselves subordinate, such as *ut*-clauses and the infinitive of indirect discourse. As the present investigation is primarily a modal study, these *cum*-clauses in subordinate relation are of minor interest; it would be hardly fair to allow them to swell the totals for the subjunctive in a comparison of indicative and subjunctive usage.

A large part of the examples manifestly belong to the standard categories, and some of them have already been cited in footnotes at the appropriate points. For these no further comment is necessary here; but there are two special uses that have not been illustrated by examples already cited.

##### 10a. THE TECHNICALLY EXPLICATIVE USE

There are two possible examples of the "*cum* tacent, clamant" type:

*B. G. i. 42. 2: Non respuit condicionem Caesar iamque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, cum id, quod antea petenti denegasset, ultro polliceretur.*

In this passage the *cum*-clause is commonly regarded as modifying *arbitrabatur*, and hence is classed as causal. But it is possible that it depends rather upon *reverti*; if so, the sentence records Caesar's judgment that Ariovistus' voluntary concession

of what he had previously refused was a tardy (*iam*) move toward a recovery of his senses.<sup>46</sup> The other possible case is curiously complicated:

*B. G. i. 40. 10: Qui suum timorem in rem frumentariam simulatione angustiasque itineris conferrent, facere arroganter, cum aut de officio imperatoris desperare aut praescribere auderent.*

Taken by themselves, the first two clauses of this sentence might perhaps form a complete period, with the *qui*-clause technically "explicative," i.e.: "Those who were cloaking their cowardice under talk of shortage of supplies and the difficulties of the march were guilty of presumption." With this interpretation, the *cum*-clause becomes a mere subordinate tag of the explanatory or appositional variety (Class 8).

But the two *last* clauses taken by themselves provide a more natural explicative period, with the *qui*-clause as a descriptive or defining adjunct without any leading part in the judgment expressed: "On the part of those who were cloaking their cowardice . . . , venturing to doubt the ability of the general and to offer him advice was a piece of presumption." It seems to be necessary to choose between these two interpretations, because it is hardly possible to regard both the *qui*-clause and the *cum*-clause as explicative; for only one judgment is expressed by the sentence.

#### 10b. FUTURUM IN PRAETERITO

In most of the cases under this head the force of *cum* is temporal. In *B. G. iii. 2. 4* and *B. C. iii. 69. 4* (*haberent*) the relation seems to be explanatory or appositional (Class 8). The only complication noted in this group is the tendency to ellipsis, e.g.:

*B. G. iv. 16. 1: Multis de causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum; quarum illa iustissima, quod, cum videret Germanos tam facile impelli ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audere populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire.*

<sup>46</sup> Cf. *B. G. v. 27. 11: "Quod cum faciat, et civitati sese consulere . . . et Caesari . . . gratiam referre."*



Obviously the meaning is: "He desired that they be anxious about their own safety as well, (*as would be the case*) when they saw that the army of the Roman people lacked neither the ability nor the courage to cross the Rhine." Such ellipsis in general is common enough; cf. the following example in connection with a *si*-clause:

Cic. *Tusc. Disp.* i. 48. 116: Codrum commemorant, qui se in medios inmisit hostis veste famulari, ne posset adgnosci, *si esset* ornatu regio.

King Codrus desired that the enemy should kill him because an oracle had declared that, if he fell, his city (Athens) would be victorious. He therefore plunged into the thick of the fight "in the garb of a slave, so that he might not be recognized, (*as would be the case*) if he wore his royal uniform."

The following sentence, which has caused the commentators much trouble, should perhaps be interpreted in the same way:

B. C. i. 71. 1: Neque vero id Caesarem fugiebat, tanto sub oculis accepto detrimento, perterritum exercitum sustinere non posse, praesertim circumdatum undique equitatu, *cum* in loco aequo atque aperto *confligeretur*.

Caesar had outstripped the Pompeian forces in the race toward the Ebro. Brought to bay upon a small hill, the enemy sent a detachment to occupy another height to which they might fall back; but this detachment was cut to pieces before their eyes. Their present position was untenable; they *must* move; but, when they do, they will be utterly at Caesar's mercy. So he says: "And Caesar saw clearly that, after witnessing such a slaughter, the demoralized army would not be able to hold its own, especially when surrounded on every side by cavalry, (*as would be the case*) when the fight was renewed on favorable and open ground."

One example using the pluperfect tense seems to be of this same general nature:

*B. C. iii. 43. 3:* [Caesar] circumvallare Pompeium instituit, haec spectans, . . . ut auctoritatem, qua ille maxime apud exterarum nationes niti videbatur, minueret, *cum* fama per orbem terrarum percrebrisset illum a Caesare obsideri, neque audere proelio dimicare.

By hemming Pompey in, Caesar aimed to destroy his prestige with foreign peoples, (*as would result*) when it became generally known that Pompey was besieged and did not dare to risk a battle.

Still another case in which the imperfect tense is used deserves mention in this connection:

*B. G. vii. 76. 5:* Neque erat omnium quisquam qui aspectum modo tantae multitudinis sustineri posse arbitraretur, praesertim ancipiti proelio, *cum* ex oppido eruptione *pugnaretur*, foris tantae copiae equitatus peditatusque *cernerentur*.

This passage concerns the great army of Gauls advancing to the relief of Vercingetorix at Alesia. They expected that Caesar would be in dire straits when they attacked on one side, and the defenders of Alesia on the other. The assumption of an ellipsis gives a very satisfactory interpretation: "in a battle with two fronts, (*as would be the case*) when a sortie was made from the town, and such huge forces of horse and foot were lined up outside." It is just possible, however, that the *cum*-clause is meant merely as an exegesis of "ancipiti proelio"; if so, it should be assigned to Class 8.<sup>47</sup>

Estimated total for the subjunctive<sup>48</sup> *cum*-clauses in dependent relation: Imperfect, 49; pluperfect, 25.

## B. THE PERFECT TENSE

This is a tense little used by Caesar in *cum*-clauses. The cases may be summarized briefly.

<sup>47</sup> As already noted, this second line of interpretation seems to be required for the somewhat similar case in *B. C. iii. 69. 4* (*haberent*); for there the contingency referred to in the *cum*-clause is not one that is expected to be realized. This precludes the interpretation "(as would be the case) when."

<sup>48</sup> It happens, curiously enough, that in the one clear case in which (apart from clauses of iterative action) Caesar uses the imperfect indicative with *cum* (namely, *B. G. i. 40. 5*), the *cum*-clause is subordinate in indirect discourse.



## SUBJUNCTIVE: 6 CASES

These are distributed as follows: Causal, 1 (*B. G. i. 16. 6*);<sup>49</sup> Concessive, 1 (*B. G. i. 26. 2*); in dependent relation, 4 (*B. G. vi. 25. 4, B. C. i. 9. 3, ii. 33. 2, iii. 86. 3*).

INDICATIVE: 17 CASES<sup>50</sup>

Half or more of these are found in sentences of general import used in describing the customs of the Gauls, Germans, Britons, etc. Six of the examples are purely iterative of the present general type, e.g.:

*B. G. vi. 19. 3: Cum pater familias illustriore loco natus decessit, eius propinqui conveniunt.*<sup>51</sup>

The other cases of this sort are: *B. G. v. 21. 3*,<sup>52</sup> *vi. 16. 5*,<sup>53</sup> *17.3 (bis)*,<sup>54</sup> and *27.4*.

Closely allied to this group are two or three other sentences of general import, which also mark a stage in the action, e.g.:

*B. G. iv. 33. 1: [Britanni] primo . . . ordines plerumque perturbant, et cum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverunt, ex essedis desiliunt.*

This peculiarity in iterative sentences is by no means confined to cases of *cum* with the perfect indicative, and it arises very naturally when a series of repeated acts is being described; cf. *B. G. v. 16. 2* and *B. C. i. 58. 2*. The example cited in full above would be much more striking if the military experts would allow

<sup>49</sup> Some punctuate and arrange the text in such a way as to bring this *cum*-clause into dependent relation.

<sup>50</sup> This total includes some doubtful cases that will be mentioned in their place.

<sup>51</sup> In this passage an iterative *si*-clause follows.

<sup>52</sup> This sentence suggests the type of definition abhorred by school teachers, e.g.: "It is a pair *when* you put two like things together."

<sup>53</sup> Most editors prefer the variant reading *deficit*.

<sup>54</sup> The second perfect indicative of this passage seems a necessary emendation for the subjunctive.

us to interpret the phrase *equitum turmas* as referring to the enemy. But, in any case, the antithesis between *primo* and the *cum*-clause is obvious; and the thing to be noted in particular is that, in sentences of this sort, the force of *cum* approximates that of *postquam*. This observation helps in the interpretation of cases in which there is no clearly marked series:

*B. G. vi. 18. 3: Suos liberos, nisi cum adoleverunt, ut munus militiae sustinere possint, palam ad se adire non patiuntur.*

Here the meaning seems to be somewhat literally: "excepting after they have grown up." A third example which perhaps marks the stage of the action is found in *B. G. vi. 27. 5*.

Eliminating the nine cases of iterative action, there remain eight possible examples of the use of the perfect indicative with *cum*. Three of these belong to the well-known categories of *cum primum* and *cum inversum*:

*B. G. iii. 9. 2: His rebus celeriter administratis, ipse cum primum per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit.*<sup>55</sup>

*B. G. vii. 26. 3: Itaque hoc facere noctu apparabant, cum matres familiae repente in publicum procurrerunt*<sup>56</sup> *flentesque . . . petiverunt ne . . .*

There are two clear cases of the purely temporal use:

*B. G. vi. 12. 1: Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis principes erant Haedui, alterius Sequani.*

*apud Cic. ad Att. x. 8. b. 1: Eadem enim tum fuit [causa], cum ab eorum consiliis abesse indicasti.*

The three remaining cases are doubtful, being found in *B. C. ii. 17. 4 (bis)*, where *postea . . . quam* is plausibly suggested as the reading in place of *postea . . . cum (quom)*, and in *B. C. iii. 87. 7*, the text of which is questioned by recent editors. If included, they belong rather to the complex-temporal than to the purely temporal group.

<sup>55</sup> Cf. the imperfect subjunctive with *cum primum* in *B. G. ii. 2. 2*.

<sup>56</sup> A necessary emendation for *procurrerint*.



## IV

## SUMMARY

Here are given, in tabular form, the estimated totals for the various uses of the past tenses with *cum*.

## A. IMPERFECT AND PLUPERFECT TENSES

	Subjunctive		Indicative	
	Imperf.	Pluperf.	Imperf.	Pluperf.
1. Causal .....	50	10	0	0
2. Motivating .....	26	47	0	0
3. Complex-temporal .....	55 <sup>1</sup>	77	1 <sup>2</sup>	0
4. Temporal .....	39	14	0	0
4a. Relative .....	9	8	1 <sup>4</sup>	0
4b. Iterative .....	5	2	3 <sup>5</sup>	11 <sup>6</sup>
5. Concessive .....	8	11	0	0
6. Adversative .....	7	2	0	0
7. Attendant circumstantial .....	8	1	0	0
8. Explanatory-appositional .....	40	4	0	0
9. Objective .....	1	0	0	0
	248	176 <sup>2</sup>	5	11
10. Subjunctive in dependent relation .....	49	25		
	297	201		

<sup>1</sup> *B. G.* vii. 35. 5 has the variant reading *ceperat*.

<sup>2</sup> *B. C.* iii. 22. 2 shows a lacuna, but probably requires a pluperfect subjunctive to complete it.

<sup>3</sup> *B. C.* ii. 17. 4, where *postea . . . quam* is a plausible emendation for *postea . . . cum (quom)*.

<sup>4</sup> *B. G.* i. 40. 5; a dependent clause in indirect discourse.

<sup>5</sup> Emendation may supply another case in *B. C.* iii. 44. 5.

<sup>6</sup> *B. G.* iii. 15. 1 has the variant reading *circumsisterent*.

## B. PERFECT TENSE

	Subjunctive	Indicative
1. Causal .....	1	0
2. Concessive .....	1	0
3. Complex-temporal .....	0	3 <sup>1</sup>
4. Temporal .....	0	2
4a. Cum primum .....	0	1
4b. Cum inversum .....	0	2
4c. Iterative .....	0	6
4d. Iterative (marking stage) .....	0	3
	2	17
10. Subjunctive in dependent relation .....	4	
	6	

<sup>1</sup> *B. C.* ii. 17. 4 (bis), where *postea . . . quam* is plausibly suggested as the reading in place of *postea . . . cum (quom)* and *B. C.* iii. 87. 7, in which the MS reading is questioned by some editors.

## V

## CONCLUSION

Caesar's usage in *cum*-clauses of the past is very simple as compared with the usage of some other Latin authors. For one who would write in the manner of Caesar the rules are brief and plain:

## A. IMPERFECT AND PLUPERFECT TENSES

1. Aside from clauses of iterative action, the subjunctive is everywhere used when these tenses are chosen. Exceptions are so rare and doubtful that they may be ignored in this connection.<sup>57</sup>

2. In clauses of iterative action either mood is used. When the imperfect tense is called for, the subjunctive leads; but the mood is usually indicative in clauses using the pluperfect tense.

## B. PERFECT TENSE

1. As a temporal clause of the past, *cum* with the perfect indicative plays but a small part in the writings of Caesar. There are perhaps five occurrences,<sup>58</sup> in addition to three cases of *cum primum* and *cum inversum*.

2. The chief use of *cum* with the perfect indicative is in sentences of general import of the present general type.

3. The perfect subjunctive is seldom found with *cum*; (causal, 1; concessive, 1; in dependent relation, 4).

The majority of students who practice the writing of Latin

<sup>57</sup> *B. G.* i. 40. 5, with *cum*-clause subordinate in indirect discourse; *B. G.* vii. 35. 5, where there is good MS authority for either *caperet* or *ceperat*; and *B. C.* ii. 17. 4, in which the imperfect indicative is caught in a tangle of perfect indicatives, and the opening words of the sentence should perhaps read *postea . . . quam* rather than *postea . . . cum* (*quom*). The cases cited as possibly illustrating the relative use (Class 4a) are too sporadic and uncertain to require separate consideration here—especially as the subjunctive has the right of way in this class as elsewhere, the only possible exception being *B. G.* i. 40. 5, mentioned at the beginning of this footnote.

<sup>58</sup> Two of the five cases are clear (*B. G.* vi. 12. 1 and *apud Cic. ad Att.* x. 8. b. 1). The other three, if the text be sound, are of the complex-temporal rather than the purely temporal variety.



do not progress beyond the point of attempting to imitate Caesar's syntax and style. For them it would seem the logical course to adopt frankly the simple description of the facts here set down. The early history of the construction is an interesting field for speculation; but the attempt to approach the problem of writing through the fog of an *a priori* theory as to the cause which first operated to start the shift from the indicative to the subjunctive in the *cum*-construction has resulted in the greatest confusion, at any rate so far as writing in the style of Caesar is concerned.

## VI

### CLASSIFICATION OF EXAMPLES

On account of the protean character of the *cum*-construction it is quite impossible to assign each and every example to a given category in such a way as to satisfy all readers. This study, however, would seem to shirk a difficulty, if some attempt were not made to classify the whole material. Accordingly, the following tentative assignments are made.

#### A. IMPERFECT AND PLUPERFECT TENSES

Under this heading the following abbreviations are used:

Class 1. Causal, cl.	Class 6. Adversative, adv.
Class 2. Motivating, mv.	Class 7. Attendant circumstantial, at.
Class 3. Complex-temporal, ct.	Class 8. Explanatory-appositional, ex.
Class 4. Temporal, t.	Class 9. Objective, o.
Class 4a. Relative, r.	Class 10. Dependent relation, dr.
Class 4b. Iterative, i.	
Class 5. Concessive, cv.	

#### I. IMPERFECT

##### a. *Subjunctive*

##### B. *G.*

1. 2. 2, dr	1. 13. 2, cl
1. 4. 3 (bis), t	1. 13. 5, dr
1. 9. 2, mv	1. 16. 6, dr
1. 11. 2, mv	1. 19. 1, cl

- |                           |                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. 20. 2, dr              | 3. 3. 2 (bis), el          |
| 1. 20. 4, dr              | 3. 5. 1 (ter), et          |
| 1. 20. 5, mv              | 3. 7. 1, r                 |
| 1. 22. 1 (bis), t         | 3. 10. 3, el               |
| 1. 23. 1, r               | 3. 11. 5, dr               |
| 1. 26. 1, et              | 3. 14. 7, dr               |
| 1. 31. 4, dr              | 3. 15. 2, el               |
| 1. 32. 3 (bis), et        | 3. 15. 4, dr               |
| 1. 33. 4, dr              | 3. 17. 5, cv               |
| 1. 36. 7, dr              | 3. 20. 1, el               |
| 1. 40. 10, dr             | 3. 21. 1 (bis), ex         |
| 1. 41. 5, r               | 3. 24. 5, el               |
| 1. 42. 2, dr <sup>1</sup> | 3. 25. 1 (vies), t         |
| 1. 42. 4, el              | 3. 29. 2 (bis), t          |
| 1. 42. 6, et              | 4. 4. 4, mv                |
| 1. 43. 5, dr              | 4. 7. 2, et                |
| 1. 50. 4, et              | 4. 11. 1, t                |
| 1. 53. 5, t               | 4. 12. 1, adv              |
| 2. 1. 1, t                | 4. 12. 5, et               |
| 2. 2. 2, et <sup>2</sup>  | 4. 14. 3, mv               |
| 2. 4. 1, et               | 4. 15. 1, mv               |
| 2. 6. 3, el               | 4. 16. 1 (videret), el     |
| 2. 11. 1 (bis), ex        | 4. 16. 1 (intellegent), dr |
| 2. 11. 4 (ter), at        | 4. 24. 2 (bis), adv        |
| 2. 13. 2, et              | 4. 27. 3, mv               |
| 2. 15. 3, et              | 4. 28. 2 (bis), t          |
| 2. 17. 2 (faerent), el    | 4. 28. 3, mv               |
| 2. 17. 2 (abessent), dr   | 4. 29. 3, adv              |
| 2. 17. 4, el              | 4. 30. 1 (bis), el         |
| 2. 17. 5, el              | 4. 31. 3, el               |
| 2. 19. 5 (ter), t         | 4. 32. 1 (bis), ex         |
| 2. 20. 1, i <sup>3</sup>  | 4. 37. 1, et               |
| 2. 22. 1 (bis), ex        | 4. 37. 2, mv               |
| 2. 24. 1, t               | 4. 38. 2, el               |
| 2. 25. 3, el              | 5. 5. 4, dr                |
| 2. 26. 2 (bis), el        | 5. 10. 2, t                |
| 2. 28. 1, el              | 5. 16. 1, el               |
| 2. 29. 1, t               | 5. 17. 3, ex               |
| 2. 29. 3, cv              | 5. 18. 5, at               |
| 2. 29. 4, et              | 5. 22. 4 (bis), el         |
| 2. 29. 5 (bis), ex        | 5. 27. 6, dr               |
| 2. 33. 4, r               | 5. 30. 1, at               |
| 2. 33. 6, at              | 5. 31. 4, ex               |
| 3. 1. 1, t                | 5. 33. 3, el               |
| 3. 1. 6, el               | 5. 35. 5, ex               |
| 3. 2. 4 (bis), dr         | 5. 37. 5, et               |

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 5. 40. 7, cv                    | 7. 28. 3, et                              |
| 5. 43. 4 (ter), dr              | 7. 32. 2, r                               |
| 5. 44. 3, et                    | 7. 33. 3 (doceretur), mv                  |
| 5. 53. 1, dr                    | 7. 33. 3 (vetarent, prohibe-<br>rent), dr |
| 5. 54. 1, ex <sup>4</sup>       | 7. 35. 1 (bis), cl <sup>6</sup>           |
| 5. 55. 2, ex                    | 7. 35. 5, et <sup>7</sup>                 |
| 5. 57. 1, cl                    | 7. 37. 6, ex                              |
| 5. 58. 1, mv                    | 7. 38. 1, et                              |
| 5. 58. 6, cl                    | 7. 41. 2 (bis), dr                        |
| 6. 2. 2, mv                     | 7. 47. 4, ex                              |
| 6. 2. 3, cl                     | 7. 49. 1, mv                              |
| 6. 12. 2, cl                    | 7. 50. 1 (pugnaretur), t                  |
| 6. 24. 1 (ter), r               | 7. 50. 1 (confiderent), ex                |
| 6. 29. 4, et                    | 7. 51. 1, cl                              |
| 6. 31. 1, dr                    | 7. 53. 2, mv                              |
| 6. 31. 5, cl                    | 7. 66. 2, et                              |
| 7. 6. 1, cl                     | 7. 76. 5 (bis), dr                        |
| 7. 11. 4, cl                    | 7. 80. 4 (bis), mv <sup>8</sup>           |
| 7. 12. 4, t                     | 7. 80. 6, et                              |
| 7. 16. 3, i                     | 7. 82. 2, et                              |
| 7. 17. 4 (bis), et <sup>5</sup> | 7. 83. 8, et                              |
| 7. 24. 1, cv                    | 7. 87. 1, et                              |
| 7. 24. 2 (ter), t               |   |
| 7. 25. 1 (quater), t            |   |

<sup>1</sup> Or cl, if not dependent in indirect discourse.<sup>2</sup> A case of *cum primum*.<sup>3</sup> Regarded by some as an interpolation.<sup>4</sup> Reading doubtful.<sup>5</sup> Possibly a case of iterative action.<sup>6</sup> Reading and punctuation uncertain.<sup>7</sup> Al. *ceperat*.<sup>8</sup> Assumed to be a case of *hysteron proteron*.

## B. C.

- |                        |                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. 19. 3' (quater), et | 1. 86. 2, et              |
| 1. 25. 6, mv           | 1. 87. 3, et              |
| 1. 40. 3, t            | 2. 7. 3, et               |
| 1. 45. 3, et           | 2. 9. 3, dr               |
| 1. 46. 1, et           | 2. 16. 2 (bis), dr        |
| 1. 47. 1, dr           | 2. 34. 2, o               |
| 1. 48. 3, cl           | 2. 36. 3, t               |
| 1. 51. 2 (bis), ex     | 2. 39. 4, i               |
| 1. 54. 1 (ter), et     | 2. 40. 2, dr              |
| 1. 70. 3 (bis), cl     | 2. 44. 2 (bis), at        |
| 1. 70. 5, mv           | 3. 1. 2 (bis), cl         |
| 1. 71. 1, dr           | 3. 9. 2, mv               |
| 1. 72. 2, dr           | 3. 9. 3, cl               |
| 1. 72. 4, dr           | 3. 10. 6, dr <sup>1</sup> |



- |                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| 3. 11. 4 (ter), ex       | 3. 69. 4 (haberent, prenderet, iuberet), dr |
| 3. 15. 6, et             | 3. 72. 2, dr                                |
| 3. 18. 1 (bis), ex       | 3. 74. 2, dr                                |
| 3. 19. 2, dr             | 3. 77. 3 (bis), ex                          |
| 3. 21. 1 (bis), mv       | 3. 80. 3, cl                                |
| 3. 21. 5, et             | 3. 82. 4 (bis), ex                          |
| 3. 22. 2, mv             | 3. 83. 1 (ter), ex                          |
| 3. 22. 3 (bis), mv       | 3. 84. 4, dr                                |
| 3. 28. 1, cl             | 3. 85. 4, t                                 |
| 3. 31. 4, mv             | 3. 87. 1 (bis), ex                          |
| 3. 35. 2, cl             | 3. 89. 5, dr                                |
| 3. 37. 2, ev             | 3. 90. 1 (bis), et                          |
| 3. 41. 5, t              | 3. 94. 2, ex                                |
| 3. 45. 3, cl             | 3. 96. 3, et                                |
| 3. 45. 4, mv             | 3. 101. 1, ex                               |
| 3. 47. 2, adv            | 3. 101. 3, dr                               |
| 3. 47. 3, adv            | 3. 101. 5, et                               |
| 3. 47. 6, i              | 3. 102. 7, et <sup>2</sup>                  |
| 3. 48. 2, i              | 3. 109. 1 (bis), t                          |
| 3. 53. 1, et             | 3. 111. 5, r                                |
| 3. 53. 4, et             | 3. 112. 12 (bis), cl                        |
| 3. 57. 1 (gererentur), t | <i>apud Cic. ad Att.</i>                    |
| 3. 57. 1 (constaret), et | 9. 6. A (bis), ev                           |
| 3. 61. 2, adv            | 10. 8. B. 2, ev                             |
| 3. 63. 8 (bis), et       | b. <i>Indicative</i> <sup>3</sup>           |
| 3. 64. 3, et             | <i>B. G.</i> 1. 40. 5, r <sup>4</sup>       |
| 3. 66. 2, et             | <i>B. C.</i> 1. 79. 2 (ter), i              |
| 3. 67. 5 (bis), ex       | <i>B. C.</i> 2. 17. 4, et <sup>5</sup>      |
| 3. 68. 2 (bis), ex       |   |
| 3. 69. 4 (cernerent), cl |   |

<sup>1</sup> *Cum* lacking in the MSS.<sup>2</sup> Reading *qui cum* for *quicumque* of the MSS.<sup>3</sup> *B. C.* iii. 44. 5 excluded as obviously in need of emendation.<sup>4</sup> Dependent in indirect discourse.<sup>5</sup> *Postea . . . quam* a plausible emendation for *postea . . . cum (quam)*.

## II. PLUPERFECT

a. *Subjunctive**B. G.*

- |                               |                    |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. 7. 1, et                   | 1. 35. 2, dr       |
| 1. 12. 5, et                  | 1. 38. 1, t        |
| 1. 22. 1, t                   | 1. 39. 7, dr       |
| 1. 25. 3, i                   | 1. 40. 1, mv       |
| 1. 26. 4 (esset pugnatum), et | 1. 40. 8 (bis), dr |
| 1. 26. 4 (potuissent), adv    | 1. 47. 6, mv       |
| 1. 27. 2 (quater), mv         | 1. 52. 6 (bis), et |
| 1. 33. 4, dr                  | 1. 52. 7, et       |

- |                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 2. 3. 1, mv                     | 5. 17. 2, r                |
| 2. 6. 4, et                     | 5. 18. 2, mv               |
| 2. 8. 3, dr                     | 5. 22. 2, mv               |
| 2. 13. 2, mv                    | 5. 22. 4, el               |
| 2. 13. 3, et                    | 5. 23. 5 (expectasset), et |
| 2. 16. 1, et                    | 5. 23. 5 (solvisset), mv   |
| 2. 17. 2, dr                    | 5. 26. 2 (bis), ev         |
| 2. 23. 4, adv                   | 5. 26. 3 (ter), mv         |
| 2. 24. 2 (bis), et              | 5. 29. 1 (bis), dr         |
| 2. 24. 4, ex                    | 5. 32. 2, et               |
| 2. 26. 1, et                    | 5. 36. 1, et               |
| 2. 26. 5, et                    | 5. 37. 1, et               |
| 2. 27. 3, dr                    | 5. 44. 4, mv               |
| 3. 2. 1 (bis), t                | 5. 47. 4, el               |
| 3. 3. 1 (bis), el               | 5. 53. 1, dr               |
| 3. 3. 2, el                     | 5. 54. 2 (bis), mv         |
| 3. 5. 1 (bis), et               | 5. 54. 3, et               |
| 3. 7. 1, r                      | 6. 1. 4, mv                |
| 3. 12. 1, dr                    | 6. 3. 4, el                |
| 3. 13. 7 (bis), dr              | 6. 41. 2, dr               |
| 3. 17. 5, ev                    | 6. 44. 3, mv <sup>1</sup>  |
| 3. 20. 1, t                     | 7. 5. 4, et                |
| 3. 22. 4 (bis), mv              | 7. 6. 2, t                 |
| 3. 24. 5, el                    | 7. 7. 4, mv                |
| 3. 28. 3 (pervenisset, institu- | 7. 9. 5, mv                |
| isset), et                      | 7. 11. 1, mv               |
| 3. 28. 3 (visus esset), at      | 7. 12. 3, et               |
| 4. 3. 4, ev                     | 7. 12. 6, et               |
| 4. 6. 2, mv                     | 7. 18. 1, t                |
| 4. 11. 2, mv                    | 7. 20. 1, et               |
| 4. 12. 6 (bis), et              | 7. 32. 2, r                |
| 4. 15. 1, et                    | 7. 32. 3, dr               |
| 4. 15. 3, ex                    | 7. 33. 3, mv               |
| 4. 16. 3, et                    | 7. 40. 3, et               |
| 4. 23. 2, ev                    | 7. 44. 1, et               |
| 4. 25. 4, mv                    | 7. 48. 3, et               |
| 4. 25. 6, et                    | 7. 50. 4, et               |
| 4. 26. 4, et                    | 7. 52. 2, dr               |
| 4. 27. 5, dr                    | 7. 53. 3, mv               |
| 4. 32. 3, et                    | 7. 55. 4 (bis), et         |
| 4. 37. 1, mv                    | 7. 57. 4, et               |
| 5. 1. 6, mv                     | 7. 61. 1, mv               |
| 5. 2. 2, mv                     | 7. 62. 4, ev               |
| 5. 8. 6, ev                     | 7. 62. 6, et               |
| 5. 11. 8, t                     | 7. 62. 8, et               |
| 5. 15. 4, ev                    | 7. 78. 4, et               |
| 5. 16. 2, dr                    |                            |

<sup>1</sup> Assuming a slight ellipsis.

## B. C.

- |                                |                                 |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. 14. 1, dr                   | 3. 34. 2, cl                    |
| 1. 16. 2, t                    | 3. 36. 1, t                     |
| 1. 27. 6, dr                   | 3. 36. 2, t                     |
| 1. 30. 2, dr                   | 3. 37. 4, mv                    |
| 1. 31. 2, et                   | 3. 37. 5, et                    |
| 1. 32. 4, ex                   | 3. 38. 3 (bis), et              |
| 1. 34. 1, mv                   | 3. 43. 3, dr                    |
| 1. 40. 3, t                    | 3. 45. 2 (bis), et              |
| 1. 46. 1, et                   | 3. 46. 4, et                    |
| 1. 63. 3, et                   | 3. 50. 1, et <sup>1</sup>       |
| 1. 79. 4, dr                   | 3. 64. 3, et                    |
| 1. 86. 3, et                   | 3. 65. 3, et                    |
| 2. 12. 3, dr                   | 3. 66. 2, et                    |
| 2. 14. 1 (quater), r           | 3. 68. 3, et                    |
| 2. 19. 3, et                   | 3. 71. 4, et                    |
| 2. 20. 6, mv                   | 3. 75. 4, et                    |
| 2. 32. 9, r                    | 3. 86. 2, mv                    |
| 2. 41. 1, et                   | 3. 87. 5, mv                    |
| 2. 41. 6, i                    | 3. 88. 1, et                    |
| 3. 7. 2, cv                    | 3. 91. 4, mv                    |
| 3. 9. 6, et                    | 3. 93. 1 (procucurrissent), mv  |
| 3. 11. 3, mv                   | 3. 93. 1 (animadvertissent), et |
| 3. 13. 3 (bis), et             | 3. 94. 2, ex                    |
| 3. 15. 6, et                   | 3. 94. 6, mv                    |
| 3. 16. 3, mv                   | 3. 99. 5, et                    |
| 3. 19. 5, mv                   | 3. 101. 1, cl                   |
| 3. 21. 5 (ter), et             | 3. 102. 7, et                   |
| 3. 24. 2 (proquinquassent), et | 3. 105. 1, et                   |
| 3. 24. 2 (vidisset), mv        | 3. 106. 1, et                   |
| 3. 26. 2 (essent visi), et     | 3. 108. 6, cl                   |
| 3. 26. 2 (adpropinquasset), t  | 3. 109. 5, mv                   |
| 3. 31. 4, mv                   | <i>apud Cic. ad Att.</i>        |
| 3. 33. 1, t                    | 9. 6. A. (bis), cv              |

## b. Indicative

## B. G.

- |                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 3. 14. 6 (bis), i        | 5. 35. 1 (bis), i        |
| 3. 15. 1, i <sup>2</sup> | 5. 35. 3, i              |
| 4. 17. 4 (bis), i        | 7. 22. 2, i              |
| 5. 19. 2, i              | B. C.                    |
|                          | 1. 58. 2, i <sup>3</sup> |

<sup>1</sup> Possibly a case of iterative action.<sup>2</sup> Al. *circumsisterent* (in that case, mv?)<sup>3</sup> So the editors generally; otherwise, et.



## B. PERFECT TENSE

Under this heading the following additional abbreviations are used:

Iterative, marking the stage of  
the action, it

Cum primum, ep  
Cum-inversum, ei

a. *Subjunctive**B. G.*

1. 16. 6, cl<sup>1</sup>
1. 26. 2, ev
6. 25. 4, dr

*B. C.*

1. 9. 3, dr
2. 33. 2, dr
3. 86. 3, dr

b. *Indicative**B. G.*

3. 9. 2, ep
4. 33. 1, it
5. 21. 3, i
6. 12. 1, t
6. 16. 5, i<sup>2</sup>
6. 17. 3 (bis)<sup>3</sup>, i
6. 18. 3, it
6. 19. 3, i

6. 27. 4, i

6. 27. 5, it

7. 26. 3 (bis),<sup>3</sup> ci

*B. C.*

2. 17. 4 (bis), ct<sup>4</sup>

3. 87. 7, ct<sup>5</sup>

*apud Cic. ad Att.*

10. 8. B. 1, t

<sup>1</sup> Text so arranged by some as to put the *cum*-clause in dependent relation.

<sup>2</sup> Al. *deficit*.

<sup>3</sup> One of the perfects of this passage seems a necessary emendation for the subjunctive.

<sup>4</sup> *Postea . . . quam* plausibly suggested for the MS reading *postea . . . cum* (*quom*).

<sup>5</sup> MS reading questioned by recent editors.



THE KEY TO THE RECONSTRUCTION OF  
THE FIFTH-CENTURY THEATER  
AT ATHENS

BY

JAMES TURNEY ALLEN

---

Since the epoch-making discoveries of Dörpfeld in the theater at Athens in the winter of 1885-86 and the publication of *Das griechische Theater* in 1896, there has been universal agreement upon at least two points. The first of these is that the oldest extant foundations of the *skene* and the orchestra-circle which they face (diam. 19.61 m.) date from a period not earlier than 427. The second is that the theater which antedated this reconstruction is represented chiefly by the larger orchestra-circle (diam *c.* 24 m.), of which portions still remain and which constituted originally a terrace some six feet in height at its southernmost edge.

Waiving the question as to the precise date when the theater was rebuilt, let us for the sake of brevity designate the building which followed the reconstruction, the fourth-century theater; and that which preceded it, the fifth-century theater. What was the relation between these two structures? This question has never been satisfactorily answered. Many have followed Dörpfeld in assuming that the orchestra of the fifth-century theater occupied the entire space enclosed by the old circle of the



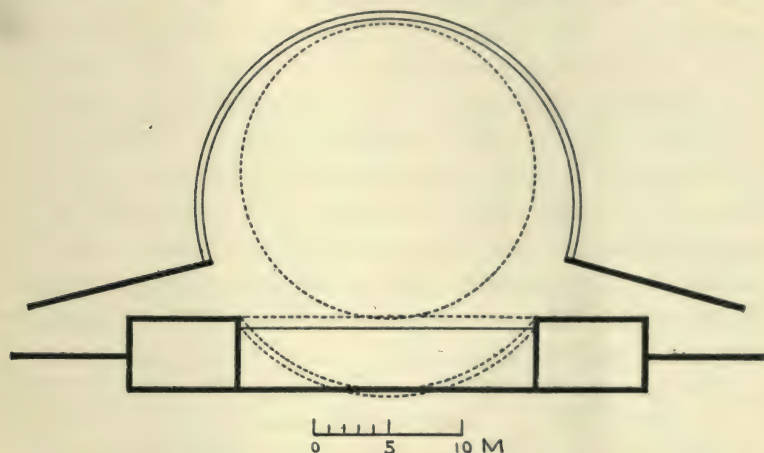
orchestra-terrace and that the *skene* was erected outside of this circle and tangent thereto (*Das griech. Theater*, p. 55). And this is supposed to explain why the southern half of the orchestra-area of the fourth-century theater is rectangular rather than curvilinear in shape. But none of the adherents of this theory has ever explained why the orchestra-area and the *skene* should have been reduced in size when the theater was reconstructed. The fourth-century theater was not smaller than its predecessor had been; on the contrary there are reasons for believing that the auditorium was actually larger.

Others suggested in opposition to Dörpfeld's view that the *skene* was originally erected *on* the terrace rather than beyond it. So for example Robert: "Auf die Frage nach der Stelle des älteren Skenengebäudes giebt der Ausgrabungsbefund keine Antwort. . . . Ich bin in meiner alten Meinung, dass es die hintere Hälfte der Orchestra einnahm, durch Dörpfelds eigene Darlegungen nur bestärkt worden." (*Hermes*, xxxii (1897), 423). But precisely where the *skene* was erected and what its dimensions were no one has succeeded in determining. The latest architectural treatise dealing with this subject (Fiechter, *Die baugeschichtliche Entwicklung des antiken Theaters*, 1914) merely states: "Es muss in V. Jahrhundert ein bedeutender Bühnenbau existiert haben. . . . Wie der Bau aber ausgesehen hat, weiss kein Mensch" (p. 11).

But the solution of these problems has lain ready to hand, albeit unobserved, since the publication of *Das griechische Theater* twenty-two years ago (see Tafeln 1 and 3). The old orchestra-terrace was perhaps originally a threshing-floor, as Gardner suggested (*Ancient Athens*, 1902, p. 123). Its retaining-wall had an appreciable thickness, which is indicated by Dörpfeld (Taf. 1 and 3) by two concentric circles. Now if the front portion of the *skene* of the fourth-century theater together with the orchestra-circle, the diameter of which is determined by the inner boundary of the gutter, be superimposed upon a circle of the exact size of the old orchestra-terrace in such a manner

that the corners of the *paraskenia* nearest the orchestra coincide exactly with the inner edge of the retaining-wall (see Dörpfeld, Taf. 3), then the wall at the rear of the *paraskenia* and connecting them (marked *K, L*, in Taf. 3) rests upon the retaining-wall of the terrace at its southernmost point, and the circle of the fourth-century orchestra falls just within the inner periphery of the larger circle at its northernmost point, as is shown in the accompanying plan.

Again, if a line be drawn between the *paraskenia* and at the same distance back from their front line as the Hellenistic



*proskenion* stood back of the Hellenistic *paraskenia* (Taf. 1 and 3), this line is an exact chord of the outermost circle of the old retaining-wall.

These striking facts are of the greatest significance. Such coincidences cannot have been accidental, and their discovery enables us for the first time to reconstruct this portion of the fifth-century theater. It is now clear, in the first place, that in the fifth century the *skene* was erected *on* the orchestra-terrace, as Robert suggested, and that after its erection the north-south diameter of the area which remained available for the evolutions of the chorus was the same as the diameter of the fourth-century

orchestra. In other words, the orchestra of the fourth-century theater was of the same size as that of the fifth-century theater after the erection of the *skene*.

This *skene* was flanked by the two *paraskenia* and became, I believe, the *proskenion* of the fourth and later centuries, as I sought to prove in a paper read last November before the Philological Association of the Pacific Coast. A brief résumé of this paper will be found in the forthcoming volume of the *Transactions and Proceedings of the American Philological Association* for 1917. The arguments will be presented in full in a monograph on the *Greek Theater of the Fifth Century*, which it is expected will be published shortly by the University of California Press. It is gratifying that the discovery of the key to the reconstruction of the fifth-century theater supports this contention.

Furthermore, we now understand why the fourth-century *paraskenia* had a depth of five meters and stood twenty and one-half meters apart. These dimensions were determined by the size of the original orchestra-terrace, and were retained when the theater was reconstructed. And further it is altogether probable that the width of the *paraskenia* in the fifth century was the same as in the later building (c. 7 m.).

Again, the position<sup>1</sup> of the *parodoi* in the fifth-century theater is now for the first time determined. And finally the origin of the divergence which existed in many Greek theaters between the line of the seats and the circle of the orchestra is made clear. As the seats in the fifth century were arranged about the larger circle of the orchestra-terrace, this divergence was due originally to accident rather than to design. When the theater was rebuilt this feature may have been modified, but in the main the dimensions of the orchestra and of the front portions of the *skene*, including the *paraskenia*, were retained practically unchanged.

---

<sup>1</sup> With reference, that is, to the orchestra-terrace; their *direction* is not determined. It follows that the southern boundary of the auditorium to right and left of the orchestra-terrace cannot be indicated with precision.



THE DEATH OF LEPIDUS, LEADER OF THE  
REVOLUTION OF 78 B. C.

BY

MONROE E. DEUTSCH

---

Suetonius in his life of Julius alludes but briefly to the revolution of M. Aemilius Lepidus in 78 B.C.; he is naturally interested in it only in so far as it concerns Julius Caesar. After telling in chapter 3 of Caesar's return to Rome to participate in it, and his reasons for holding aloof, Suetonius makes no further mention of it until he reaches chapter 5, where he informs us of Caesar's bill to secure the recall of his brother-in-law, Lucius Cinna, "et qui cum eo civili discordia Lepidum secuti post necem consulis ad Sertorium confugerant."

Of particular interest are the words *post necem consulis*. The consul is, of course, Lepidus. If one were to interpret the words from the standpoint of their usual meaning, they would be translated "after the consul had met his violent end."

Such we find to be the meaning of *nex* whenever we meet it elsewhere in Suetonius. He uses the word frequently, and in none of the other thirty-one occurrences does it imply anything other than a violent death. Thus it is used of suicide in *Iul.* 36, *Aug.* 13. 2 and 66. 2, *Cal.* 23. 3 and *Nero* 35. 5; it refers to Julius Caesar's murder in *Aug.* 10. 1, 35. 1, 95 and *Nero* 3. 1. The word also appears in *Iul.* 14. 2, 20. 5, 74. 1; *Tib.* 60; *Cal.* 12. 3, 24. 3, 57. 2; *Claud.* 11. 3 and 29. 2; *Nero* 26. 2, 33. 1, 34. 5 and 49. 2; *Galba* 9. 2; *Otho* 1. 3; *Vit.* 10. 2 and 14. 1; *Tit.* 1 and 9. 1; *Dom.* 8. 4 and 14. 4; and *Vit. Plin.*

However, today, not one of the editors or translators so interprets the passage. Casaubon first pointed out that according to other ancient accounts Lepidus died of disease, and that Suetonius was accordingly in error. Bernegger quoted some of the statements as to Lepidus' death which are found in the sources, and asked: "An forte nex de tali quoque morte? Sed aliorum autorum exempla requiro." Graevius presented the solution of the problem which is still dominant. He interpreted *necem* as simply equivalent to *mortem* and justified his position by two passages, the one in Justin, the other in Seneca. That is the present status of the interpretation of the passage, for all subsequent editors and translators, so far as known to me, have accepted Graevius' solution.

Let us, accordingly, turn to the citations from Justin and Seneca. In Justin *XL*. 6. 9 we read: "Atque ita (Mithridates) adversa valetudine adreptus, non minor Arsace proavo, gloriosa senectute decedit," and then in *XLII*. 1. 1: "Post necem Mithridatis, Parthorum regis . . ." Clearly *nex* is used of a death from illness, but on the other hand Justin made this so entirely evident in the paragraph immediately preceding that the change from the usual meaning of the word is perfectly obvious and causes no difficulty.

The other citation is from Seneca *ad Marciam de Consolatione* 21. 7, and the passage beginning with 21. 6 runs thus: "Frustra vota ac studia sunt: habebit quisque quantum illi dies primus adscripsit. Ex illo quo primum lucem vidit, iter mortis ingressus est accessitque fato propior et illi ipsi qui adiciebantur adulescentiae anni vitae detrahebantur. In hoc omnes errore ver-samur, ut non putemus ad mortem nisi senes inclinatosque iam vergere, cum illo infantia statim et iuventa, omnis aetas ferat. Agunt opus suum fata; nobis sensum nostrae necis auferunt, quoque facilius obrepat mors, sub ipso vitae nomine latet." Once more *nex* = *mors*, but that it bears this changed meaning comes as no surprise in this passage which deals with the certainty of death. Indeed in these lines quoted the word *mors* appears three times; it is not extraordinary, therefore, that

Seneca should turn to another word for variety. Moreover, the general nature of the sentence in which *necis* appears, with its *nobis* and *nostrae*, makes it clear that *nex* does not mean a particular kind of death, but death in general.

There is also a third instance of this use which I have found by accident. In Manilius IV. 23 *necis* is clearly synonymous with *mortis*:

“an, nisi fata darent leges vitaeque necisque,  
fugissent ignes Aeneam, Troia sub uno  
non eversa viro fatis vicisset in ipsis?”

But though here, too, *nex* stands for death in general, this extension of meaning is made clear to the reader both by the coupling of it with *vita*, and by the exceedingly general nature of all that precedes. Thus in verse 14 one reads: “Fata regunt orbem, certa stant omnia lege.” Verse 16 with its union of *nasci* and *mori* makes this obvious: “Nascentes morimur, finisque ab origine pendet.” And finally the verse (22) just preceding the one under discussion is wholly general in its application: “sors est sua cuique ferenda.”

In other words, in the only three passages known wherein *nex* = *mors* the reader has been properly prepared for the change from the usual significance of the word.

Not so in the passage in Suetonius; our author has not even alluded to Lepidus' death, the first mention of it lies in these very words, *post necem consulis*.

Therefore, as *nex* everywhere else in Suetonius refers to a violent death,<sup>1</sup> and the only three passages in Latin thus far known in which *nex* = *mors* make the changed meaning absolutely clear through the context, and this is not true in the slightest degree of the passage in Suetonius, it seems most logical to give *nex* its usual meaning in this passage also.

This being the case, it seems desirable to examine the sources as to the manner of Lepidus' death.

<sup>1</sup> In Lessing's *Scriptorum Historiae Augustae Lexicon* twenty-two (possibly twenty-three) instances of the use of *nex* are cited, but all refer to a violent death.



Let us begin with Livy *Per.* XC: "(Lepidus) a Q. Catulo collega Italia pulsus et in Sardinia frustra bellum molitus perit." As *perire* may be used of a death in battle or the like, and also of a death from disease, no light is thrown upon our problem.

Next follows Valerius Maximus II. 8. 7. Let us at this point confine our attention to the phrase in which Lepidus is mentioned: "Q. Catulus M. Lepido collega suo cum omnibus seditionis copiis extinctoque. . . ." Of course *extinctus* is also not clear and may be used of either kind of death;<sup>2</sup> but in this passage the coupling of Lepidus with his troops makes one think more readily of a violent death.

Pliny in his *Naturalis Historia* VII. 53. 186 says: "M. Lepidus . . . quem diverti anxietate diximus mortuum." Here we have a clear statement; he died owing to anxiety with reference to a divorce. Pliny further clarifies this statement by saying (*N. H.* VII. 36. 122): "M. Lepidus Appuleiae uxoris caritate post repudium obiit." This is likewise supported, though the details vary, by Plutarch *Pompey* 16: "Λέπιδος μὲν οὖν εὐθὺς ἐκπεσὼν τῆς Ἰταλίας ἀπεπέρασεν εἰς Σαρδόνα· κακεῖ νοσήσας ἐτελεύτησε δι' ἀθυμίαν, οὐ τῶν πραγμάτων, ὥς φασιν, ἀλλὰ γραμματικῶ περιπεσὼν, ἐξ οὗ μοιχείαν τινὰ τῆς γυναικὸς ἐφώρασε." This, however, also shows that another story of Lepidus' death was current in Plutarch's time.

Florus (II. 11. 7) reads thus: "(Lepidus) hostisque a senatu iudicatus incruenta fuga Etruriam, inde Sardiniam recessit ibique morbo et paenitentia interiit." This statement, i.e., that he fell ill because he regretted his participation in the revolution, at once suggests the popular version which Plutarch rejected.

Ampelius 19 has this account: "Lutatius Catulus, qui Lepidum acta Sullae rescindere volentem admoto exercitu Italia fugavit, et solus omnium sine sanguine bellum civile confecit." Surely here it is clearly implied that neither Lepidus nor any of his soldiers met a violent end in the revolution, thus harmonizing with *incruenta fuga* of Florus.

Appian (*B. C.* I. 107) tells us: "ἡττώμενος ὁ Λέπιδος καὶ οὐκ

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Liv. 8.3.7: iuvenem fortuna morbo extinxit.

ἐς πολὺ ἔτι ἀντισχῶν ἐς Σαρδῶν διέπλευσεν, ἔνθα νόσῳ τηκεδόνι χρώμενος ἀπέθανε." Once more the death is ascribed to disease, but no further details are given.

Dio (44. 28. 2) states in a speech that he places in the mouth of Cicero: "ὥς δ' ἀπηλλάγημέν ποτε καὶ τούτου" (i.e., Lepidus). The language is unclear but might perhaps suggest a violent end.

Julius Exuperantius (p. 4) declares of Lepidus in Sardinia: "Atque ibi cum Triario propraetore variis proeliis gravibusque confligit: . . . ac dum multa parat morbo gravi oppressus et mortuus est." Here we have merely a reference to disease as causing his end; neither repentance for his own action nor worry because of the conduct of his wife and his divorce is mentioned.

Zonaras' account (X. 2) is simply: "Λέπιδος δὲ τῆς Ἰταλίας ἐκπεπτωκῶς νόσῳ ἀπέθανεν."

To summarize the accounts, we find: (1) the Epitome of Livy, Valerius Maximus (as far as we have discussed his words) and Dio throw no clear light on the manner of his death; (2) Pliny attributes it to sorrow because of a divorce from his wife, with which statement Plutarch may be regarded as in agreement when he ascribes it to the discovery of a letter proving his wife to have been unfaithful; (3) Plutarch, however, refers to a common belief that he died of sorrow on account of the fate of the revolt, which is practically the view of Florus also; (4) Appian, Julius Exuperantius and Zonaras lay it merely to disease; (5) Florus and Ampelius further declare that the revolution was bloodless.

Clearly then while there is some disagreement, the statements of our authorities would lead us to say that Lepidus died of disease, which was possibly induced by sorrow either because of the divorce, or on account of his connection with the revolution.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>3</sup> There is a dissertation by Johannes Neunheuser entitled "M. Aemilius Lepidus; die Reformen des Sulla und die Ersten Versuche sie im Römischen Staate rückgängig zu machen" (Münster, I. W.), and published at Essen a. Ruhr, 1902. On page 42 appears the following statement: "Zu dem Gram über sein Missgeschick gesellte sich noch eine auszehrende Krankheit. Als dann schliesslich noch seine Gattin Untreue an ihm beging, und er sich von ihr hatte scheiden lassen, starb er aus Kummer über seine Misserfolge und noch mehr über die Untreue seiner Gattin."

That there was a well-defined difference of opinion, however, Plutarch makes quite evident.

If, therefore, we had no further light to throw upon the matter, probably the best solution would be to agree with Casaubon that Suetonius was in error when he ascribed Lepidus' death to violence.

There is, however, a passage in Cicero's *Third Catilinarian Oration* (10.24) that is of very great interest. The orator is here speaking of the various civil disorders and revolutions which have preceded the Catilinarian conspiracy and exhorts his hearers: "Etenim recordamini, Quirites, omnis civilis dissensiones, non solum eas quas audistis sed eas quas vosmet ipsi meministis atque vidistis. L. Sulla P. Sulpicium oppressit: C. Marium, custodem huius urbis; multosque fortis viros partim eiecit ex civitate, partim interemit. Cn. Octavius consul armis expulit ex urbe collegam: omnis hic locus acervis corporum et civium sanguine redundavit. Superavit postea Cinna cum Mario: tum vero clarissimis viris interfectis lumina civitatis extincta sunt. Ultus est huius victoriae crudelitatem postea Sulla: ne dici quidem opus est quanta deminutione civium et quanta calamitate rei publicae. Dissensit M. Lepidus a clarissimo et fortissimo viro, Q. Catulo: attulit non tam ipsius interitus rei publicae luctum quam ceterorum."

In this enumeration of previous civil disorders Cicero stresses the fact that in these former ones the solution was only reached through bloodshed, as opposed to the present one in which as yet no one has perished (*sine caede, sine sanguine*, 10. 23).

*Ipsius interitus* refers to Lepidus. The question at once arises as to the meaning of *interitus* here. The point which Cicero first makes is that in the insurrection of Catiline not a single person has been slain, not a single drop of blood shed (10.23). Then he asks his hearers to recall previous revolutions that occurred within their own time. For what purpose does he mention them? To point out that each entailed the death of Roman citizens. He first tells us rather vaguely that Sulla *oppressit* Sulpicius; we know, however, that he caused Sulpicius' death, as is shown by the words of Cicero in his *de Oratore*



III. 3. 11, when speaking of this same Sulpicius: "cui quidem ad summam gloriam eloquentiae efflorescenti ferro erepta vita est."<sup>4</sup> Of the Marians some were banished by Sulla, but *partim interemit*. That Octavius' conflict with Cinna entailed bloodshed is made more than clear by Cicero: "omnis hic locus acervis corporum et civium sanguine redundavit." Then Cicero mentions the victory of Cinna and Marius to direct attention to the great men whose death it caused: "tum vero clarissimis viris interfectis lumina civitatis extincta sunt." Sulla's subsequent triumph is next mentioned: "ne dici quidem opus est quanta deminutione civium et quanta calamitate rei publicae." Then follows the allusion to Lepidus; if *ceterorum* in that sentence refers to those just mentioned as slain in previous civil wars, what would one infer from Cicero's words save that Lepidus, like them, met a violent end during the course of his revolution? If on the other hand *ceterorum* refers to the followers of Lepidus, what would one infer save that they and Lepidus met the same fate<sup>5</sup> and that that must have been, as in the case of those previously mentioned, a violent death in the suppression of the revolt? In other words, according to the one alternative Cicero would be alluding to the death of Lepidus alone; according to the other, to that of Lepidus and his followers. In either event, if the sentence has any meaning here, a violent end in the course of the suppression of the revolt must have been in Cicero's mind. And when finally a few lines later Cicero summarizes these civil turmoils, it is to be noted that he says that *all* of them entailed the bloodshed of citizens: "Atque illae tamen omnes dissensiones, quarum nulla exitium rei publicae quaesivit, eius modi fuerunt ut non reconciliatione concordiae sed internecione civium diiudicatae sint." It is accordingly difficult to see why Cicero mentioned Lepidus' death unless he met his end in his revolution and because of it.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>4</sup> Cf. also Vell. Pat. II. 19 and Plut. Sulla 10.

<sup>5</sup> Thus F. W. Kelsey says in a note on the passage in his school edition of Cicero: "*ceterorum*, i.e., who perished with him."

<sup>6</sup> It is interesting to note that this is the view presented in the Allen and Greenough school edition of Cicero. It is based, apparently, entirely on the obvious meaning of the passage in Cicero.

In the context, as we have just seen, a violent death must apparently be meant. *Interitus* is used again and again by Cicero of a violent death.<sup>7</sup> In fact in this very oration (10. 23) just before the passage under discussion he says to the citizens: "Erepti enim estis ex crudelissimo ac miserrimo interitu."

Indeed would the passage not be absurd in this connection if Lepidus died because his wife had been proved unfaithful or because he fell ill through *paenitentia*?

We see then that Cicero in these words implies that Lepidus met a violent death of some kind, as does Suetonius in the passage under discussion.

We might, if we chose, leave the problem at this point, and simply declare that there was in all probability an account of Lepidus' death current that described his end as a violent one, and that it is evidently followed both by Cicero and Suetonius.

Let us, however, now return to the passage in Valerius Maximus (II. 8. 7); if we survey the entire paragraph, we find that he is discussing the awarding of triumphs and points out that they were not given for victories in civil wars, *utpote non externo, sed domestico partae cruore*. Then he enumerates victors in civil wars, none of whom received triumphs. Nasica, he points out, butchered the party of Tiberius Gracchus, and Opimius that of Gaius Gracchus (*trucidarunt*).<sup>8</sup> Catulus returned to Rome showing only moderate joy though *M. Lepido collega suo cum omnibus seditionis copiis extinctoque*. The swords brought back by C. Antonius, victor over Catiline, had had the blood wiped off (*abstersos gladios*). Cinna and Marius eagerly drank the blood of citizens (*hauserant quidem avidi*

<sup>7</sup> A passage interesting for our purpose is *Tusc.* III. 27. 65 where *neces* and *interitus* are both employed: "ut apud Homerum cotidianae neces interitusque multorum sedationem maerendi adferunt." Julius Caesar's murder is spoken of as *interitus* in *Phil.* II. 35. 88, II. 37. 95, and III. 12. 30. It is similarly employed of Trebonius' violent death in *Phil.* XI. 13. 32 and XII. 10. 25; in *Brutus* 33. 125 Gaius Gracchus' death is referred to as *immature interitu*, and in *pro Sestio* 32. 69 we find the attempt on Pomey's life mentioned in the words *de interitu Cn. Pompei*. Cf. also *pro Milone* 5. 13, 6. 15, 7. 20, 19. 51, 29. 79 and 35. 98; *Phil.* II. 11. 27, III. 8. 19, XIV. 4. 11; *de harusp. resp.* 25. 54; *de dom.* 36. 96; *pro Sest.* 19. 44, 23. 51, 67. 140.

<sup>8</sup> The text is unsettled.

*civilem sanguinem*). And the victories of Sulla likewise had been *crudelissimi*. In each of these the point stressed is the shedding of the blood of Roman citizens; in fact the list is prefaced by the statement that they were *non externo, sed domestico partae cruore*. This being the case, when we are told that Catulus returned to Rome showing only moderate joy *M. Lepido collega suo cum omnibus seditionis copiis extinctoque*, is it probable that this is an allusion to anything other than a violent death inflicted upon Lepidus and a large number of his soldiers in the course of the revolution?

In short, the context of the entire passage in Valerius Maximus makes it seem likely that he too was following this other account of Lepidus' end, which we have assumed on the basis of the words of Cicero and Suetonius.

We must, however, remember one important point: Cicero's *Third Catilinarian Oration* was delivered precisely fourteen years after Lepidus' death, and of all our sources he is by many years the nearest in time to the event itself. Moreover, the conscientiousness and general accuracy of Suetonius are acknowledged.

Not only, therefore, do I believe that Cicero, Valerius Maximus, and Suetonius followed this other account, according to which Lepidus died through violence, but I even believe that this account of his end is by far the most likely to be the true one, the most entitled to credence. It was current fourteen years after his death, and appears in those of our sources that are in general most accurate. In short, it seems to me most probable not only that Lepidus met his end through violence, but also that it occurred in connection with the suppression of the revolution in which he was engaged.

Whence, then, one may ask, arose this other tale of his death? Is it to be declared wholly false in spite of the circumstantial form in which it appears in Plutarch and Pliny? The answers to these questions can be nothing more than conjectures. There seems to me, however, no good reason to reject entirely the story of Appuleia's infidelity and divorce, and the sorrow into which



it plunged Lepidus; it may even be true that he fell ill because of it. It would be possible to accept the tale thus far, but deny that his death was due to the cause described by Plutarch and Pliny. He may have brooded over her faithlessness and even become ill, but still met a violent end in the suppression of his revolution. If this should perchance be the truth, it would not have been strange that the currency of the romantic tale and the stress placed upon these incidents which occurred shortly before his death should have gradually obscured the true story of his end.

This is, to be sure, merely an hypothesis; the truth in that story may be far less, and some slight incident may have been magnified by romantic narrators into the tale told in such detail by Plutarch and Pliny.

A positive statement as to the degree of truth in it is manifestly impossible. The purpose of this paper, however, is merely to attempt to throw a little light upon the interpretation of the passage in Suetonius, and to indicate that the passages in Cicero, Valerius Maximus, and Suetonius all apparently point to an account of Lepidus' end differing from that found in other sources, and that this, moreover, would seem to be entitled to greater credence.

NOTES ON THE SILVAE OF STATIUS  
BOOK I

BY

WILLIAM A. MERRILL

---

“Non enim cuiusvis est Statium corrigere, prout summorum virorum exemplis vides,” Markland on v 5, 52.

## 1, 6 effigere manus

For effigere, effinxere effecere and exeruere have been proposed, but no one of them is used elsewhere by Statius. Perhaps fluxit of verse 3 would defend effudere here. He has effusae in i Praef. 15, iv 2, 23, v 1, 111.

1, 15 iuvat ora tueri  
mixta notis belli placidamque gerentia pacem

Mixta cannot be right; the participle does not occur elsewhere in the Silvae, nor notis either. Notae here probably means scars, and manca may be the word demanded, although it usually means maiming of the hand. Cf. iii 3, 181 foedatusque ora.

1, 18 exhaustis Martem non altius armis  
Bistonius portat sonipes

Altius has been questioned by many. Write valdius, which gives a contrast to exhaustis and harmonizes with the thought of magno pondere in line 20. Armis is from armus, as has been suggested by Schwartz and others.

**1, 23** qui fessus bellis

Fessus is uncomplimentary to the great Julius. He was fortunate in war: faustus. I should hardly dare to defend faustus of a person in a less artificial writer than Statius. He does not mean faustus bellis, but ei cui bella fausta fuerunt, one who has been favored in war. Th. vi 87 infausti belli; id. viii 250 non hunc Tyrii fors prospera belli, tantum bella iuvant. In the *Silvae* ii 1, 27 infaustus vates, v 3, 40 infaustae novercae, ii 1, 120 infausta dextra occur.

**1, 28** et minor in leges iret gener et Cato castris

This is a much tortured line and all the words in it except Cato and gener have been questioned. The meaning is et gener iret minor in leges tuas et Cato iret minor castris tuis (in castra tua). The only real difficulty is the lack of coördination between in leges and castris. As the terminal dative occurs, for instance, in i 1, 82, 2, 212 and 5, 53 (cited by Cartault, *J. d. Savants* 1903, 632), castris may stand, although Schrader changed it to castra. I have found no example in M of such a corruption as castris for castra.

**1, 33** templa super fulges et prospectare videris

As superfulgeo occurs nowhere else, it is probable that this compound does not exist. In iii 3, 177 prono fusum super oscula for superfusum occurs; super was not so closely joined to verbs as other prepositions were. Statius may have been thinking of Aen. ix 168 haec super e vallo prospectant.

**1, 38** praetendit colla Medusae

As there is no other example in M of -it for -ens, it is better to keep praetendit with some of the editors.

**1, 40** nec si pater ipse teneres

Nec si, i 5, 60 nec si Baianis veniat novus hospes, may be compared. Sic, the reading of some inferior MSS. may be defended by i 2, 86 nec sic metu pallebat, the only occurrence in the *Silvae* of nec sic. For nec si cf. i 2, 43, 44; 4, 128; 5, 60; ii 1, 10; v 3, 42.



**1, 42** et qui se totis Temese dedit

Quis of Politian should be read rather than cui; the reference is to pectora in 41. The contracted form occurs in v 3, 98, dative, and i 2, 150 and iv 7, 54, ablative. For the corruption cf. iv 6, 65 acie semper for acies semper.

**1, 43** et tergo remissa ehlamys latus ense quieto Securum

All of the editors with A read it for et, but the omission of est is not unusual in the *Silvae*; cf. 15, 40; 2, 179, 213; 3, 41; ii 1, 168, 228; 6, 85; 7, 31; iii 3, 14; iv 16, 50; iv 6, 28; v 1, 10; 3, 100, 219, 211. The verb *it* is also read from conjecture in ii 3, 9; iv 3, 62; v, 1 245. It is noticeable that the second clause in 43 also lacks a copula.

**1, 47** acrius attollit vultus

Acrius is not used elsewhere in the *Silvae* and is not called for by the sense. The correction *altius* by Markland is too easy. Perhaps the proper word is *arduus*, a favorite one with Statius, cf. 7, 63, 72. If the scribe wrote *adruus* it would be changed to *acrius*. *Arduus* in different forms occurs 17 times, with no variants. Yet can *acrius* mean "spiritedly"?

**1, 50** vacuae pro cespite terrae

Vacuae is unmeaning and the conjectures *Venetae* and *Veledae* have been made. A geographical term would be in keeping with the context, but failing that, *victa* would make sense.

**1, 64** continuus septem per culmina montis It fragor

The sense demands *montium* and no conjecture that has yet been made is at all probable. I believe that Statius wrote *montium*, daring as it is, and that a grammarian emended to *montis*. On this synaeresis see L. Mueller, *De re metrica*<sup>1</sup> 257, 2300. Whether this supposed critic took *montis* as a collective singular, or understood *per* before it to make it an accusative, I do not know.

**1, 68** innumeros aeris sonitus et verbere crudo

I cannot believe that there was anything bloody in the creaking of the crane and in the hammering of the bronze that aroused Curtius. Crudo is a careless addition to verbere. The word that was dislodged must have had a general resemblance to crudo; it may have been saevo. Crebro, surdo, and duro have been suggested.

**1, 82** temptasses me non audente profundo Ire lacu

Curtius would have dared to leap into the gulf whether Domitian had been there or not so far as his courage went. Gaudente and nec suadente have been proposed, but they are not in place. I suggest nitente; he would not have exerted himself, for there would have been no necessity with Domitian at hand. The n was omitted after non, and the stages of corruption were nitente, nutente, audente; ii 1, 58 timendem M, timendum m, tumentem A. Cf. iii 1, 20 saxa summovit nitens.

**1, 94** hoc et sub nocte silenti . . . tua turba . . . labetur.

There is no other example in the *Silvae* of hoc meaning hue, which is the reading of the inferior MSS. In the thirteen other places where hue occurs there is no variant.

**1, 105** certus ames terras

There is no parallel for certus ames; certus usually has a dependent genitive. Perhaps rectus should be read: v 3, 248 amor recti; Th. ii 360 rectum terris defendere curat.

**2, 4** demigrant Helicone deae quatiuntque novena Lampade

Noveni means nine each or nine; the singular is not found elsewhere. Hence novenae should be read here; iii 5, 80 columbae M, columba a, at end of the line. Note that Elegia is tenth, in line 9. The singular of lampas is used of plural action in 80 below, and in iv 8, 51, Th. iv 133. But I must acknowledge that lampas usually has a modifier, and it would suit Statius' artificial style to have novena lampade mean novenis lampadibus. But as the

Muses usually do not have torches (see Ellis, *Cl. R.* xi 44), novella may be the word demanded. Novella would be in sharp opposition to sollemnem. Again, decimam in line 9 may support novena, but everyone knew that there were nine muses.

## 2, 13 coetuque Latino Dissimulata deam

If coetuque Latino means in coetuque Latino the text is sound: ii 7, 22 Romani colitur chori. Dissimulata needs no ablative: Ach. ii 274 dissimulata latebo, but Th. iv 811 tum vultu dea dissimulata profatur. Venus hid her divinity by becoming a member of the Latin company. Markland quotes Ovid *F.* vi 507 dissimulata deam Latias Saturnia Bacchas Instimulat.

## 2, 20 amplexum niveos optatae coniugis artus

Te must be supplied with amplexum; cf. 36; ii 1, 78; v 1, 46; and for the verb, iii 5, 52. As Statius never elides the first syllable of the verse, he could not write te here. Te begins the verse eight times, once in the *Silvae* (ii 1, 150).

## 2, 23 excipis et dominae niveis a vultibus obstas

Niveis has been questioned, but I think that the corruption lies rather in vultibus, for which I would write montibus. Vulnera in v 3, 45 is written in M for munera. The meaning is "shield your mistress from the snowy mountains of flowers"—floribus innumeris, 21; niveis takes up lilia in 22.

## 2, 45 te potius prensa veheret Tithonia biga

Prensa and veheret are usually changed, because prenum is called for rather than prensa. Yet Statius probably knew this and expected prensa to be taken with te in thought rather than with biga. So in Th. x 370 incendit pronis dea curribus alnum Sidus, so far as the sense goes, prona would be admissible; and in Th. vii 725 ipse minus curru Tirynthia fundit Robora, Tirynthia would suit curru as well as robora. In the hasty composition of the *Silvae* Statius permitted liberties with syntax, not admissible in more formal writing. Below in verse 53 amplexu duro Getici resoluta mariti, we might have had duri.



**2, 55** signa petunt quas ferre faces quae pectora figi Imperet

We know nothing about any variation in the torches to be applied to different victims. Probably quas is due to quae pectora. Nodell's qua should be read: iii 5, 70 toro festas for toros, iv 3, 13 quis fortem for qui, v 3, 96 quis furias for qui.

**2, 67** at quondam . . . virum concede moveri

Markland would have tandem for quondam, which is retained by all others in spite of its use with an imperative. Write quandam; and for moveri, movere should be written with Otto. Quandam is taken up by etiam in 79, hanc 107, haec 117, huic 121, 127, 128, 130, 136; ipsam 139, 161. The words lacrimis et supplice dextra must refer to Stella alone and not to men in general; the man is indicated in 70 foll., and in line 94 Apollo complains vatem maerere suum, and in 75 he has already been pierced by the shafts of love. The construction is careless and complicated: at concede virum Stellam movere lacrimis quandam mulierem, for he deserves our pity. Quondam meaning suo tempore is not used with the imperative. Note that in this conversation the names of Stella and Violentilla are avoided.

**2, 94** iam mater amatos Indulge thalamos

Phillimore suspects amatos as unexampled. Perhaps Amorum should be written, amatos being due to thalamos. If the poet meant "desired marriage" he could have used petitos; cf. amplexu . . . petito in 36.

**2, 98** sic tibi plectra dedit . . . hic iuvenum lapsus

Sic is meaningless and of the many conjectures hic is the most probable. In i 2, 223 honos occurs in M for sonas. The anaphora with hic is in the poet's manner: 100, 102, 221, 226, 227; ii 2, 25-28, 90, 92; iv 3, 134; v 1, 42, 43. Anaphora with hic occurs in v 3, 188 foll.

**2, 100** suaque aut externa revolvit Vulnera

Aut should be changed, of course, to haut, but the common reading hesterna cannot be right, for Statius has the word only three times, once of dapes and twice of mensas. So strange an expression as "yesterday's wounds" surely demands parallels. Externa means others, as in Th. iii 128 externosque suosque; id. ix 675 externum haurire cruorem Ac fudisse suum. So Silv. i 2, 204 in externos . . . amores. For the negative, Silv. v 2, 51 nec . . . externo, id. i 1, 26 nec in externo, i 3, 26 non externa, iv 5, 46 externa non.

**2, 103** emis erat tenera matris cervice pendit

Finierat is most probable for emis erat, as in Th. i 283 and v 753 it follows after a speech; while finis erat in Th. vi 234 and vi 212 do not. Tenerasque of Hand is attractive, but Statius always has the first syllable of mater long. In ii 1, 88, and iii 4, 62 an initial f is written for e, and m and n are frequently confused.

**2, 105** illa refert vultum non aspernata rogari

This reading seems to be defended by Ach. ii 313 vultus declinat, and Th. xii 530 aspernanturque precari.

**2, 118** et nostra potuit considerare concha

Pariter, voluit, and meruit have been suggested for potuit, as the past tense is out of place. I propose poterit, the ending uit being due to uisset in potuisset below it. There is no case in Statius of potuit equivalent to meruit. The difficulty of potuisset in 119 is thus removed and there is no need of emending it to fas esset or voluisset.

**2, 131** erraret secunda Dafnes in litore Naxi

Daphne si of Baehrens is the correct reading: si is necessary to continue the condition of 130, and the word is elided in 44; iii 5, 6; v 1, 66. In litore occurs in iii 2, 129; v 2, 113 and elsewhere. For the omitted i cf. v 1, 115 cuius for cui ius.

**2, 136** in hanc vero cecidisset Iuppiter auro

Fifteen conjectures have been made for *vero*, but *vero* means real now, false before because in the realm of mythology; so that Jupiter was under a false form. Cf. v 2, 40 *quae fuga vera ferocis Armenii*, v 1, 52 *falsoque potentes Laudis egent verae*.

**2, 147** digna deae sedes viridis nec sordet ab astris

*Viridis* is more likely to be correct than *nitidis*, which is a conventional epithet in Statius. All of the marbles mentioned are not green, yet he has *virent* in 149.

**2, 153** robora Dalmatico lucent satiata metallo

There is a limit even to Statian audacity, and I think it is transgressed by stating that the beams have enough of gold. *Sociata* of Lipsius should be read.

**2, 176** Cybeleia movit Limina

*Movit limina* has been questioned, but *Cybeleia movit limina* means merely *Sibyllinos libros adiit*, as the Sibylline books were probably of Asian origin.

**2, 180** Dacasque et gloria maior Exuvias laurosque dabit

Statius has *que et* in ii 6, 67, v 3, 147. *Et gloria maior* should be placed in parenthesis. *Et* means "even," a not uncommon usage in the *Silvae*.

**2, 194** his mulcet dictis tacitoque inspirat honorem

Otto's correction *taciteque* points the contrast to *dictis*. For the corruption cf. iv 6, 59 *Polleus* for *Pellaeus*. For *honorem* cf. Th. v 113 *thalami secretus honos*.

**2, 197** Asteris et vatis totam cantata per urbem

Stella's poem called *Asteris* was sung everywhere and not by the poet alone. Th. iv 491 *vatisque horrenda canentis*. "*Asteris*," of course, means Stella's lady.



**2, 203** *nitiade sic transfuga Pisae*

Nitidae is not only the reading of A\*, but explains the readings *tumidae* and *miadae*. In S. iii 1, 79 *multo culmine dives Mons nitet*; here Pisa shines afar with its culmina.

**2, 209** *caelestum in munere claro Stella dies*

Claro has been questioned, but it is a transferred epithet from *dies*: Th. vii 224 *clara dies*. The wedding day was a bright gift from heaven because the day was bright. *Voto* in 210 means "joy": Claud. Bell. Gild. 7 *et tanto cunctatur credere voto*, "satisfied wish."

**2, 221** *hic movet Ortygia hic rapida agmina Nysa*

The second verb may have been *rapit*: Th. iii 577 *deus agmina passim Mille rapit*. *Ortygiarapithic* was written *Ortygiapithic*, the scribe's eye wandering from the *a* in *Ortygia* to the *a* before *p*. *Ortygiapithic* would then become *Ortygia hic hic*, and one *hic* would naturally disappear. Again, the similarity of *rapit* and *rapida* may have caused the omission. It is not easy to see why *movet* should have been omitted, but the conjectures *ciet*, *celer*, and *docta* are not easily explained paleographically. But I can find no example of *rapit* . . . *rapida* in the same line. *Rapida*, for which some would have *rabida*, may be defended by Th. v 677 *ruit* . . . *rapida agmina*.

**2, 223** *et Parnasis honos illi Pangaea resultant*

*Sonos* would balance *resultant* as in Virg. Aen. v 149 *consonat* . . . *resultant*, Claud. vi Cons. Hon 68 *sonat* . . . *resultans*, but the second person jars. *Parnasus honos sc. sunt* is the most probable of the many attempted emendations.

**2, 234** *omnis plebeio teritur praetexta tumultu*

*Omnis* is probably repeated from *omnia* in 233. *Omnis* and *cunctus* occur at least five times in Statius, but there is no example of a third synonym following them. *Praetexta* must be contrasted with *plebeio*, and the missing word may have been *felix*; it is used with *curia* in i 4, 41 where *celsus eques* follows.

**2, 237** iamdudum poste reclivis

This is the reading of M and a; m has reclinis and is followed by the editors. Above in 161, M has reclinem, a reclivem; in iv 3, 70 reclinus M, editors reclinis. In *Sil. Ital.* v 470 the four best MSS. have reclivis, editors reclinis; and in *Ov. M.* x 538 reclivis, reclinis, renidens are the variants. Probably reclivis should be retained here. The words are all modern words of Statius' time, and he is as likely to have used one as the other.

**2, 250** sed praecipui qui nobile gressu Extrema fraudatis opus

Epos of Heinsius, Bentley, and Markland seems desirable here: v 3, 99 heroos gressu truncare tenores and *Ov. Rem.* 396 elegi debere fatentur Quantum Vergilio nobile debet epos. Opus is not used for carmen in Statius. Nobile carmen, ii 7, 114.

**3, 20** Anien . . . saxeus

Saxeus here is used metr. gr. for saxosus. *Th.* iv 801 saxosum murmur, *Sil.* iv 3, 3 saxosae . . . Appiae.

**3, 31** sic Chalcida fluctus

Expellunt fluvii; sic dissociata profundo  
Bruttia Sicanium circumspicit ora Pelorum

This passage has been improved in various ways, but I think it is right as it stands. The Euripus is a river because it flows, fluo, and it produces floods, fluctus. These floods keep of Chalcis from the main land, and expellunt balances dissociata. The critic who merely improves Statius is lost.

**3, 50** quicquid et argento primum vel in aere minori  
lusit et enormis manus est experta colossos.

This means quicquid et in argento primum vel in aere minori manus lusit et enormis colossos experta est. Silver is of greater value than bronze, and the bronzes are smaller than the colossi; the colossus is contrasted with both. But primum goes with quicquid: whatever excellence. The temptation to introduce a name of an artist should be resisted. Ingentes colossos occurs in iv 6, 46. Enormi is contrasted with brevibus in ii 1, 131.

**3, 90** scilicet hic illi meditantur pondera mores

Statius means meditatur et ponderat principia morum, he weighs the ethical arguments of Epicurus. The obscurity of the line is worthy of Thucydides. He who demands plain spoken Latin must look elsewhere than in Statius.

**3, 103** liventem satiram nigra rubigine turbes

"Whether thou wilt lower thy dark satire with its biting venom and so throw into confusion thy enemies." This is another instance of Statius' compression of statement and of his liberties with Latin syntax.

**4, 4** Gallicus et caelo dives Germanice cordi

Et was long ago changed to es, but no satisfactory emendation of dives has been made. I propose es caelo diu, es, Germanice, cordi. But there is no other example of diu in hiatus, nor of diu before a vowel in the *Silvae*. Germanicus is sacer in v 2, 177, but in seven other places there is no epithet. In Martial also, Germanicus is not characterized by any adjective.

**4, 13** certant laetitia nosteque ex ordine collis Confremat

Certant is usually changed to certent. I suggest nostrique . . . confremant. In line 15 M has manent, universally changed to manet, so slight a correction is the change in number.

**4, 61** progressusque moras hunc mecum Epidauria proles  
hinc alti gaudens datur aggredienda facultas  
ingentem recreare virum.

The old correction morans is adequate: ii 1, 63 abitusque moratur; Th. ii 141 morati . . . gradum. For the remainder, the reading must be very doubtful. I would read

hunc, ait, i gaudens, datur aggredienda facultas,  
ingentem recreare virum.

The second hunc is by Vollmer, and ait i from a marginal note quoted by Phillimore. Statius has a repeated hic at i 2, 221, 226, 227; ii 2, 25; iv 3, 124.



**4, 86a** attollam cantu gaudet Trasymennus et Alpes

Attollam cantu may have followed 84. The rest of the verse is repeated from 86.

**4, 119** nunc aure vigil nunc lumine cuncta Auguror

Aucupor, of Heinsius, is a word not used by Statius. He does not mean "watch for everything," but auguror cuncta is Statianesque for cuncta auguria experior: everything upon which a prognosis could be founded he seizes on with the common hopefulness of the sick room. This is one of many instances of the poet's artificial style. In iii 5, 13 remeare Penates auguror, the verb is used in an unusual meaning.

**5, 32** monstravitque artes neu vilis flamma caminos Ureret

Phillimore's ne for neu has not met with much approval, but neve and neu occur nowhere else in the *Silvae*. Twice nē occurs before u, and twice nē.

**5, 36** sola nitet flavis Nomadum decisa metallis  
 purpura sola cavo Phrygiae quam Synnados antro  
 ipse cruentavit maculis lucentibus Attis

In spite of the criticism of Postgate in *Phil.* lxiv 120, purpura is supported by cruentavit, and we must either understand the Numidian marble to be red as well as yellow, or that the red porphyry was found also in the Numidian quarries. In i 2, 150 there is the same suggestion: rupesque nitent quis purpura saepe Oebalis et Tyrii moderator livet aeni. The Phrygian marble seems to have been white with red spots: ii 2, 89 candida purpureo distinguitur area gyro.

**5, 43** in species animoque nitent stupet ipse beatas.

Animo of P is probably correct, but it has nothing to do with "life." Statius means that both the eyes and the mind are occupied; there are brilliant pictures, and they are comprehended or interpreted by the mind: that this may be difficult is suggested

by stupet. But the eyes and the mind are entertained; probably the mosaics represented some story. Literally, the Latin means "the gables shine into forms and for the mind."

**5, 52** vivit et in fundum summo patet omnis ab imo

I am not sure but that here Statius is more artificial than ever. Can he mean vivit et patet in fundum ab summo, patet omnis ab imo? Otherwise the old vulgate in summum fundo should be read.

**6, 7** dum refero diem beatum Laeti Caesaris ebriamque parcen

I am not sure but that *Parcam* of the *Parmensis* and proposed by Gevaert may not after all be the correct reading here. *Moiram* is the reading of an inferior MS. and *parten*, i.e. *partem*, that of M according to Vollmer. *Partem* was read by several, including Gronovius. *Ebriamque Parcam* is epexegetical of *diem beatum*. *Moiram*, *Parcam*, *partem* all have a common meaning, the division of the calendar allotted to the revel that is "fated" to come; the allotted portion for a drunken carnival. Of course, it cannot be denied that "drunken Fate" is a strange and unexampled expression. *Parca*, singular, of one Fate, occurs in ii 1, 138.

**6, 12** quicquid nobile Ponticis nucetis  
fecundis cadit aut iugis Idumes;  
quod ramis pia germinat Damascus,  
et quod percoquit Ebosia caunis.

So I would read line 15. Note the parallelism *nucetis*, *iugis*, *ramis*, *caunis*; *Ponticis*, *Idumes*, *Damascus*, *Ebosia*; *quicquid* *quod*, *et quod*; *cadit*, *germinat*, *percoquit*. *Quod* is the reading of some inferior MSS. and *caunis* is by Markland.

**6, 17** Molles gaioli luguntulique

With such non-literary words there was probably no standard orthography, and if M is right in one word it is probably right in the other. Hence one should keep the MS. reading or change to *caioli* and *lucuntuli*.

**6, 27** dum nostri Iovis hi ferantur imbres

The change to hic is entirely unnecessary in spite of the Teutonic editors; cf. i 6, 98; 2, 180, 277, where the pronoun refers to the matter under consideration.

**6, 37** et cum tot populos beata pascas

Beata is written here as the metre does not permit beatos. Even Martial does not call Domitian beatus.

**6, 44** parvi femina plebs eques senatus

Parvi at first sight seems wrong, but Statius could not use parvus for "little one," and feminae would be unmetrical.

**6, 46** et tu quin etiam quis hoc vocare  
quis promittere possit hoc deorum

Hoc vocare is Statius' pedantic way of writing hanc vocationem facere, explained by hoc promittere. Cf. i 4, 82 revocant fasti maiorque curulis nec promissa semel.

**6, 58** quos natura brevis statim peracta  
nodosum semel in globum ligavit

Nature here has two meanings: natural development and Nature. The order of thought is quos, natura statim peracta, Natura brevis semel ligavit in nodosum globum. Instead of making natura ablative with peracta, for metrical convenience Statius writes the nominative and omits the second Natura. There is no active perfect participle, which is another reason for the artificial construction.

**6, 61** et mortem sibi quam manu minantur

All of the editors follow Avantius in changing quam to qua and thus necessitating a literal meaning of the singular manu—"with Lilliputian hands" Slater translates it, where Lilliputian is not in the Latin, and manu is singular, not plural. It is better to take manu in its common meaning of "armed force" or "violence" and to construe et mortem sibi quam manu minantur. quam being exclamatory and going with mortem.



**6, 64** minantur pumilos ferociore

The later editors read pugiles, a word Statius does not use, because pumilos has its first syllable long in line 57; these two occurrences being the only instances in poetry of pumilus, although pumilio occurs in dactylic verse with the initial syllable long. It is probable that in this unaccustomed metre Statius allowed himself a metrical license. The paragraph should close with a reference to the dwarfs: pugilists do not always kill one another and there is no suggestion that these dwarfs were boxers. In Martial xiv 213 *scutum pumilionis erit* occurs: boxers did not need shields nor did they threaten death for Mars to smile at.

**6, 67** ·huc intrans faciles emi puellae

The German editors follow Markland in reading hic, but huc is not only the reading of all MSS. but is quite in place, as the puellae are not actors in the festival like the dwarfs. In iii 4, 97 huc usque is properly corrected to hic. Otto would change hoc in 70 to hic unnecessarily. Hoc grege in 70 corresponds to illo sc. grege in 71, and illic 72 to hic in 73.

**6, 96** iam iam deficio tuaque Baccho

The old vulgate tuoque is correct: ii 1, 83 ora natura, iv 9, 28 atque cattanorum, v 2, 148 vacantibus armis; in all these a is read improperly for o. If Statius calls wine Lyaei in 95 he may well call it Baccho in 96. It is very improbable that Baccho is a gloss on Lyaei; it would have been Bacchi in that case.

*Transmitted June 22, 1918.*



## NOTES ON THE SILVAE OF STATIUS

## BOOK II

BY

WILLIAM A. MERRILL

1, 5 et verba medentia saevus  
consero tu planctus lamentaque fortia mavis

Markland's change to *saevis* is unnecessary. Statius is a stern physician: *improbis* 2, *intempesta* 8, *saevos turis acervos* 21, *infaustus* 27, *severus* 34.—In verse 6 the attempt to recall *consero* of M from the vulgate *confero* is unfortunate: this whole poem is one-sided, and nothing like a conversation. *Contero*, another suggestion, is absurd, for Statius could not have thought of his consolation as something to be brayed in a mortar.

1, 16 iamque preces fessus non indignaris amicas  
iamne canam

The old vulgate has iamne preces, but it is very improbable that iamne should have been changed to iamque when iamne occurs in the next line. In the *Silvae* iamque occurs eleven times but never in a question: iamne is found only here and et iamne in v 2, 11. Iamque in 16 continues the iam of 15: the reverse in i 2, 199 iamque . . . et iam. I am not sure but that 15 and 16 contain statements rather than questions.



- 1, 17                    lacrimis en et mea carmina in ipso  
                         ore natant tristesque cadunt in verba liturae

All the manuscripts have *carmina* and the change to *carmine* and *ora* is quite unnecessary. It is no more strange for songs to swim through tears in the mouth, than for erasures to fall on words. Note that the erasures are caused by the tears.

- 1, 26    heu vittis et frontis honore soluto

Cruceus's change to *frondis* is unnecessary; *frontis* honor is said of a man in v 5, 29; Th. ix 705, x 255.

- 1, 28    plango lyra et diu comitem sociumque doloris

I would make one more suggestion for the desperate *et diu*, and that is *istius*: ii 6, 13 *dolor iste*. *Istius*, however, does not occur in the *Silvae*. *Istius* may have lost the final *s* by reason of the *e* following; then the corruption was *ittiu*, *et diu*.

- 1, 42    sidereique orbes radiataque lumina caelo

This means star-like orbs and heavenly eyes. There is no parallel for *radiataque caelo*, but it is another way of saying *luminibus radiat caelum*, heaven shines in his eyes, which is thrown into the passive construction; his eyes are irradiated by heaven: Th. vi 63 *teretes hoc undique gemmae Inradiant*.

- 1, 43    et castigatae collecta modestia frontis

The physical characteristics are still enumerated, and *modestia* does not mean modesty, but limitation; his brow was compressed and narrow.

- 1, 47    et mixtae risu lacrimae penitusque loquentes  
         Hyblaeis vox mixta favis

Professor Housman, in Cl. R. xx 40, says that tears blent with smiles and voice blent with honeycomb is impossible; but *favus*

means honey in Virg. Georg. i 344. Statius was something of an Epicurean and therefore regarded voice as material and capable of being mixed with something else. To him mixture of voice and honey was no more strange than a mixture of tears and laughter.

**1, 51**    *bracchiaque numquam domini sine pondere cervix*

Que, I think, stands for quae and there are three ejaculations: heu lactea colla, heu bracchia, heu quae cervix, that is et ea cervix. Phillimore suggested lactea quae.

**1, 53**    *atque genis optatus honos iurataque multum  
barba tibi*

How Melior could have sworn by a non-existent beard I cannot understand, particularly as it was optata only. Write iuranda: Achill. i 391 iurandaque nautis insula, Th. viii 100 hic iurandus Apollo. The corruption was easy: iuranda, iurāda, iurata; below, verse 58 timendem for tumentem. But if iurata be kept it must be an aorist, of which I can find no example with this word.—In 56 there is no reason for suspecting either hilaris (nominative) or amatis.

**1, 64**    *nexibus atque ipsos revocabit ad oscula postes*

The simplest correction seems to be to adque of Politian: adque ipsos postes revocabit te ad oscula. Adque is local in the sense of "at," "beside," "by;" cf. ii 1, 33; iii 3, 22, 82; v 1, 203.

**1, 76**    *hinc domus hinc ortus*

Krohn's change to hic seems inadvisable; we should expect haec rather than hic. Domus means "origin:" Th. xii 548 non externa genus dirae nec conscia noxae Turba sumus: domus Argos erat. Statius has hinc atque hinc in ii 2, 14; hinc . . . hinc in i 2, 235; iii 2, 35. Hic . . . hinc occurs nowhere certainly in the Silvae.





dira and then to dura is unnecessary. Peerlkamp's change to lacrimabiles in 139 is also unnecessary: Th. x 357 nec abruptis adeo lacrimabilis annis.

**1, 152** tibiue ora movet tibi verba relinquit

Relinquit is sound: he moves his lips and speaks for thee and his words are a legacy. Relinquit is used also for the unmetrical dedit or dedidit.

**1, 181** sic et in anguiferae ludentem gramine Lerna  
rescissum squamis avidus bibit anguis Opheltem

This means, on the face of it, "so also the greedy serpent drank Opheltes, cut off by the scales as he was playing on the grass of serpent-bearing Lerna." Statius is at his worst here. According to the story, Archemorus was laid down in the grass by Hypsipyle and was killed by a snake and was given a solemn burial. Rescissum squamis means that he was bitten by the snake: Th. v 517 squamisque incisus. Bibit of a serpent occurs in Th. xi 314 irasque sui bibit ipse veneni; cf. xi 490. Kostlin's ignis has been widely accepted for anguis, because of Markland's objection to anguis following anguiferae, and also in order to bring in the funeral. But the ancients had not the dislike of repetition that we have. Statius means "so also the hungry snake drank up the blood of Opheltes who was torn by its fangs as he was playing in the grass of serpent-bearing Lerna." Hyginus Fab. 74 says draco . . . puerum exedit. The parallelism between Palaemon and Opheltes does not call for any mention of a funeral; the emphasis is rather on the appearance of the dead boys.

**1, 198** inde magis sequitur neque enim magis illa trahentem  
spernit

The reading is sound and the various changes proposed are all unnecessary. Glaucias recognized Blaesus, followed him timidly, plucked at his robe, then followed him more confidently (magis), for Blaesus did not repel him as he drew closer (magis trahentem).

- 1, 202 tollit humo magnaue ligat cervice diuque  
 ipse manu gaudens vehit et quae munera mollis  
 Elysii sterilis ramos mutasque volucres  
 porсит et obtunso pallentis germine flores

Phillimore's *quaerit* for *vehit* et is infelicitous, for *Blaesus* takes *Glaucias* up from the ground and embraces him, and carries him in his arms and presents him with such gifts as *Elysium* afforded. For *porсит* in 205 *porgit* is most probable, notwithstanding the rarity of the form, as a present tense is demanded. The verb *sunt* or *erant* is omitted with *quae munera*, as frequently. *Obtunso* in 205 properly belongs with *flores*, not with *germine*; the flowers were nipped in the bud.

- 1, 222 non ille rogavit  
 non timuit meruitve mori

*Rogavit* and *meruit* have been questioned, but they are both sound. The boy did not live long enough to comprehend death, hence he did not ask for it as a relief, or fear it in anticipation, or earn it as a soldier or as an old man. The contrast with adults immediately follows.

- 1, 230 nec durae comes illa ferae

*Durae ferae* is unthinkable, and the confusion between *durus* and *dirus* is one of the commonest. *Dirae* is the old vulgate reading and adopted by Postgate. The dire beast was, of course, *Cerberus*. The key to the passage is in line 184 and following, and the *comes* is indicated in 185, *nulla soror flammis nulla assurgentibus hydriis*. This reference was also pointed out by *Klotz*. *Heinsius'* suggestion of *Orthrus* is too learned for acceptance in this passage.

- 2, 15 dat natura locum montique intervenit unum  
 litus

*Unum* has been doubted by many, but the question is one of geographical fact. There is a beach at Pacific Grove on the Monterey peninsula that corresponds to the description given by

Statius. Th. vi 299 aut litore in uno Aeolus insanis statuat certamina ventis. In verse 16 in terras means "landward" from the point of view of the sea: Th. x 83 Iris . . . in terras longo suspenditur arcu, 758 subito in terras supero demissus ab axe (earthward).

**2, 18**

. . . e terris occurrit dulcis amaro

nympha mari

Barth suggested *lympa* and was followed by Baehrens and Phillimore, who evidently used Baehren's text to print from and forgot to make the change. *Lympha* is the reading of all the manuscripts and editors except the two named. *Nympha* can be defended by i 3, 37 and 5, 23.

**2, 32** obscuro permixti pulvere

Baehrens reads *obsceno*, but cf. Th. vi 411 caeco pulvere mixti.

**2, 35** ab Inoo fert semita tecta Lyceo

Most editors read *Lechaeo* with Domitius, but the Germans *Lyaeo*, after some inferior manuscripts. The story of Ino, so far as it is known, defends neither, so it is better to retain *Lyceo* as a reference to a possible temple of Apollo. See Imhof, 1867, 10.

**2, 38** ungula sedet equi

The parallelism with *superest sitim* in 37 and *reseret fontes* in 38, 39 seems to demand *se det*, and so Gronovius emended.

**2, 52** his favit natura locis hic victa colenti

The reading of M is uncertain here but as the inferior manuscripts have *hic victa*, *hic* is probably the correct reading. *Hic* corresponds here to *his locis*.

**2, 58**

nunc cerne iugum discentia saxa

intransesque domos iussumque recedere montem

Phillimore adopts Rothstein's *intransesque*, but one is as strange as the other. *Intranses domos* means that the house is being built into the hillside.



**2, 80** quaeque ferit curvos exserta Megalia fluctus

Ferit is strange here, and we should expect the statement to be the exact opposite of what is written. But the poet sometimes conceives the land as opposing the water: verse 25 hic saevis fluctibus obstat; Th. ix 91 fluctibus obvia rupes; Th. ii 43 interiore sinu frangentia litora curvat Taenaros expositos non audax scandere fluctus. The passage in Sil Ital. i 208 geminae laterum cautes maria alta fatigant is usually emended to geminas.

**2, 93** et gaudens fluctus spectare Carystos

This line has been much tortured, but it means merely that the Carystian marble regards its wavy green color, for this marble did not look at the sea any more than the others. If there were a verb pictare it would be in place here. A similar thought is expressed in verse 91.

**2, 108** Mygdonii Pyliique senis

The Mygdonian old man was Priam: S. iii 4, 103 per annos Iliacos Pyliosque simul. The prayer is not for immortality, that Tithonus had, but for extreme old age like that of Nestor. The reference to Tithonus in iv 3, 149ff. is not parallel.

**2, 124** non leges non castra terent

M has terent, that the Teutonic editors follow, but the inferior MSS. tenent. Terent, "wear out," is a strong expression, but the future tense is inconsistent with domas in 125. Tenent means that Pollius is an Epicurean and has no political ambition. The confusion of n and r occurs in i 3, 16 arte for ante, iii 2, 204 moritura for monitura, v 2, 131 nubigeras for nubigenas, and i 1, 51 aenea for aerea.

**2, 125** spemque metumque domas tuto sublimior omni

Later editors read voto for tuto, comparing Rutil. Itin. i 163 voto beator omni, but omitting what precedes, fortunatus agam; "happier than I could wish for" is sense, but "higher than every wish" is not. Statius has in mind here the Epicurean

watch-tower described in the opening of Lucretius' second book, to which he refers again in 131 foll. He is elevated above every fort by his inward strength; he is raised higher than any tower thereby, and is loftier than he would be on a stronghold. *Tuto* means a safe place frequently in the expression in *tuto*, but here it is used for *tutamento* or *tutela*; "loftier in the citadel of thy heart than thou wouldst be in any guarded place." It cannot be denied that this is forced, but so are all of the nine conjectures.

**2, 137** *ac iuvenile calens plectrique errore superbus*

This verse is, I think, out of place. It may belong after 122. With the removal of verse 137 it will be unnecessary to change *ac nunc* in 138 to *at nunc*.

**2, 142** *emeritam in nostras puppem dimitte procellas*

A has *demitte*, M *dimittere* but *m dimitte*; in such cases *m* is usually right.

**3, 1** *stat quae perspicuas nitidi Melioris opacet*

Phillimore's *qua* is correct, but *opacet* must be changed to *opacat* with the inferior manuscripts: cf. ii 2, 11; 3, 15; iv 4, 2; v 3, 127.

**3, 9** *ille quidem it cunctas tamquam velit et tamen unam  
in Pholoen silvis et fluminibusque sequentis*

This is unintelligible by reason of the *in* before *Pholoen*; it *tamen* of the inferior manuscripts should be read. In verse 10 *haec* is the correct reading with *m* which is usually right.

**3, 14** *Caelica tecta subit*

*Caelica tecta* must correspond to *belligerum nemus, atra rura*, and *Quirinalis agris*; and *tecta* is the participle; "covered" presumably with woods. Cf. ii 2, 35 *semita tecta*. The opposite would be *intecta*: Georg. ii 112 *apertos* *Bacchus amat collis*; Ov. F ii 181 *per incultos montes*; A. A. iii 427 *nemorosis montibus*. The nymph hides in the woods of Mount Caelius.

**3, 38** immitem Bromium stagna invida

Bromium here probably means "passion," just as *Venerem* often means "love;" Th. xi 320 saevo . . . Lyaeo; S. ii 1, 214 saeva cupido.

**3, 47** aut dura feriat<sup>r</sup> grandine

Schrader and Phillimore change *dura* to *dira*, no doubt because of Horace C. i 2, 1 *dirae grandinis* that was portentous, but here Statius is thinking merely of hard hailstones. There is doubt between *dura* and *dira* in Th. ii 249; S. ii 6, 81; v 3, 84.

**3, 53** illa dei veteres animata calores  
uberibus stagnis obliquo pendula trunco  
incubat atque umbris scrutatur amantibus undas

This is right as it stands, and no change is necessary. *Pendula* is used like a participle with the dative for *impendens*, and the construction is *illa arbor animata, pendula uberibus stagnis obliquo trunco incubat veteres dei calores*. *Incumbo* takes the accusative in Th. v 595; vi 576; x 108. *Scrutatur* is a pedantic equivalent of *petit*.

**3, 69** et secreta palam quod digeris ordine vitam

It is most natural to take *secreta palam* together; both in private and in public you order your life in an orderly manner. To interpret *secreta* "with hidden counsel you order your life" seems too artificial.

**4, 11** at tibi quanta domus rutila testudine fulgens

The change to *a* by Otto, Brandes, and Phillimore is unnecessary: at tibi v 2, 71; at tu iv 4, 56, v 3, 19; at te i 2, 260, 273, v 3, 78.

**4, 14** et querulae iam sponte fores

Many changes have been proposed in this line, but all are unnecessary. *Et* continues the *que* in 12 and 13. *Iam sponte* occurs also in ii 5, 5. The door now voluntarily complains of the loss, and the parrot no longer causes it to resound.



**5, 7** altarum vastator docte ferarum

If the text is sound this must be a reference to the killing in the amphitheater of giraffes by lions.

**5, 13** hoc licuisse nefas placidi timuere leones.

Markland has shown that this reading is nonsense. No satisfactory emendation has yet been made, for the most common conjecture *tumuere* cannot govern an infinitive clause.

**5, 23** firmat hians oculos animamque hostemque requirit

This is sound, and the doubt about it is due to Statius' artificial style. He means that the lion opens his mouth to get breath and holds his eyes open to hunt for his enemy: *firmat oculos* balances *hostem requirit*, and *hians* corresponds to *animam requirit*.

**5, 28** inter tot Scythicas Libycasque in litore Rheni  
et Pharia de gente feras

If the text is sound it means *feras in litore Rheni nascentes*, corresponding to *Scythicas Libycasque*, i.e., *feras in Scythia Libyae nascentes*. *Litus* is used of a river in v 2, 113 *Tiberino in litore*; Th. iv 604 *Cocyti in litore*. Of the many conjectures that have been made the most probable is that of *e* by Cartault; *e* may have fallen out after *que* and *in* inserted afterwards.

**6, 6** ad te tamen at procul intrat  
altius in sensus maioraque vulnera vincit  
plaga minor

The conjectures here are almost numberless, but the most probable reading is *alte tamen ac procul*; the meaning "tamen *alte ac procul altius intrat* *plaga minor in sensus*." *Alte*, by Markland, is a proper modifier of *intrat*, although it must be acknowledged that the corruption of *alte* for *ad te* is unusual. But at for *ac*, by Postgate, occurs in iii 1, 72; *parti* for *parci*, iv 6, 51. No certain correction has yet been made.

6, 11

cui maior stemmate iuncto  
libertas ex mente fuit

Iuncto is sound, for relationship was indicated by the union through lines of the various images: Th. vii 385 iunctae stirpe sorores; Th. ii 437 de sanguine iuncto; S. iii 1, 44 proavis demissum stemma; Plin. xxxv 6 stemmata vero lineis discurrebant ad imagines pictas. Markland would have nobilitas for libertas, but the boy was a slave whose liberty was spiritual and not literal: famulum 8, servitium 16.

6, 13      rumpat frenos dolor iste diesque

The simplest interpretation is dolor iste diesque iste rumpat frenos. In 14 I should keep heu, making mihi dependent on subdo and not changing heu to ei or hei.

6, 16      cui triste nihil qui sponte sibique  
imperiosus erat

Sibique is certainly strange, but Statius is very careless of the position of que: ii 7, 84 blanda Venus daretque Iuno, iii 5, 96 quae Boreas quaeque Eurus atrox quae nubilus Auster. Vollmer is right in taking the que with qui.

6, 30      qualem nec bella caventem  
litore virgineo Thetis occultavit Achillem

Critics have not seen that nec goes with Achillem and hence have altered the reading. The construction is qualem nec Achillem bella caventem Thetis litore virgineo occultavit. So the nec in 32 goes with Troilon.

6, 39      qualis dubiae post crimina formae  
de sexu transire iubent torvaque virilis  
gratia

The obvious construction, strangely overlooked by the commentators, is qualis est talibus quos crimina dubiae formae iubent post transire de sexu. Their beauty is their accusation and

reproach, and after the charge has been made against them the result of the accusation is their dishonor. Torvaque cannot be right and no satisfactory emendation has yet been made. Perhaps we should read *blandique virilis gratia, nec petulans acies torvique severo igne oculi*.

6, 42

qualis bellis iam casside visu

Parthenopaeus erat

There is some reference here to Parthenopaeus that is not explained by any account that has survived. The simplest correction is *qualis bellus iam casside visu Parthenopaeus erat*. He was *inlatus armis* in *Aen.* vi 479. His beauty is noticed in *Th.* iv 251, 252, and in *Eurip. Suppl.* 893. But it must be confessed that *bellus visu casside* is strange Latin. Eighteen different attempts have been made to emend the passage. There is a dubious line in *Martial* (v 25, 13) *Hermes casside languida timendus*.—In 43 *simplexque horrore decore crinis* means that the hair grew naturally into a pompadour. *Micantes* in 44 means “flashing” in the brilliancy of color of the cheeks; it does not mean golden, as Slater translates it. His version of the poems is good English, but very far from the Latin more than once.

6, 48

*nam pudor unde notae mentis tranquillaque morum  
temperies teneroque animus maturior aevo*

This is a desperate passage. Probably *pudor unde notae mentis* means “modesty, whence comes branding of the soul.” Markland’s *ingenuae* is the most probable conjecture. *Pudor ingenuae mentis, tranquilla morum temperies, and animus maturior tenero aevo* are parallel expressions. Nothing whatever can be said for *Phillimore’s ineratque*; cf. ii 1, 40 and v 2, 71.—Verse 50 is hopelessly corrupt.—In 53 *Haemonium Pyladen* must be explained as an inaccurate designation of Pylades as a Greek since he was not a Thessalian. *Phocis* once touched Thessaly at one point, and the Roman poets are loose in their references to Greek geography.



6, 76

sesequo videndo

torsit et invidia mortemque amplexa iacenti  
iniecit nexus

Much has been written on this sentence and many changes have been suggested, but none of them is any better than the text as it stands. The meaning is "and in looking at him Nemesis also tortured herself with envy and joined Death to herself and cast her bonds on him as he lay in sickness." Schwartz's interpretation is correct: cum puerum intueretur invidia ita perturbatam fuisse ut tota fieret Invidia.

6, 79

quinta vix Phosphoros hora

rorantem sternebat equum

Quinta hora obviously cannot mean 11 A.M.; it may mean 5 A.M., that is, at sunrise, but an indication of the day is desired. I think that Statius meant that the boy died in the fifth day of his illness at dawn, and that the word *die* must be supplied in thought with quinta. Statius does not always say what he means; thus in i 4, 20 he speaks of a tenth Pallas, meaning that with the nine Muses Pallas made a tenth.

6, 82

non saevius atros

nigrasset planctu genetrix tibi saeva laertos

Here again Statius does not write what he means. The mother was cruel to herself for the sake of her son, and saeva logically is to be taken with planctu: v 1, 179 saevo nec . . . concute planctu pectora; v 5, 45 saevasque exsolvite grates.

6, 93

quam gemitus sed et ipse iuvat

In spite of the numerous objectors to this line it can stand as it is. It means "but does even lamentation do any good?" Sen. Dial. xi 5, 1 illud quoque te non minimum adiuverit, si cogitaveris nulli minus gratum esse dolorem tuum quam ei, cui praestari videtur.

**6, 99**    *claros illic fortasse parentes*

A slave could not have had brilliant parents and Bernart's *caros* should be read. In i 2, 160 *cara* is usually read for *clara*, and *l* is wrongly inserted in *multas* ii 1, 204; *dulcibus* iii 3, 52; *placantem* v 1, 261.

**7, 24**    *felix heu nimis et beata tellus*

*Heu* is always used in the *Silvae* with a connotation of sorrow: iii 3, 25 *felix heu nimium felix*; v 5, 59 *o nimium felix*. I suggest *heus* "ho" instead: v 4, 14 *at nunc heus*. *Heus* is generally used, as *heu*, with the second person, and the word may be excused in this unusual metre.

**7, 46**    *et doctos equites et eloquente  
cantu purpureum trahis senatum*

Here again Statius does not mean what he says, for *doctos* ought to go with *cantu*. He thus gives *equites* an apparent epithet to balance *purpureum senatum*.—In verse 53 *exeres* must be read with Markland, as a future is plainly demanded; the infant Lucan could not have written the *Pharsalia*.—In 54 *ac primum* continues Calliope's narrative, and Klotz's *at* is unnecessary. *Ac primum* occurs in i 1, 71; ii 6, 74; iii 4, 28.—In 79 *quid maius loquar* is demanded by the author's usage and by *venerabitur* in 80.

**7, 58**    *ingratus Nero dulcibus theatris*

*Ingratus* and *dulcibus* are opposites, and *dulcibus* means "delighted" or "pleased." We should hardly expect to find a parallel in another author. The passage at i 6, 83 *et dulci dominum favore clamant*, and i 6, 68 *quod theatris aut forma placet* help in the interpretation. Nero the emperor was ungrateful for the "*laudibus recitatis in Pompeii theatro*" of the *Vita Vaeae*, and the word *Nero* stands for the subject of the poem.

- 7, 66 et Pharsalica bella detonabis  
quo fulmen ducis inter arma divi

The reading of the codices is difficult, but not more so than quod, the only probable correction. Quo may be taken in reference to Pharsalus, and the meaning may be "whither the bolt of the divine leader shall resound (as described in the poem)." So in 113 quo Pharsalica turba congregatur.

- 7, 90 o numquam data longa festa summis

Fata is commonly read for festa, but could never have been corrupted since the thought is so trite and the word so common. Perhaps fausta should be read, but the word does not occur in Statius.

- 7, 116 tu magna sacer et superbus umbra  
nescis Tartaron et procul nocentem  
audis

The seu of Heinsius is demanded by the construction of the period; cf. 107, 111. Haupt's nescis cannot be right, for Elysium and not Tartarus was the abode of hallowed souls. Moreover, Lucan is to hear far off the tortures of the guilty and to regard Nero. Et means "but."

- 7, 132 haec vitae genitalis est origo

As Markland says, genitalis is a Lucretian reminiscence. Genialis cannot mean "happiness," as Slater translates it. The phrase means "this is the birthday of life."



## NOTES ON THE SILVAE OF STATIUS

## BOOK III

BY

WILLIAM A. MERRILL

---

**1, 13**      *adsparsum pelago montis latus*

Phillimore reads *ad sparsum*, which I do not understand. The MS. reading is accepted by all of the recent editors.

**1, 17**      *angusti bissono limite menses*

This reading may be supported by Th. iv 1 *tertius horrentem Zephyris laxaverat annum Phoebus et angustum cogebat limite verno*, although the old vulgate *angusto bissemi* is attractive. *Bisseno limite* is the course through twelve months, which are confined to their path. The months, like the sun, are limited to the signs of the zodiac. *Bisseno limite* is no more strange than *decima Pallade* in i 4, 20.

**1, 36**      *instratumque humeris dimitte gerentibus hostem*

If one desired to improve on Statius he might with Gevaert write *rigentibus* for *gerentibus*; but *gerentibus* may be defended by Th. x 410 *tergoque graves quas forte gerebat Tigridis exuvias*. Other parallels for *gero*, "wear," may be found in Th. i 405, 188; ii 266.

## 1, 72 nubibus at tenuis

Editors vary between *ac* and *et*; *ac* can be defended by *ac tellus* iv 5, 7, and *ac templa* iv 6, 83; and *et* by *et tenuem* 1, 5, 59, *et tenues* ii 4, 36 and by 36 other cases where *et* precedes a word beginning with *t*. Statius probably wrote *et*.

## 1, 76 festasque dapes redimitaque vina

abripiunt famuli nec quo convivia migrant

A has arripiunt, but the object of the servants was to remove the viands to a safe place, not to eat them themselves. The verb that is missing is of course *est*; Statius often omits the substantive verb, seldom any other.

## 1, 82 stabat dicta sacri tenuis casa nomine templa

Markland's *sacris* is probable because Statius never uses *sacer* of a temple, and *sacris* is also the most common form of the word used by him.

## 1, 89 deus dilectaque Polli

corda subit blandisque virum complectitur ulnis

Markland would change *virum* to *animum*: "*quomodo potuit virum complecti? non enim in propria specie apparuit Hercules, sed corda Pollii subiit*"; but the difficulty is just as great with *complectitur ulnis*. Physical contact is frequently implied: ii 7, 38 *blando Calliope sinu recepit*; ii 1, 120 *Lachesis . . . gremio puerum complexa fovebat*; iv 4, 76 *blanda sinu . . . gloria felix educat*. For *ulnis*, *Ach.* 1, 172 *avidis ulnis*.

## 1, 92 iuvenemque replesti

Parthenopen

*Iuvenemque Parthenopen* is certainly a strange form of expression and, if sound, means the new city, Neapolis. Atticus senior in i 1, 102 may be compared. Statius uses *iuvenis* elsewhere as an adjective: iii 1, 175 *iuvenes nepotes*; iv 8, 26 *iuveni parenti*; *Achill.* 1, 588 *iuvenis regnator*.

1, 96                    quid enim ista domus quid terra priusquam  
te gauderet erant

The old vulgate erat has lately been revived. Strangely enough, erant occurs in only one other place in the *Silvae*—ii 1, 173—while erat is used 17 times, although Statius likes to omit the substantive verb when he can. The nearest parallel is at i 6, 93 quis . . . quis . . . quis . . . quis . . . quis canat. Markland compares Tac. Ann. ii 53 avunculus Augustus avus Antonius erant.—In 99, nunc tibi stat porticus, there seems no cogent reason for changing tibi to ibi, even if ubi preceded in 98. The arcade certainly belonged to Pollius. When tibi is a corruption of ibi or ubi, the word preceding usually ends with the letter t: iii 3, 130 aut tibi, M, ubi, infer.; but v 3, 61 atque tibi, M, ibi, edd. Tibi is contrasted with mihi in 102. There is no case in the *Silvae* of ubi and ibi correlative.—In 101 nymphas should be read with M, as in ii 2, 19.

1, 111                immenso non umquam exesus ab aevo

Markland's erudite hypercriticism is shown by his change to excisus, and by his attack on umquam to which Baehrens listened and wrote usquam. Statius means that the sugar-loaf hill had lost none of its substance by weathering. The conception of tempus edax was common enough to excuse the ab of agency; yet that can be defended by ii 2, 66, quod ab arte Myronis. Very likely ab is redundant, metr. gr., as so often in Lucretius.—In 126 loci is sound: i 1, 66 ipse loci custos; i 4, 95 pater urbis; iv 3, 161 pater aulae.—In 128, Caprae may be defended by the Ravenna Cosmog. iv 33 (p. 271, 8) Capris. This is repeated by Guido, p. 476, 23. Statius is careless in spelling proper nouns: Aetne 130, Nemee 143.—In 139, fortibus sacris means sacris dei fortis: iv 6, 76 fortique deo libavit honores.

1, 150                    Phrygioque e vertice Graias  
addisces Misene tubas

Why Misenus, who had been a companion of Hector and afterwards followed Aeneas (Aen. vi 166) should have to learn Greek





- 2, 48                      donec tua turbine nullo  
laeta Paraetoniis assignet carbasa ripis

For laeta Heinsius proposed laesa, which may be right, since there is no parallel in Statius for turbine nullo alone. But he is so loose in his syntax that it may be an ablative of attendant circumstances; "without a storm." Cf. ii 2, 28 nulloque tumultu stagna modesta iacent.—In 51, ecce is well defended by ii 3, 20; iii 2, 78; iv 8, 15 and other passages, from the change to inde or unde.—In 52, movet is certainly right instead of monet which was read by some early editors.—In 60, currente is more likely than cedente before carina.

- 2, 63              expulit in fluctus pelagoque immisit hiantes

Hiantes should be retained, but taken with fluctus. It could not follow fluctus immediately, because of the metre. The change to hianti in the inferior codices might have been expected.

- 2, 68              angustos summittere pontibus amnis

This may be paralleled by Th. x 427 angusti . . . pulveris haustus; Th. xi 195 angustos Rhodope descendit in amnes, and iii 1, 18 above. There seems to be no example of angustos for angustatos.

- 2, 70              fugimus exigua clausi trabe et aere nudo

Phillimore changes the order to exigua fugimus, but there is but one case of wrong order in the *Silvae* (aside from the famous line at i 1, 28), viz., v 1, 144 dextro tam, M, where M<sup>1</sup> has tam dextro. If the correction were necessary, it would certainly have been made in the manuscripts. But it is noteworthy that the form fugimus occurs only here: he has fūgit 27 times, fūgit 6. In Th. v 539 fugit ilicet artus Somnus et in solam patuerunt lumina mortem the tenses do not agree; cf. ix 770 fūgit . . . iungit.—In 83, 84, the change by Rossberg and Skutsch of quos to quo seems necessary.

**2, 128** iubeat discedere bello

Baehrens reads *discedere* and Phillimore also, without comment. *Discedere* can be defended by Ach. i 150 *discedere ab antris*, but by no other of the six cases where the word occurs; *discedere* is followed by an ablative in all six.

**2, 129** ac nos iterum stantes in litore vastos

*Ac* does not occur before *n* in the *Silvae*; at of *A* may be defended by at *vos* in v 3, 277, and at several times precedes *nunc* and *non*. *Hac* of the Venice edition is an attempt to improve *ac*; Markland's *hoc*, after the Roman edition, is improbable, as there is no reason for such a repetition. Markland's *versos* for *vastos* has met with no approval, for *vastus* is a common epithet of the sea: Ovid, *Ex Pont.* i 4, 35; iii 4, 58; *Tr.* iii 10, 28; v 11, 27. There is no good reason for making 130 a question, with Phillimore and the older editors.

**2, 138** qua dulces nemus florentis Idumes  
 qua praeciosa Tyros rubeat qua purpura suco  
 Sidonius iterata vadis ubi germina primum  
 candida felices sudent opobalsama virgae

Baehrens's *quam* for *qua* is attractive, but locality rather than degree seems to be emphasized: *Th.* ii 730 *qua* *despectare dulces* sit. In 139, *qua* *pretiosa* contains the localization, although Otto would read *quam*. *Qua* before *purpura* is changed to *quo* by many, after Gronovius. The ancients neither sought variety nor avoided repetition, as the moderns do. *Hic* is repeated thrice in i 2, 148. *Suco* is well attested by Pliny ix 126, 133, who uses *sucus* of the shellfish. There is no necessity of changing it to *fuco*, although the change is attractive and is made in Pliny ix 127. In 140, *vadis* must be changed to *cadis* with some inferior manuscripts; how Saenger can retain *vadis* I do not see, for the *dibapha* were dipped in kettles, not in the sea. In 140, *ubi* continues *qua* and Markland's *quo* is unnecessary; not quality but localization is indicated.



3, 7           cerne pios fletus laudataque lumina terge

The text is sound, and the interpretation is *cerne fletus et lauda luctum eius et lumina terge*. His eyes are not praised but their condition, that is implied both by *fletus* and *terge*.

3, 15          si quis pulsatae conscius umquam  
                matris et inferna rigidum timet Aeacon urna

*Consci*us is frequently used without a verb: *Th.* i 257; iii 175; iv 60; ix 422; *Silv.* iii 5, 36, and especially *Th.* ix 876 *nec vulneris usquam conscius olim auctor teli causaeque patebant*. There is no necessity for supplying an object with *timet* to take the place of *umquam*.—Lines 17 and 18 give a fine example of Statius' compression of statement: *tenet ecce senilis leniter implicitos vultus* means "he embraces the old man and gently holds his brow."

3, 25          felix et nimium felix plorataque nato

Unger is the only critic who is bold enough to keep *et* here, others reading the more common *heu*, *o*, *a*, *ter*, or *en*. Statius repeatedly has the intensive *et*, and I see no reason for abandoning it here. Slater's *haec* is too far removed in form from *et* and the pronoun is hardly in place; he translates it "yonder" which is rather *illa*. Another possible interpretation is *felix (et nimium felix) plorataque*.

3, 35                           ferat ignis opes heredis et alto  
                aggere missuri nitido pia nubila caelo  
                stipentur cineres nos non arsura feremus  
                munera

*Cineres* must mean the dead body which is being reduced to ashes; in the process it sends off clouds, since there are heaped upon it the proud harvests of the Cilicians and Arabians; but the offerings not to be burned will be offered by the poet, the testimony of a lasting sorrow.—In 40, it does not seem necessary to change *ignem* to the more common *ignes*: *Th.* xii 56 *gemens circumvolat ignem*.

**3, 45**      *supplevit fortuna genus culpamque parentum  
occultuit*

Culpam is sound: it means deliquium, balancing supplevit, and it has no suggestion of immortality: i 4, 52 culpa senectae.

**3, 47**      *sed quibus occasus pariter famulantur et ortus*

Famulatur is read in A and may be defended by Th. xii 1 vigil inclinaverat astra ortus, but Statius prefers the plural of the word: ii 2, 45; 7, 94; iii 2, 33; v 1, 81; 3, 116; Th. i 225, 501; ii 32, 684; iv 631; x 305, 382. This preference is marked in ii 1, 218 quicquid habet ortus finem timet.

**3, 49**                      *vice cuncta geruntur  
alternisque premunt*

No one but Saenger is bold enough to keep geruntur, and Gevaert's reguntur (which occurs nowhere in Statius) is the general favorite. Why geruntur cannot mean "administered" here I cannot see: in that sense it makes a proper antithesis to premunt, forming a contrast between subordination and supremacy. Gero and rego are sometimes synonyms: Cic. Att. xvi 2, 2 omnia nostra ita gerito regito gubernato. Reguntur is too plain spoken for Statius' artificial style: Korsch's premuntur is still more improbable. Markland's change of premunt to regunt is unlikely, as premo is one of Statius' favorite words and used by him over ninety times.

**3, 64**      *semperque gradu prope numina*

Gradu can hardly mean "with his step," and the old vulgate gradus sc. fuisse would correspond to coluisse latus in the next verse. In iv 9, 19 laurus promisit is read for lauro of M. Gradi of Meursius is not in Statius' vocabulary and it is doubtful whether the form was ever used. There is only one known example, viz., Paul. Fest. 97, 10.

**3, 68**      hic annis multa super indole vietis

Hic is sound and need not be changed to his or hinc: ii 2, 85 hic Graiis, iii 1, 46 hic templis, iv 6, 31 hic Aoniis. Indoles is a neutral word and hence magna, culta, nimia have been suggested for multa, but "much talent" would be interpreted in a good sense in such a context.

**3, 71**      hinc et in Arctoas tenuis comes usque pruinas

Hinc means "after this" and should not be changed to hunc or huic; Statius avoids pronouns in this description, except tibi and tu. Tenuis probably means "humble," but possibly may go with pruinas in the sense "penetrating," for which meaning there are no parallels in Statius.

**3, 78**      et longo transmittit habere nepoti

The nepos must have been Nero but he certainly was not tall or distant. The line is hopelessly corrupt.

**3, 98**                      vigil ite animaeque sagacis  
exitus evoluit

For ite, iste of the Parmensis is the easiest correction. It is due to the second person in numeraveris of the line above; it means "that one whom I am describing to you": ii 6, 13 ne comprime fletus . . . rumpat dolor iste, iii 1, 96 fixisti? quid enim ista domus. Animae must be changed to animi with most editors after the Parmensis: the confusion of the words is common and also variation between e and i; cf. iii 5, 63. Exitus "outgo" is sound, and I cannot understand why it has met with so much opposition.

**3, 105**      quid Ausonio scriptum crepet igne Monetae

Ignē is probably due to igni in 104 and cannot be right, for the coins had been stamped with an inscription—scriptum, and fire is not used for stamping. The missing word was either dependent on scriptum or on Monetae. Waller's aede gives a



good construction, but such a corruption is difficult to explain.—In 107, *et numquam laesa profundo cura mero* means that his attention to his duties was never impaired by drunkenness. Markland's *laeta* or Otto's *lassa* is unnecessary.

**3, 114**     *vultibus et sibimet similis natorum gratia monstrat*

There is one word too many in this verse and most of the editors delete *vultibus*. In the *Silvae* met occurs elsewhere only with *ego* and *me*, and it is difficult to make any meaning out of *gratia sibimet monstrat*. Why *sibimet* was inserted I do not know; Halm thinks it was a misreading of *similis*.

**3, 145**     *et celso natorum aequavit honore*

Only Queek has the courage to keep *honore*, most editors reading *honori*, but Krohn *honorem*. Celso has been changed to *celse*. The construction is *et celso honori natorum aequavit eum honore*: iii 5, 45 *qua . . . Heroidas aequas*, Th. v 443 *cursu tener aequat Hylas*.

**3, 179**     *haut aliter gemuit periuria Theseus*  
              *litora qui falsis deceperat Aegea velis*

*Gemuit periuria* is sound, for Statius has *gemere* in the sense of *dolere* frequently: Th. vi 172; ix 767; xii 285. So in Ovid Am. iii 6, 49 *gemens . . . delicta*. The perjury of Theseus is a commonplace: Ov. Am. i 7, 15 *periuri . . . Thesei*, F. iii 473 *periure et perfide Theseu*, Ep. x 76 *periuri . . . viri*. In 180 *litora* is due to *periuria* and *Aegea*; and the old correction *litore* should be made: above, 136, *Etrusca* for *Etrusce*; cf. iii 1, 91; iv 4, 71; iv 6, 85.

**3, 214**     *eque tua tumulum tellure levabit*

This means simply "will bury thee in thine own land": Th. iv 623 *te . . . placidumque pia tellure reponam*, Silv. v 3, 36 *tumulo quo molle quiescis iugera nostra tenens*: cf. iii 5, 71.—In 215, a parallel is ii 6, 10 *amore fideque has meritum lacrimas*.

4, 9        *atque diu fratres putet esse Lyaei*

To interpret, with Ellis, *fratres* of the hair of Bacchus as brothers of the hair of Earinus seems very forced, as *patri* of natural relationship occurs in line 8. The usual change to *fratris* is defended by iii 5, 29, comes for *comis*, iv 9, 21, libelliones for *libellionis*, v, 2, 56, *potentes* for *potentis*, v 3, 258, *segnes* for *segnis*.

4, 13        *illa licet sacrae placeat sibi nube rapinae*

In any other author but Statius *nube* would be impossible, but he and his readers knew that Ganymede was taken up by a whirlwind, which was a cloud so far as obscurity goes. *Nube rapinae* means "the cloud that hid the rape." Th. v 251 *occulta speculamur nube latentes*. *Sacra*, of course, means "divine" in reference to Zeus.

4, 26        *hic puerum egregiae praeclarum sidere formae*

Parallels are Th. vii 340 *praeclarum forma Narcissum*, 694 *galeamque incendit honoro sidere*.

4, 31        *miratur puerile decus vultumque comasque*

Grasberger would read *vultusque* as in i 2, 14 he found *crinem vultusque genasque*; but the triple repetition of *s* would be intolerable: thus in Th. ii 655 occurs *vultum mutatus inanes*. The plural *genas* is natural, like *oculos* in Th. vi 622 *vultumque oculosque madentes*. For the singular and plural together, cf. Th. iii 265 *pectora summo acclinata iugo vultumque*.—In 40, *Lamius* for *Latmius* is illustrated by *acea* for *actea* in iv 9, 50, *menis* for *mentis* in v 3, 13, and *ari* for *arti* in v 3, 157.

4, 47        *iam Latii montes veteresque penates*

I am not quite sure that the change to Barth's *veterisque*, followed by all editors, is necessary. In its favor is Th. iii 183 *veteris cum regia Cadmi*, and the avoidance of the repeated syllable *es*, and the propriety of the epithet to Evander. But Th. i 608 *novos ibat populata penates*. *Mole nova* in the next line would harmonize with *veteris* or *veteres*.

## 4, 48      quos mole nova pater inclitus orbis

Urbis for orbis has much in its favor: i 4, 95 Latiae pater inclitus urbis, 8, 20 pater augustissimus urbis. In iv 2, 14 orbisque subacti magne parens, subacti makes orbis probable there, and v 1, 37 deus qui flectit habenas orbis et humanas . . . digerit actus; iii 3, 88 impendia mundi, iv 1, 17 parens mundi (but see my note there).—In 55, sic fundit amictus, fundit is our colloquial “fixes.”

4, 60      care puer superis qui praelibare verendum  
nectar

Care puer occurs in seven other places with no dative dependent on it, but Th. i 649 has cara adeo superis, and to take superis with either praelibare or verendum is harsh. Hence Ruediger was right in punctuating after superis.

4, 65              ne prima genas lanugo nitentes  
carperet et pulchrae fuscaret gratia formae

Unger makes many changes and Markland a few, but no change is necessary although Statius would probably have written more carefully if he had been more willing to comply with Domitian's request. Carperet in 66 means “spoil,” and the first down of manhood would mar the freshness of the favorite's cheeks; fuscaret gratia formae is a very careless expression for fuscaret gratiam formae. Rather than reshape the verse the poet allowed fuscaret to stand as an intransitive. Carperet is, of course, too strong a word. I wonder if he thought of caperet only to reject it on account of the quantity, and then took the next word to it.

## 4, 68      haut illi puerum mollire potestas

Illi cannot be right as the reference is not to Aesculapius. Phillimore writes alii, a form that does not occur elsewhere in the *Silvae*. The vulgate ulli is more probable: i 2, 83 haud ulli vehementer umquam incubui.



- 4, 73      nondum pulchra ducis clementia coeperat ortu  
             intactos servare mares

Ortu is difficult with either mares or servare, and artus, orbi, and arte are all unsatisfactory. There remains to take ortu of the beginning of Domitian's reign, strengthening coeperat, but I cannot press this suggestion with much confidence. Perhaps. Orchi = testiculo is the word required.—In 75 solos is sound: nature produces only males and females.

- 4, 83      hunc nova tergemina pectebat Gratia dextra

This is one of Statius' condensed sentences: what he means, but does not write, is "this lock a new charm adorned, which the three Graces, each with her own hand, gave in combing it."—In 84, the reference books speak of the purple hair of Nisus; of course it was red. It was saucia in being cut off.

- 4, 86      ipsi cum primum niveam praeceperere frontem  
88      accurrunt teneri Paphia cum matre volucres

The editors take ipsi with volucres, but it rather refers to Earinus, who is the principal person and whose name cannot be used. In 88, Markland objects to the absence of a noun with the two adjectives; but i 2, 61 puer e turba volucrum, i 3, 12 volucres vetuit discedere natos makes it probable that volucres is a substantive.

- 4, 91      rapit ipsa cadentes

Cadentes sc. comas is changed to cadentem sc. crinem by the modern editors after Schrader. The hair is comae in line 1, crines in 6, comas in 31, but crines in 81. Note the variation in Th. viii 487—puer malasque comamque Integer . . . cadunt in brachia crines. Perhaps the plural is used to mark the cutting of the separate strands of the lock.—In 94, speculum is a metallic mirror with a jeweled edge, which was to receive the reflection of Earinus and to keep it. Auro is sound: Sen. N.Q. 1, 17, 8 specula totis paria corporibus auro argentoque caelata sunt, gemmis deinde adornata. Cf. the preface to this book:

capillos suos quos cum gemmata pyxide et speculo ad Pergamenum Asclepium mittebat. Statius is not thinking of any physical difficulty here. When the mirror had received and retained the reflection it would not be a mirror but a portrait. Mirrors sometimes had covers: Marquardt P.L. 690.

**4, 99**      ac puer egregius

A and editors change to at, but is it necessary? The same question occurred in i 2, 219.

**5, 9**      non interfectas commenta retexere telas

Retexere and the participle must be contrary terms, and therefore retexere must mean "weave again," the participle representing a contrary action and not a condition. Intersectas of the early editions is entirely satisfactory.

**5, 12**      die tamen unde alta mihi fronte et nubila vultus

Alta frons must mean a lofty brow of superciliousness. Gräber's change to altam . . . frontem is not necessary, even if the common construction: i 3, 91 serena fronte, and ii 6, 65; iii 4, 17 placida fronte.

**5, 15**      nec aut rapidi mulcent te proelia Circi  
aut intrat sensus clamosi turba theatri

Some editors prefer a mad dog circus to a swift one and read rabidi. Rabidi would harmonize with clamosi in the next line: Th. viii 633 rabido clamore, v 96 rabidis clamoribus, but it is not needed. The noise follows the swiftness in Th. vii 584, non aliter cursu rapidae atque immane frementes. The circus is swift because of the action in it, as torches are swift in Th. iv 467, rapidae faces.

**5, 28**      ter me nitidis Albana ferentem  
dona comes

The editors, after Politian, change ter to tu, but such a corruption is unexampled in the manuscripts of the *Silvae*; and the number is likely to be correct, as we do not know all the details of Statius' life. The subject is omitted in hortarere 22, fixisti 26.

moraris 43, aequas 45, quaeris 52, and elsewhere. Therefore tu is not demanded. As nitidis must have a noun, comis for comes is probably correct: Th. xii 537 nitidi crines.

**5, 45**      qua veteres Latias Graias Heroidas aequas

This would seem to mean "in which you equal the Latin-Greek Heroines," but there were none of that variety so far as I know. What he really means is qua veteres Graias Heroidas aequas, qua veteres Latinas Heroidas aequas. Such instances of asyndeton are not unusual in Statius: here he has gone beyond his usual custom.

**5, 49**      et quamquam saevi fecerunt maenada planctus

The reference must be to some definite person who was overcome by love, and the meaning ought to be "and her whom cruel sorrow made a Maenad," whoever she was: et eam quam saevi planctus fecerunt maenada, but this leaves out one quam. Slater supplies questa at the beginning of the verse and drops out the superfluous quam, which may have been inserted to fill out the verse. I would go farther and write questa est for et.

**5, 60**      et nunc illa tenet viduo quod sole cubili  
otia iam pulchrae terit infecunda iuventae

Tenet is for se tenet, "continues," and illa refers to the daughter. The object of teneo often has to be supplied: S. i 1, 40, 58; iii 3, 178, 196; A. i 312; Th. vi 481, vii 402, ix 243, x 715. Viduo cubili means merely "mateless": Th. xii 26 viduisque equis, of horses that had no riders; of Amazons, in Sen. Here. F. 215. In 61, Politian and some editors change iam to tam, although nunc and iam occur together in iv 3, 76; 4, 87; v 1, 30.

**5, 64**      sive chelyn complexa petit seu voce paterna  
discendum Musis sonat et mea carmina flectit

Petit cannot be right. Possibly petit and sonat have changed places: Claud. iv Cons. Hon. pr. 18, chelys sonat. Sonat would then be a synonym of quatit or ferit that have been proposed by others.



**5, 74**      hic auspice condita Phoebo

I cannot understand why the modern editors follow Heinsius in changing hic to hinc. In 76 at hinc occurs, but in Statius correspondence is not necessary, although desirable.

**5, 78**      nostra quoque et propriis tenuis nec rara colonis  
Parthenope

If nec rara colonis is put within parenthesis, the reading will be easier. Nec rara colonis means "is not open," that is, has no room for immigrants: i 2, 193 cepisset Martem nec me prohibente sacerdos.

**5, 93**      quid laudem litus libertatemque Menandri

Some think that litus is corrupt and others Menandri. Probably the first syllable of litus is due to laudem and libertatem: i 2, 267 qui leges qui castra legant qui carmina ludant, where rogant is usually read. If this is the case, coetus may be the missing word, or perhaps cantus.

**5, 102**      caraque non molli iuga Surrentina Lyaeo  
quae meus ante alios habitator Pollius auget

Heinsius changed molli to soli, but the meaning is that Surrentum was dear to Statius, not for its wine as it might be to others, but because Pollius lived there. See the second poem of the second book, where in verses 4 and 99 the wine is mentioned; yet Pollius and his villa are more important.

**5, 104**      Denarumque lacus medicos Staviasque renatas

Vollmer's Aenarumque is the most probable correction if there is any proof of the occurrence of the word. Stabias by Heinsius must be accepted for Stavias.

## NOTES ON THE SILVAE OF STATIUS

## BOOK IV

BY

WILLIAM A. MERRILL

## 1, 5      exultent leges Latiae gaudete curules

In iv 4, 39, *Latiae non miscent iurgia leges*, but there, and in i 4, 95; v 3, 198; v 2, 19, the adjective goes with the closing word of the verse. So also in iv 4, 22, *ingeniive bonis Latiis aestivet in oris*. In sense, of course, *Latiae* goes with both *leges* and *curules* (*magistracies*): *Sil. Ital.* x 587, *eversas bis centum in strage curulis*; cf. below, 36, *totidem curulis*, and iv 4, 77, *cunctas curules*.

1, 8      subiere novi Palatia fasces  
et requiem bis sextus honos precibusque receptis  
curia Caesareum gaudet vicisse pudorem

The ninth line has been variously changed, and those who keep it unaltered would construe *requiem* with *vicisse*. I think rather that *subiit* should be supplied from *subiere*: iv 3, 130, *dignior has subit habenas*. The consulship has come over the emperor's peace. The harshness is excused by the *zeugma*.—In 17, Bentley would join *mundi* with *saecula*, instead of with *parens*. From Statius's usage it is impossible to decide: i 6, 39, *saecula . . . antiqui Iovis*, i 2, 187, *mundi aetas*, iv 7, 54, *mundi senium*, i 2, 178, *parens Latius*, iv 2, 15, *orbisque subacti magne*

parens; Th. i 696, Phoebe parens, iii 134, magna parens iuvenum, iv 226, volucrumque parens. I rather incline to follow Bentley.

**1, 25** moribus atque tuis gaudent

Postgate joins moribus atque tuis to the preceding sentence, but I cannot make any sense of such a combination. Tuisque Moribus occurs in iii 5, 119; and nimiusque in moribus horror, v 1, 64, is the opposite of gaudent here. The postponement of atque may be excused by metrical convenience.

**1, 31** ter Latio deciesque tulit labentibus annis  
Augustus faces sed coepit sero mereri

Fasces is the obvious correction for faces, but Augustus did not bring the fasces to Latium or in Latium: the fasces were Latin, and, with Gronovius, Latios should be read: iii 3, 115, fasces . . . tulit. Mereri here contains apparently a slur on Augustus if it means "deserve" (the prevailing meaning of the word in Statius); his first consulship having been gained through intimidation.—In 35, promittitis of M points to promittes, read by most recent editors, rather than to permittes of Politian.

**1, 38** et tibi longaevi renovabitur ara parentis

Tarenti of Turnebus, approved by some recent editors, is probably correct, as parentis makes no sense. Martial iv 1, 8, et quae Romuleus sacra Tarentos habet, refers to Domitian's secular games of 88 A.D. For the corruption, cf. ii 7, 96, prementis for trementis, v 1, 84, tempus for pondus.—In 41, in is not necessary before gremio: with this word the preposition is omitted ten times by Statius and inserted twice; yet in some of the passages the dative and not the ablative may have been used.

**1, 46** longamque tibi rex magne iuventam  
annuit atque suos promisit Iuppiter annos

Rex magne is, of course, impossible. There is no parallel in Statius of either rex magne or of rex Iuppiter. Magne, referring to Domitian, may be defended by verse 17 and by iv 2, 15.



Magne alone may be compared with v 5, 74, *uberibus tibi, parve, dedi*. *Salve dux hominum* in iv 3, 139, supports Markland's *dux* for *rex*, especially because of the promise in 149, *annos perpetua geres iuventa*.

**2, 4**      *aequore qui multo reducem consumpsit Ulixen*

*Aequore multo* means "much voyaging" as in *Th.* xii, 809, *iam longo meruit ratis aequori portum*, but *multo* needs no change to either *longo* or *lento*.

**2, 6**      *dominaque dedit consurgere mensa*

This is inconsistent with verse 17, *vina inter mensasque et non assurgere fas est*. If *consurgere* be retained, *domina mensa* must be changed to *dominae . . . mensae*: iii 9, 80, *Dionaeae . . . columbae* for *Dionea . . . columba*. But Markland's reading *non surgere* is easy and probable: iii 5, 25, *intantum* for *intactum*.

**2, 9**      *nectat odoratas et Smyrna et Mantua lauros*

*Odoratas* is due to a misconception of *Smyrna* as odoriferous instead of Homeric. The old vulgate *odoratas* should be read: *Th.* x 254, *ponit odoratas Phoebeia insignia frondes*.

**2, 22**      *numina nec magnum properes excedere caelum*

The old vulgate *ne* is unnecessary: i 1, 17, *nec veris maiora putes*, 106; iv 1, 29, iv 4, 86. *Excedere caelum* means to depart to the great heaven from the palace, that is a small heaven. The verb in silver Latin has this meaning: *Livy* ii 37, 8, *nec properes excedere domo in magnum caelum*. The change to *escendere* is unnecessary.

**2, 23**      *tanta patet moles effusaeque impetus aulae  
liberior campi multumque amplexus operi  
aetheros*

"So wide extends the pile and the reach of the outspread hall more free and embracing much of the plain of the covered sky"—if any man thinks that this makes sense I must differ from

him. *Campi* has been changed to *campo* and *operti* to *aperto*, but the evil is deeper seated. And yet practically all of the modern editors keep the MS. reading.

**2, 27**    *mons Libys Iliacusque nitet multa Syene*

Perhaps *iam culta* should be read for *multa*: *iam* is the reading of an inferior manuscript. *Culta* continues the thought of *nitet*; the construction is similar to that of *certantia* in the next line.

**2, 36**    *sic vitifero sub palmite*

Krohn changed *vitifero* to *uvifero*, which is certainly what is meant, yet Statius is so careless that *vitifero* may be a synonym of *uvifero*: *Virg. G. ii* 60, *fert uva racemos*; *Mart. viii* 51, 12, *ipse tua pasei vite Lyaeae velis*; *Lucr. i* 175, *vitis autumnu fundi*.—In 50, Markland's *novercae* for *reversus* has met with no approval, since Statius has the verb eleven times without stating the terminus a quo.—In 52, *aequo tuos metus* is to be interpreted by *Th. viii* 515, *quis tanta relatu aequet*.

**3, 2**    *immanis sonus aequoris propinquum*

All change *aequoris* to *aequori*, the common construction. Statius has the adjective nineteen times but nowhere with a word dependent on it. *Livy vi* 25, 7, has *ex propinquis itineris locis* according to Weissenborn, but there Madvig reads *itineri*.—In 5, *peierante bello* goes with *quatit*: *Th. i* 251, *me bello certare iubes*. The reference is to Hannibal, *dux* being contrasted with *catervae* in line 4.—In line 7 *frangit vada* is a strange expression and unexampled.

**3, 19**    *sancit lumina Flaviumque calvum*

*Limina* of the *inferiores* is at first sight very probable, as the words are so often confused and a reference to the temple of the Flavian family is natural. But *lumina* means the deified members of the Flavian gens and corresponds to *Tonantem* in 16 and *Pacem* in 17. *Sancit* is the official recognition or canonization.

Lumina in meaning does not differ much from numina, that has been proposed. Futura semper in 18 is said with thought of the temple itself. Calvum makes no sense, and clavum, by Ellis and Riese is, as yet, the most probable correction. The word elsewhere in Statius means rudder or stripe, and the figurative meaning "sway" is unexampled. Perhaps sacrum should be read: iii 1, 152, gentile sacrum; cf. Th. v. 750, vi 123, 151, xi 232, xii 392. The whole line would then mean "he sanctifies the ever living heavenly fires of his ancestral race, and institutes the Flavian cult also destined to last forever."—In 20, segnis . . . gravatus is probably correct.

### 3, 23      iniectu solidat gravis habenas

Gravis is sound, but the editors have mistaken its meaning: a sandy road is a "heavy" road because it is clogging and troublesome. So in 25 sinus has a different meaning from sinus in 89, and axe in 27 and 107 do not have the same signification.

### 3, 27      hic quondam piger axe vectus uno              nutabat cruce pendula viator

This seems to mean that the traveler was driving in a two-wheeled cart, since the road was impassible for a four-wheeled one, that he was compelled to go slow, that he was tossed up and down by the roughness of the road, and that he was annoyed by his frequently unstable position. He probably sat in the cart, an essedum, and not on the pole, and was pitched forward and back as the cart progressed. This explanation does not differ essentially from that given by Cartault in the *Journal des Savants*, i 670.—In 33, orbitae tacentes is unexampled: probably the wheels were clogged with mud, and so did not creak: Martial iv 64, 19, essedo tacente ne blando rota sit molesta somno.—In 35, querens quadrupes shows that there was only one animal, and alta statera must be some kind of a yoke that was used with one animal only. Probably it was something like the high yoke used in Russia with one horse; see the illustration in Daremberg-



Saglio under "carruca."—In 46, *et* should be retained: it follows *ne* in iii 4, 65.

**3, 59**      *his parvus nisi deviae vetarent*

*Cliviae*, ill-omened birds, is the best that has been suggested so far, but it is unsatisfactory; Th. ix 254, *ni fata vetent*.

**3, 62**      *et longus medias fragror per urbes*

*Fragor* for *fragror* is, of course, necessary, and Politian's *it* for *et* is universally accepted, and is defended by i 1, 65, *it fragror et magnae vincit vaga murmura Romae*; Th. i 671, *clamor iit*, Th. iii 593, *it clamor*. The change certainly is very attractive, yet all the manuscripts have *et*, and the verb is often omitted: Th. v 393, *strata gelu, fragror inde iugis*, Th. vi 117, *minor ille fragror*, Th. vii 615, *saevus iam clamor*, Th. x 95, *non illic caeli fragror*; but S. iii 1, 132, *Lemniacis fragror est*. However, *longus* and *per* support *it*.—In 66, *Savo* for *Sason* is highly probable but not certain. The name of some other river may be concealed, as *Sason* is too far removed from *Savo* to make that certain. *Vibius Sequester* (p. 151, Riese) names *Sason* as an Adriatic river.

**3, 70**      *pontis Caesarei reclinus arcu*

Phillimore has *reclivis* with no critical note, but *M* has *reclinus*, which is read by Vollmer, Postgate, and Klotz. The statement made above on page 78 should therefore be corrected.

**3, 88**      *ne me pulvereum gravemque caelo*

The older editors and Phillimore read *caeno*, suggested by *putorem* in 87 and *gurgite* in 94, a reading abandoned by all but Baehrens. The sand would not be heavy with filth, but might be pestilential. For *pulvereum*, cf. Th. i 358, *pulverulenta prius calcandaque flumina nullae aggeribus tenuere morae*.—In 89, *obluat* is unknown, and makes no sense: *obruat*, of the inferior manuscripts, should be read with most editors: i 2, 267, *legant* for *regant*. Cf. Th. iv 687, *obducite pulvere rivos*.

**3, 95**     haec amnis pariterque se levarat

Baehrens revived the old reading levabat, but the meaning is "while he was speaking and before he had finished, the dyke of the road had raised itself up." Pluperfects in Statius are very rare except with dixerat and finierat, most forms being metrically inconvenient. Typical pluperfects are Th. xii 422, x 346, 463, ix 821, xi 140.—In 98, Baehrens reads also belligeri with the old vulgate, for belligeris; but the latter is defended by Th. x 28, belligeris pudet annumerare tropaeis, and Th. x 739 S. ii 3, 12.—In 100, imbri is sound: Th. x 135, excedit gravior nigrantibus antris Iris et obtusum multo iubar excitat imbri.

**3, 101**     illic flectitur excitus viator

Why the traveler should be excited does not appear. Car-tault's flectit iter is most probable: ii 2, 11 flectere gressus.—Markland rejected 112–113 as inconsistent with the context, but Vollmer retains the lines with 111 which he takes ἀπὸ κοινοῦ. The difficulty will be removed if 111–113 be made a separate paragraph as a general statement.

**3, 114**     sed quam fine viae recentis uno

All read imo, with the editio princeps, for uno, yet uno, if weaker than imo, is the reading of all the manuscripts. There is no parallel in Statius for imo fine.

**3, 121**     en et colla rotat

Slater proposes ut for et, which could be defended by i 6, 54, ut pugnas capit, the only occurrence of ut exclamatory in the *Silvae*. Et follows en in ii 1, 17.

**3, 137**     largis India nubibus maderes  
undaret Libye teperet Haemus

The text is sound: there would be showers in India, moisture in Africa, warmth in Thrace; the last because the snows would melt. Undaret, "overflow," has been wrongly questioned.

**3, 139**    *salve dux hominum et parens deorum*

Markland would omit the *et*, an instance of his subjective criticism. There is no parallel to the use of the phrase, but Statius frequently elided *-um* before *et*: i 2, 78; ii 4, 30, 5, 21, 6, 4; iii 1, 71, 3, 158, 5, 88; iv, 4, 51, 55; v 3, 73.—In 140, the old vulgate had *cognitum* for *conditum*, which may be defended by iv 2, 37, *mecum altera saecula condes*.—In 144, Slater's change of *mereris* to *iuveris* seems arbitrary. *Merentis* in 145 is corrupt and no satisfactory emendation has yet been made.

**3, 158**    *et laudum cumulo beatus omni  
              sandes belliger abnuesque currus*

*Scandes* of R and most editors is the most probable correction: ii 7, 107, *seu rapidum poli per axem Famae curribus arduus levatus*; v 1, 105, *quaeque tuas laurus volueri, Germanice, curru Fama vehit*; i 2, 119, *et si flammiferas potuisset scandere sedes*.

**3, 162**    *haec donec via te gerente terras*

*Domitius* and inferior manuscripts have *regente*, and even if Martial says *te summe mundi rector* in vii 7, 5, Statius may have preferred the less invidious word *gerente* in the sense "administering." The words *rex*, *rector*, *rego* were all avoided by Domitian's flatterers as applicable to the emperor, even if there were no objection to calling him *deus*. But *regente* is an easy change, while *gerente* is the more difficult reading.—In 163, *senescat* is more probable than *senescet* of Heissius.

**4, 2**        *hac ingressa vias qua nobilis Appia crescit  
              in latus*

Vollmer and most recent editors change to *via*, but *vias* is used as in v 1, 245, *invasitque vias*; *hac* and *qua* are correlative: Th. vii 230, *quacunque ingressi*. *Crescit in latus* is a strange expression: Slater translates it "starts out into a new road," which is no translation at all; and Vollmer "wo die Appia nach der Seite einem neuen Zweig in der via Domitiana erhaelt." The expression means "grow sidewise" and may imply that the Domit-



iana was wider than the Appia. So in iv 3, 2, *immanis sonus . . . saxosae latus Appiae replevit*, where Slater omits *latus* in his translation. I cannot believe that a road that forked can be said to grow sidewise, and increasing to a side is nonsense.

4, 8      *ille egregium formaque animisque videbis*

*Illic* of the editio princeps is the correct reading: *e* and *e* were confused. *Illac* of Krohn and Vollmer is improbable: the meaning is not "in that way," but "in that place." *Illic* occurs in ten other places in the *Silvae*, *illac* not at all. *Animis* occurs referring to a single person in Th. i 314, vi 776, 886, vii 727.

4, 26      *inde sonus geminas mihi circum it auris*

Klotz reports this as the reading of M, and if so it should be retained. *Circumit* apparently should be read in iii 5, 59, iv 8, 11, and possibly in Th. ix 505, vi 888, viii 132, 312. *Circuit* appears to be correct in S. v 2, 12; Th. ii 603, v 576, vi 779, x 115; Achil. i 103, 408.

4, 31      *et Eleis auriga laboribus actos*  
             *Alpheos permuleet equos*

Markland and Phillimore change to *Eleos . . . actis*, unnecessarily: Th. vi 469, *coeptus equis labor et iam pulvere quarto campum ineunt*, Th. xi 449, *bis cominus actos avertit bonus error equos*, Th. xii 246, *exacti si spes non blanda laboris*. The horses were not only driven, but driven hard and exhausted. *Alpheos* is, of course, a blunder for *Alpheo* as the horses were not *Alphean*.

4, 63      *aut Histrum servare datus metuendaque Portae*  
             *limina Caspiacae*

Whether *latus* of Domitius or *datur* of Politan should be read here is hard to decide. For *latus*, the stages of corruption may have been *latus*, *tatus*, *datus*; Th. viii 290, *cui latus Euphratae cui Caspia limina mandet*. For *datur*, Th. v. 271, *dum fata dabant . . . servare*; S. iii 1, 38, *textus* for *textitur*, iv 5, 10, *crinitus* for *crinitur*.

**4, 66**      quiqui gravem tarde subeant thoraca lacerti

For the grotesque *tarde* which is generally rejected, I suggest *torti*, that I understand of knotted muscles: *Th. vi 844, nodisque lacerti difficiles*.

**4, 73**      poscit avos prestatque domi novisse triumphos

It is not probable that the archaic *avos* should be read in the absence of other archaic forms. Confusion of *o* and *u* is not uncommon: *i 3, 41, tota for tuta, i 4, 61, colos for colus; v 3, 107; iii 1, 182; iv 6, 35; v 3, 7, 280*. *Praestat* is retained by Klotz and Postgate; it is difficult, yet nothing better has been suggested.

**4, 76**      iam te blanda sinu Tyrio sibi Gloria felix  
educat et cunctas gaudet spondere curulis

Why Glory should have a Tyrian robe is not plain; probably the Tyrian robe belongs to the boy. For *educat*, cf. *alit* in *v 3, 132, alit victos immanis gloria falsi*. The glory is that of ancestors—*gloriā patrum i 2, 108*, and it is revived in the grandson—*ii 3, 77, revirescet gloria Blaesi*. Most recent editors read *curia* with Markland, which makes excellent sense and is supported by many examples, but the corruption of *gloria* to *curia* is not easily paralleled.

**4, 81**      credetne virum ventura propago  
cum segetes iterum cum iam haec deserta virebunt

Statius uses the genitive plural *virum* frequently, but here it is placed exceptionally, *metr. gr.*, for *hominum*. *Segetes* is zeugmatic with *virebunt*; a word like *flavebunt* is to be supplied. *Deserta* must refer to the devastation caused by the eruption; one later than that of 79, as this poem was written in 95.

**4, 83**      infra urbes populosque premi proavitaque toto  
rura abiisse mari

The sense demanded is that the fields withdrew under water. *Toto* seems to be used loosely for *omnino*: "ancestral fields altogether destroyed by the sea." Of the many conjectures for *toto* no one is convincing.

- 4, 101 iamque vale et penitus voti tibi vatis honorem  
corde exire veta nec enim Tirynthius almae  
pectus amicitiae

Voti seems to be used in the sense of *devoti*: iii 3, 154, tibi *devoti iuvenis*, Th. iii 232, tibi *praecipites animasque manusque devoveant*. Noti of the old vulgate is weak. Honorem for amorem, the reading of the inferior Mss, is improbable: among the 123 places where Statius uses the word, no one supports honor in the sense desired. Tirynthius is undoubtedly correct in spite of the many conjectures proposed to take its place. Pectus amicitiae is paralleled in Mart. ix 14, 1, hunc . . . esse *fidae pectus amicitiae*, Manil. ii 581, *natura creavit pectore amicitiae maius*; a verb is missing to be supplied from *cedet* as Vollmer proposed.

- 5, 9 nunc cuncta veris frondibus annuis

Phillimore in his first edition accepted Postgate's punctuation *cuncta veris: frondibus*, but in the second he has adopted the weak vernans of Markland. Of course evergreens do not noticeably leave out in the spring, hence *cuncta arbor* cannot be right, nor vernans either. The other numerous conjectures are all untenable. Spring is supreme because the Zephyrs have come; that is the date (nunc) of spring. Cf. Lucr. i 10.

- 5, 12 quod tacita statuere bruma

There is no evidence to show that birds devised in winter the songs of spring. If *statuere* can mean "stop" the verb will be intelligible. This was the interpretation of Wernsdorf, but there is a difficulty in *novi* and *inexpertum*, and perhaps Statius would have the birds study out their spring repertoire in the winter, improbable as it appears. *Siludere*, *tacuer* and *studuer* are no improvement on *statuere*.

- 5, 13 nos parca tellus pervigil et focus  
culmenque multo lumine sordidum

The hearth fire was constant and therefore gave out much light, even at night, and in consequence the roof was soiled by



the smoke. Statius does not write with meticulous exactness. Culmen is used as in i 5, 45, multas ubique dies radiis ubi culmina totis perforat atque alio sol improbus uritur aestu.

5, 22            hic mea carmina  
                 regina bellorum virago  
                 Caesareo peramavit auro

Per is probably a corruption of ter: iii 5, 28, ter me nitidis Albana ferentem dona comis sanctoque indutum Caesaris auro. Amavit is corrupt. What it represents it is impossible to say. Some synonym of honoravit is desired, and amavit cannot have such a meaning.

5, 49            est et frementi vox hilaris foro

Frementi may be defended by i 4, 10, fora turbida, iii 5, 87, nulla fora rabies; and hilaris by Ov. iv Pont. 4, 37, hos ubi facundo tua vox hilaraverit ore.

5, 57            hic plura pones vocibus et modis  
                 passum solutis

Vocibus et modis solutis means prose, but passum is corrupt. Markland's passu cannot mean "foot"; the word means "step" or "track": v 3, 161, numquam passu brevior relinqui. The easiest emendation is passim of the first edition, that is read by most modern editors.

6, 7            vinaque perpetuis aevo certantia fastis

This line needs interpretation, not emendation. Wine contending in age with the unbroken fasti means wine of the age implied in the lists that ran back indefinitely; not wine of a certain consulship, but of all of them put together. Statius is not prosaic nor is he to be taken literally.

6, 18            nox et Erythaeis Thetidis signanda lapillis

Markland's change to Erythraeae can be defended by i 2, 23, dominae niveis a vultibus, where M has dominis. But Martial has lapillos Erythraeos v 37, 4, Erythreis . . . lapillis ix 2, 9,

Erythraeis lapillis ix 13, 5, which leads to the retention of the manuscript reading. Statius writes plana Thetis and Thetis invida, but not Erythraea Thetis nor any thing like it. Yet Claudian, Rapt. Pros. i 150, has Gaetula Thetis.

**6, 28**      quid Polycleteis iussum spirare caminis

M has quid, but the old vulgate, beginning with the edition of 1472, reads quod, which may be defended by ii 2, 67, aut Polycleteo iussum est quod vivere caelo; but quod is a relative pronoun there. Here the indefinite is demanded by the sense, and sit, not est, should be supplied with iussum to agree with the other subjunctives in the sentence.—In 29, longe is to be interpreted by Pliny xxxv 83, lineas visum effugientes. In 34, there seems to be no occasion for changing satiavit, with Phillimore, to satiavi: Ach. i 616, patrio satiavit pectora luxu.

**6, 36**      maestas deus ille deus seseque videndum  
indulsit Lysippe tibi parvusque videri

Editors and commentators have fought over the punctuation of line 36 in spite of the fact that Latin, like the laws of England, must be intelligible without punctuation. Whether Statius intended ille to look forward or back no man can tell. Statian usage in other places is no help here.

**6, 43**      ac spatium tam magna brevi mendacia formae

I agree with Kalinka in making no change: ac spatium sc. vide. Ac occurs before s in ii 6, 75; 7, 128. Cf. Th. vi 755, membrorum spatia.—In 45, curis has disturbed many who miss a word to balance ingentis in the next line; but in i 3, 51, enormes colossos has no contrasting word. Curis means the artists's task; cf. v 1, 8, curasque fatigat artificum. The ornaments of a table would, of course, be small.

**6, 58**      sustinet et cultum Nemaeo tegmine saxum

If cultum, "adorned," may be said of the stone, the reading can be retained, but the use in Statius is very dubious, although

Martial has it several times of a book. Yet Martial, ix 43, 1, says of the statuette "porrecto saxa leone mitigat," the hardness of the rock was softened by the skin.

6, 61 et comitem occasus secum portabat et ortus  
praestabatque libens modo qua diademata dextra

It is improbable that occasus and ortus refer to Alexander's retirement for the night, and there is difficulty in taking the words as terminal accusatives. There remains the genitive: "companion of his westering and eastering," meaning his journeys east and west. Markland is certainly right in saying that the meaning cannot be "companion of the East," nor would Statius permit himself to make such a bald statement. He uses ortus very loosely: iii 4, 7, quibus occasus pariter famulantur et ortus.—In 62, Vollmer (and Buecheler) have not convinced me that praestabat can be read with no further change. Prensabat of Alpha makes a definite sense, and M is particularly weak in the insertion and omission of t: iv 6, 91, castra for casta, ii 1, 58, ferat for fera, iii 3, 201, cetret for cera. Prēsabat became praesebat and then praestabat. Yet libans praestabat may be the correct reading, the words being placed in the wrong order and que then inserted. Cf. 76, deo libavit honores . . . dextra.

7, 1 iam diu lato sociata campo

This is the reading of P, but the early editions have satiata, which cannot be accepted without proof of Erato's satiety with the broad plain of the Thebais. A dative of the person must be supplied with socios in v 1, 194, with socium in ii 1, 28, and iii 5, 107, with sociis in iii 5, 1. Satiata calls for iam dudum which was once commonly read. The Muses invoked by Statius are Erato, Calliope, Clio, and Urania.—In line 2 herois labores is improbable, as Statius usually characterizes the hero: heroas is supported by i 3, 102, heroa ad robora.—In 28, gaudia seems defensible by iv 4, 50, ventosaeque gaudia famae, against Postgate's proposed grandia.



- 7, 35     optimo poscens pudet heu propinquo  
           funus amici

Propinquo was due to heu, and then amici was made to depend on funus. Domitius's propinquum and amico are surely right in spite of recent attempts to retain the manuscript reading.—In 46, whether tuleras should be changed to tuleris is doubtful.

- 8, 6        nec solum festas secreta Neapolis aras  
           ambiat et socii portas dilectaque miti  
           terra Dicachen

Secreta is probably right, but hard to interpret. This is the only place where the word Neapolis occurs; elsewhere Statius writes Parthenope, which is styled by him mea, benigna, nec rara, hospita, iuvenis. Here it may mean my "retreat" with his usual scorn of syntax. Markland gave the problem up and Vollmer's interpretation (strengthening solum) is unsatisfactory. Dicachen in 8 is corrupt; the old vulgate had Dicarchei and mitis in 7, but Baehrens's Dicarcheo is probably right, although there is no valid evidence for the founder's existence. Dilectaque miti terra Dicarcheo balances plaga cara madenti Surrentina deo in 9. Dilecta cannot be said of Statius himself, as Naples, not Puteoli, was beloved by him: ii 2, 4, of Puteoli, qua Bromio dilectus ager.

- 8, 15       dulcis tremit ecce tumultus  
           tot dominis clamata domus

Dulcis is right and tumultus is improperly made to agree with it; the vulgate tumultu is correct. Dulcis has the force of an adverb.—In 19, lauro of P points rather to lauros than to laurus of Krohn.

- 8, 24       stat domus et donis numquam mutata sacratis

For mutata, several words have been proposed to make an easier reading. Numquam mutata is like nil mutas in iv 9, 47, and muto means "lose" in Th. vii 651, mutare furorem, and

“leave” in Th. vii 71, *mutat agros*. The arrangement of words corresponds to that in ii 1, 150, *in vultu curarum ignara voluptas; donis sacratis balances fertilis*.

**8, 26**     *robore sed iuveni laetam dat virgo parenti*

Sed is correct, as an antithesis between the male and female offspring is needed. Baehrens's *laetandast* is not probable, because Statius has omitted in his usual manner the *est* with *aucta* in the preceding line. Although the Latinity of *laetanda* is not above suspicion, since the form does not occur in Statius and the passive use seems confined to the neuter, yet it is probably correct. Vollmer's *et* instead of *st* is the best correction yet made.—In 28, *maternis palaestris* is to be explained by the fact that Helen was conceived at the river Eurotas: ii 6, 45, *Ledaeo gurgite pubem Educat Eurotas*; Th. x 497, *natator Oebalus Eurotae tuque o spectate palaestris omnibus et nuper Nemaio in pulvere felix Alcidama*; Th. vi 896, *nec licet extrema matrem contingere planta*.—In 40, *cantu signare diem* can be defended by Ovid, *Fasti*, v 474, *signet honore diem*.—In 54, *patrii servate penates* can stand, recalling *di patrii* in line 45.

**9, 13**     *aut Byzantiacos colunt lacertos*

The fish are dressed in the leaves of the poems: Mart. iv 86, 8, *nec scombris tunicas dabis*. Heinsius's *olent* is not parallel to *madent* and *servant*.

**9, 26**     *chartae Thebaicaeve Caricaeve  
              nusquam turbine conditus ruenti  
              prunorum globus*

Papers do not go well with dates and figs: write *Chiae*. *Chiae* was written *Chtae*, and some scribe thought that the syllable *ar* had been omitted. Mart. xiii 23, *ficus Chiae*. *Chia* *seni* *similis* *Baccho*. *Gratas* occurs for *Graius* in ii 1, 113, cf. ii 2, 95; *iam* for *tam* in iii 4, 39, 5, 61; *iuus* for *tuus* in v 3, 219. For the form of the sentence, cf. 36, *non sal oxyporumve caseusve*. Line 27 may be explained by Mart. xiii 28, *haec tibi quae torta vene-*

runt condita meta si maiora forent cottana ficus erat. I take turbine ruenti in the sense of torta meta, referring to the pyramidal shape of the package.

9, 29      non enlychnia sicca non replictae  
            bullorum tunicae nec ova tantum  
            nec leves alicae nec asperum far

Enlychnia, after Klotz, is read by most modern editors, and the confusion of u and n is not uncommon; the old vulgate ellychnia cannot be defended by the confusion of u and l which does not occur in M; but in spite of the manuscript reading Statius probably wrote ellychnia. Rose reads enlychnia in Vitr. 1, 5, where the MSS. are dubious, as they are also in Pliny xxiii 84 and xxviii 168 and 181, where ellychnia is read. There is no occurrence of ἐνλύχνιον, and Greek words in ἐνλ are practically unknown.—In 31, bulborum is read by all editors after Politian, but it is not plain why “unrolled skins of onions” should be sent as a gift. Does Statius mean old onions with cracked skins, or opened sacks of onions? The meaning of replictae is as uncertain as that of ruenti in 27. Slater translates “leeks with their jackets off,” which Statius certainly does not say, even if he means it. Or is enlychnia sicca parallel to replictae tunicae, and were these stripped skins used for lampwicks or the like? Could the coats of onions be folded up together dry for some use or other? Onions had tunics: Persius iv 30, tunicatum . . . caepe. Barth in his note implies that these skins were used like papyrus for lampwicks (for which see Gronovius, Script. Eccl. V). Nec ova tantum means “not even eggs, even.” Following Postgate’s reading (quantum?) I suggest (tantum!). —In 31, leves alicae is changed by recent editors to lenes after Heinsius, but the change seems unnecessary, as both lenes and leves are frequently used in antithesis to asper. Celsus ii 8, quod excernitur . . . etiam leve; Scrib. Larg. 201, quae teri debeant dum levia habuerint, etc. Lenes alicae means meal ground fine.—In 39 the construction is vel defruta lutosā dulci caeno: the must was boiled down



to one-third of its volume (Marquardt, PL. 459). Vel is often postponed; cf. v 1, 61.—In 40, olentis is well defended by Prudentius, Cath. v 22, guttatim lacrimis olentibus; Markland was not convinced by this citation of Gronovius.—In 41, cutellum of M points to cultellum; cf. ii 1, 204, multas for mutas; a pen-knife would be as appropriate a gift as the culter mentioned by Martial, xiv 31.

*Transmitted November 20, 1919.*

THE SUPPOSED AUTOGRAPH OF  
JOHN THE SCOT

BY

EDWARD KENNARD RAND

In the fifth part of Ludwig Traube's *Palaeographische Forschungen*, (which I had the honor of publishing after that great scholar's death)<sup>1</sup> evidence was presented for Traube's apparently certain discovery of the very handwriting of John the Scot. In manuscripts of Reims, of Laon, and of Bamberg, he had observed certain marginal notes which were neither omitted sections nor glosses, but rather the author's own amplifications and embellishments of his work. Johannes had made such additions to his *De Divisione Naturae* in the Reims manuscript, and they all appear in that of Bamberg. In the latter manuscript there are fresh additions—or enlargements as I shall call them in the present paper—which have similarly been absorbed into the text in two manuscripts now in Paris. We thus have, in an interesting series, the author's successive recensions of his work. One of the shorter forms is the basis of the text published by Thomas Gale in 1681; the most complete form was edited by H. J. Floss in 1852 from the Paris manuscripts.<sup>2</sup> Though not venturing to carry out Traube's elaborate plans for treatment of the subject, I attempted to corroborate his belief that the notes were in the hand of Johannes. The evidence seemed conclusive to me at the time, and was not

<sup>1</sup> In *Abh. d. k. b. Akad. d. Wiss., philos.-philol. u. hist. Classe, München*, XXVI (1912).

<sup>2</sup> In Migne, *Patrologia Latina*, vol. 122 (1865).

questioned, so far as I know, in any subsequent publication. In the summers of 1912 and 1913, however, I examined the manuscripts of John the Scot in Paris, in Reims, in Laon, and in Bamberg, and became convinced, most reluctantly, that his autograph is yet to be found. I here present the chain of facts that make this conclusion inevitable.<sup>3</sup>

Let us start with the hypothesis that the marginal notes discovered by Traube are in the hand of Johannes himself and let us support this hypothesis until it becomes too heavy to bear. Our first document is the Reims Manuscript 875 (=R) of the *De Divisione Naturae*. This is the work of some six or seven writers, whose hands are sometimes hard to tell apart. Though it is the briefest and hence the earliest form of the text that I have found, it is not the original draft of the work. The scribes could not have taken it from the author's dictation, for they commit errors of various sorts that presuppose the existence of a text that they were copying.<sup>4</sup> This text, which is as near to the original as our present information permits us to come, I will call O.

Besides making corrections and additions in their copy of O, the scribes also insert marginal notes that have all the characteristics of the author's own amplifications of his work. This fact does not militate against our present hypothesis, if we assume that Johannes added these marginalia, or caused them to be added, in O, and that the scribes of R, at first forgetting to include them in the text of their new copy, later wrote them in the margin.<sup>5</sup> In some cases, as we might expect, a different ink is used. The insular hand (=I), which we are assuming to be that of Johannes,

<sup>3</sup> I have confined my illustrations almost entirely to passages exhibited in the plates. I have notes of many other examples quite as pertinent, but do not include them here, believing that those presented amply prove my point.

<sup>4</sup> For an example, see Plate I (fol. 273). In the last regular line of the page, after writing *caelestis essentiae particeps est*, the scribe first omitted the words *de die—caelestis essentiae particeps est* (an exceedingly easy haplography) and then added them, with signs of reference, in the margin immediately below. As the error is one of sight and not of hearing, he must have had a text before him.

<sup>5</sup> Plate II (fol. 231<sup>v</sup>) contains a striking instance. After the citation of St. Basil, the author bethinks him of another possible interpretation of his words (*An aliud ex uerbis ipsius—intelligendum*) and sets it forth in the enlargement. It is not probable, I believe, that the author dictated this forthwith to the scribe. As the existence of O has been proved, it is more natural to assume that the enlargement had already been inserted there.



corrects minor errors in these enlargements now and then.<sup>6</sup> This fact is entirely in accord with our hypothesis.

A number of enlargements omitted by the writers of the text were supplied not by them but by special correctors, who were assigned, it would seem, considerable portions of the manuscript to revise. Particularly important among these wide-ranging correctors are two hands that I will call  $r^1$  and  $r^2$ . The former is a largish hand with some slight traces of Insular habits.<sup>7</sup>  $r^2$  is very similar, and indeed may be merely a smaller variety of  $r^1$ . In the specimen that I have reproduced, as is true of both  $r^1$  and  $r^2$  elsewhere, correction by  $I$  may be observed.<sup>8</sup> In all, I detected, or thought I detected, five or six correcting hands, which sometimes supplement stretches of text written by others, sometimes supplement their own text, and, in all the cases under discussion, add notes of the author which were evidently in the margin of  $O$ . It is sometimes hard to be sure whether  $r$  is the text-hand or not. The point is not vitally important. The main fact is that several different kinds of correcting hand make, either in their own texts or in those of others, the kind of additions or enlargements with which we are specially concerned. However, as we have seen, we can still retain our hypothesis by supposing that  $I$  is the hand of Johannes, while  $r$  represents various correctors who copied from  $O$  enlargements added there by Johannes or at his direction.

But we have now to note an intimate connection between  $I$  and  $r$ . They collaborate on the same notes. Plate V (fol. 285<sup>v</sup>) shows us an enlargement that begins in the hand ( $=r^3$ ) that writes the text. It extends through *substantiam* (l.3), then is succeeded by  $I$  (*ex his—horum est*), then returns (*Ibi—superans*), and finally gives way to  $I$  once more (*dum—esse*). The interesting possibility

<sup>6</sup> E.g., fol. 59 (I have no photograph). The added *quodam* in l.10 of fol. 231 (Plate II) is not by  $I$ . See below, note 10. *Ut arbitror* in the right margin seems exactly the thing that an author tucks in when revising and qualifying his work. But see below p. 138.

<sup>7</sup> Plate III contains a specimen (fol. 64). At first this hand looks like that of the text, but it is really different. The corrections are, I believe, by  $r^1$  himself. They had been made in  $O$ , I infer, but at first were not observed by  $r^1$ . The heading *De agere et pati* is by a hand of the thirteenth century or later ( $=h$ ).

<sup>8</sup> See Plate IV (fol. 15). As in the previous specimen, this hand is similar to that of the text, but not identical with it. The hand  $h$  adds three headings.

at once suggests itself that Johannes could write two kinds of script—that of his native country, and that practised at Reims. Just so, many Germans today use both their national cursive, and a modified form of the Roman style. This supposition, however, is shattered by the further discovery that *I* is completed by different forms of *r*. In the case just cited, we see the interplay of *I* and *r*<sup>3</sup>. On another page, fol. 49 (Plate VI), *I* writes thirteen lines of an enlargement in the right margin (through *seu finis*), and then is relieved by *r*<sup>1</sup> (*similiter—incorporea est*). Similarly, *I* is succeeded by *r*<sup>2</sup> (fol. 56, Plate VII), unless, once more, this is merely *r*<sup>1</sup> writing small. In these two cases, the purpose of the change of hand is plain. The note, though begun by *I*, is too long to be finished in that script; the smaller continental variety is therefore employed. Now if *I* (Johannes, by our present supposition,) saw this fact when part way through, and if he could write the hand *r*<sup>3</sup> as well as the Insular style, why did he not finish the note in *r*<sup>3</sup>? As he could hardly have commanded *two* varieties of continental, the script of *r*<sup>1</sup> (*r*<sup>2</sup>) is not his own. And since *r*<sup>3</sup> would have answered the purpose just as well, we must further conclude that this, too, is not his; otherwise he would have used it. Furthermore, as we have seen,<sup>9</sup> *I* corrects enlargements added by *r*. If Johannes could write in the continental style, why did he not make his corrections in that script? It follows that none of the continental varieties is his, but that they are the hands of collaborating scribes. *I* calls in *r*<sup>1</sup> (*r*<sup>2</sup>) when he sees that space is running short. In the alternation of *I* and *r*<sup>3</sup>, no motive is discernible beyond mere caprice. Did Johannes play with some scribe in this fashion?

Our initial hypothesis must now be confronted with a rival supposition, namely, that *I* is not the hand of Johannes, but that of one of his scribes—an important corrector, to be sure—who works in close conjunction with the other writers and correctors. This new hypothesis accounts for all the facts that we have considered, and more easily disposes of the difficulties. *I*, like the different continental scribes, is engaged in writing in *R* corrections

<sup>9</sup> See above, note 6

and enlargements taken from *O*. Possibly two or more stages are represented by *O*, *r* starting with an earlier, and *I* supplementing from a more complete form—but into that *terra incognita* of fresh hypothesis we need not enter. *I*'s procedure, at any rate, seems exactly like that of *r*. Thus his practice of calling in a variety of *r* to complete a note too large for the space is paralleled by *r*<sup>4</sup>, the writer of the text on fol. 231<sup>v</sup> (Plate II), who uses up a legitimate amount of his margin and then has *r*<sup>5</sup> finish it, with signs of references, on the following page. The latter scribe uses a finer hand, and has no difficulty in completing the note with a decent margin to spare.<sup>10</sup>

Surely in the scribal play illustrated in Plate V, *I* is acting more like a fellow-worker than the author of the work. Likewise on another page, we note corrections and minor enlargements by the text-hand, then similar changes by *I*, and, finally, corrections of *I* by the text-hand.<sup>11</sup> If Johannes wished to change *cogitationes* to *operationes*, it is strange that he did not do it himself rather than beckon to some scribe to insert the word; another correction, *nisi*, added above the line, is made in the hand of *I*. In short, *r* and *I* are two different scribes collaborating on what would appear to be a rather difficult original or set of originals.

Moreover, if *I* is Johannes, he does not understand his own text. In *De Divisione Naturae* i. 49 (Migne *P.L.* cxxii, 491 A) we read:

Omnium hominum una eademque *οὐσία* est. Omnes enim unam participant essentiam, ac per hoc, quia omnibus communis est, nullius proprie est. Corpus autem commune omnium hominum non est. Nam unusquisque suum proprium possidet corpus, non et *οὐσίαν*. Igitur communis est, et corpus commune non est.

This passage forms part of one of the enlargements of *I*. In it he writes *omnis* for *omnes*, and *Non et οὐσίαι igitur communis est* for *non et οὐσίαν*. *Igitur communis est*. These are understandable errors for any scribe, but not for the author of the work, to make. Others occur elsewhere in the Insular hand; I have not recorded many, but I made no systematic search.

<sup>10</sup> Fol. 232 (Plate VIII). *r*<sup>5</sup> then collated the work of *r*<sup>4</sup> with *O*, adding *quodam* in l.10, and perhaps correcting *consequentius* to *consequentias* in l.12.

<sup>11</sup> Fol. 58<sup>v</sup> (Plate IX).



We now come to the most startling consideration of all, namely, that *there are two varieties of insular script in the book*. The first variety, which I will now call  $i^1$ , is exhibited in all the plates thus far presented. It is loose, pointed, flowing, with few abbreviations or ligatures specially characteristic of Irish script. With only one or two exceptions, it uses a  $d$  with a curved shaft. The other variety ( $i^2$ ), as Plate X (fol. 106) shows, is at once more compact and regular, and more cursive, with more of the specifically Irish traits; it has a straight-shafted  $d$ . Furthermore, the two hands appear in different portions of the manuscript.  $i^1$  is confined to foll. 1–80<sup>v</sup> (= quires I–X) and foll. 113–318<sup>v</sup> (= quires XV–XLI), while  $i^2$  appears only in foll. 81–112<sup>v</sup> (= quires XI–XIV) and foll. 319–358 (= quires XLII–XLVI. In the sections corrected by  $i^2$ , we note the same features as in the other parts.  $i^2$  inserts many long enlargements and makes many minor corrections. He is supplemented in one of his own enlargements by  $r^2$ .<sup>12</sup> On another page, he is corrected by  $r^2$ , or possibly the text-hand.<sup>13</sup>

Our last resort, if we are still to look for the autograph of John the Scot in the various hands of Reims, is to suppose that, if not  $i^1$ , it is  $i^2$ . This is indeed the hand that Traube believed was the author's; it happened that almost all of the photographs taken for Traube contain enlargements by  $i^2$  and not by  $i^1$ . Yet if  $i^2$  is Johannes, why does that hand never correct the sections assigned to  $i^1$ ? Of the two,  $i^1$  seems more free, more individual, more like an author's, unless that author be also a calligraphist. But if we imagine that  $i^1$  is Johannes, why does he never appear in the sections assigned to  $i^2$ ?

Our chain of evidence draws us to the conclusion that neither  $i^1$  nor  $i^2$  is Johannes, but that both are scribes employed by him, together with others, to correct and enlarge the manuscripts of his works. The two Insular writers were very possibly the most important of his workmen, for he entrusted most of the revision to them. Their task was done in intimate coöperation with the other scribes. They would call them in to finish their notes if considerations of space demanded, or, now and then, merely to

<sup>12</sup> See fol. 81, Plate XI (= Plate I in *Pal. Forsch.*).

<sup>13</sup> Fol. 106 (Plate X).

indulge in a pastime of alternate writing. Perhaps it was the difficulty of deciphering the original that induced a scribe to appeal more frequently than usual for help from a fellow-craftsman. I have confined my discussion to the manuscript 875 of Reims, but the two Insular hands appear also in the manuscripts of Bamberg and of Laon.<sup>14</sup>

After all is said and done, the great value of Traube's discovery remains. It is positive that the enlargements in the manuscripts were made at the direction of the author himself. They present to the modern editor of the *De Divisione Naturae* the fascinating task of distinguishing the different revisions, and of following the growth of the subject in Johannes' mind. The best way, I believe, would be to print on the left-hand page the enlarged form of the text, for that is the form in which the author wished his work to be known to posterity. On the right-hand page, the briefest form, the nearest approach to his original draft, might be given, with indication, in the critical apparatus, of the successive stages by which the final text was reached. Possibly further research may reveal *O*, or even the hand of Johannes himself. For the present, we at least have accessible—if the contents of the libraries of Reims and of Laon are accessible—the material for preparing a highly accurate and well-nigh unique edition of one of the masterpieces of medieval philosophy.

---

<sup>14</sup> For  $\dot{z}^2$  in the Bamberg MS, see *Pal. Forsch.*, Plates III-VIII. For  $\dot{z}^1$  in the Laon MS, see *Pal. Forsch.*, Plate X.

## PLATES

Plate	I.	Fol. 273.
Plate	II.	Fol. 231v.
Plate	III.	Fol. 64.
Plate	IV.	Fol. 15.
Plate	V.	Fol. 285v.
Plate	VI.	Fol. 49.
Plate	VII.	Fol. 56.
Plate	VIII.	Fol. 232.
Plate	IX.	Fol. 58v.
Plate	X.	Fol. 106.
Plate	XI.	Fol. 81 (= <i>Pal. Forsch.</i> , Plate I).













¶ Consideramus quod si simpliciter conueniuntur corpora  
quodlibet arg. corruptibile in se coarsum p[er]tinet cui omni in cognoscitur

hanc molestem globi ex quatuor simplicibus obijciuntur composita  
quod quidam inuolubilis salubilisq; dum sit exanti obijciuntur ex quibus conueniuntur

¶ Illud modo ambigendum est hoc in me ipso per primo p[er] quod dicitur

¶ Dicitur hanc quod conueniuntur conueniuntur in fallor agendum uidetur

repetendi n[on] de puritate delicti quod dicitur de corpore quatuor p[er] simpliciter

puritatis necessitas ex quibus dicitur simus. ¶ Nil. nunc amplius

ut de corpore dicitur quatuor sufficiens quod dicitur dicitur n[on] si desing

ut omnia quod tunc conueniuntur dicitur quod dicitur autem aut

nulla sine de puritate habebit. ¶ Considera hanc n[on] dico

passio q; proprie de deo p[er] dicantur an sit autem catholica ac

p[er]metta foran dicitur autem dicitur. ¶ Iamta foran sane

quidem nunquid arbitrandu e[st] hanc dicitur aliam regulam exalor

ca inuolubilis uirtutis uideatur. ¶ Dic quod quidabi

uidet mouere et moueri n[on] ne agere decepti. ¶ Aliter e[st]

uidet. ¶ Similit[er] ut cepit dicitur et amari. ¶ Eadem regula

colligitur hanc em uerba sunt similia dicitur a deo passio u[er]ba n[on]

ferre in omni b.

compositus

compositus

speculatus

speculatus

speculatus

speculatus

speculatus

speculatus

speculatus

speculatus

speculatus































sub carnalium organificationem. Dicitur enim hoc corpus uellus.

[illegible]

but nec ipsi cogitant suadentur animalibus, quid sumus quid

non ē quidā cōsoni; nō sumus subscortā mīa q̄ uiculi cōq̄ in mē

[illegible]

ut quatuor mundi <sup>hinc</sup> dimittat corpora quæ non possunt esse in mortalibus

ma cor pora similit per pmanens et in p dante <sup>in p dante</sup> unore pmanet de p p  
igne caliditate. Quia n dant et mutantur in unore quia diuq memores ad

apost. ad e. e. g. n. d. u. p. m. i. n. c. o. r. p. u. s. e. a. n. t. i. m. a. e. a. g. u. s. d. u. p. m. i. n. c. o. r. p. u. s. e. a. n. t. i. m. a. e. a. g. u. s.

*q. maly ad id est uerissimū ē videt quā dīpūm īm pōtēstātē uel qd*

causam dei animalis in corpore et in intellectu  
sine sensu. oportet quod sit in intellectu ubi b. d. a. quod  
maxime considerandum est quod anima est in corpore et in intellectu

卷之四









[illegible]





## LUCRETIVS AND CICCRO'S VERSE

BY

WILLIAM A. MERRILL

It has long been accepted as a fact that Lucretius studied Cicero's *Aratea* closely (cf. Munro on Lucr. v 619: "It is evident Lucr. had studied this translation of Cicero: other parts of which are imitated in other parts of this poem"; and Tracy Peck in *Cicero's Hexameters*, published in the *Transactions* of the American Philological Association, vol. 28, p. 71: "That Lucretius studied the *Aratea* as one of his models is the valuable testimony of a great poet to its worth,"). And yet Peck says (p. 61) that the *Aratea* were the "school exercises of a precocious boy," and the theory of indebtedness demands that one of the greatest of Roman poets in the maturity of his powers was indebted to the puerile compositions of a mere versifier. I have attempted to collect all of the cases of possible correspondence between Lucretius on the one hand, and Cicero, Ennius, Lucilius, and the few extant fragments of hexameter verse written before Lucretius' time on the other, in order to discover whether or not there is any necessary connection between them. It is apparent immediately that there is a similarity due to the rhythm of the hexameter, to the use of alliteration, and to the collocation of certain words; and that the most striking cases of correspondence are in the astronomical parts of the Lucretian poem. It is highly probable that Lucretius knew the work of Aratus at first hand in the Greek, and that in his treatment of astronomical subjects he naturally used certain forms of expression in Latin that had been used by Cicero. These phrases and cadences appear again

in the later astronomical writers, and Roesch, in his dissertation entitled *Manilius und Lucrez*, has given lists from Manilius, Germanicus, and Avienus (pp. 16-31). It is not probable that the youthful Cicero all alone modified the heavy hexameter of Ennius and Lucilius; it is a more rational view to suppose that the teaching grammarians in the schools brought about a gradual change, and that a slow improvement in technique and vocabulary would be apparent to us if the lost work of the period after Ennius had survived. Alliteration had been common enough before Cicero's time, and the use of certain words and phrases was probably a mere coincidence. But when comparison is made between certain turns of expression found in the two authors there are marked differences. Cicero has *ad auras* twice, Lucretius *per auras* several times. Cicero has *aura* six times in various cases; Lucretius has it frequently, but with no parallel use. Cicero has nowhere *caeli templa* nor *caerula caeli* nor *supera caput* nor *cernere quimus* nor *certo tempore*. Cicero and Lucretius write *cognoscere possis*, but Lucretius alone, *licet cognoscere*. Cicero has *inter* 8 times and Lucretius 122, but with no correspondence. Similarly Cicero has *laetus* 4 times and Lucretius 21. Cicero in *Phaen.* 29 writes *Hae septem vulgo perhibentur more vetusto*, but Lucretius, ii 610, *Hanc variae gentes antiquo more sacrorum Idaeam vocitant matrem*. Cicero has *nox* 17 times, Lucretius 28, but with no correspondence. Cicero has *nubes* 5 times, Lucretius 68; Cicero *vero* 10 times, Lucretius 18. Lucretius is fond of *ratione*, which Cicero uses very sparingly. *Spatium*, Cicero has 15 times, Lucretius 51, with no correspondence, nor do they agree in the use of *stella*. It cannot be denied that there are many instances of similarity, yet, if close examination be directed to them, most of them will prove to be mere coincidences. Thus *quod superest, et simul, nocte serena, lumina caeli, flamina venti, pectore fundet, diximus ante, luce refulgens, fortis equus, esse necesse est, nocturno tempore*, and many more, might have been written in prose.

The fact of the case is, I am convinced, that the rhythm of the hexameter had been established in the schools, and certain



cadences had become traditional, largely in the use of a dactylic word in the fifth foot, and these appear in Lucretius, Virgil, Ovid, and the hexameter poets generally. That Lucretius studied and imitated the youthful Cicero's poetry is fundamentally improbable. The Ciceronian verses are a precious monument of the condition of the hexameter in the period after Lucilius and before Lucretius, but additional evidence is necessary to prove that Lucretius regarded Cicero as his master and model.

I subjoin a list of parallels and coincidences.

LUCRETIUS I	CICERO*
6 Te dea te fugiunt venti te nubila caeli	230 Sic malunt errare vagae per nubila caeli
i 378 quae denique nubila caeli	405 invisant lumina caeli
v 666 subtexunt nubila caelum	P vii boves spectantes lumina caeli
vi 214 quoque nubila caeli	
10 Nam simul	350 Nam simul
iii 14 Nam simul	
35 tereti cervice reposta	ix tereti cervice reflexum Enn. A 472 a cervice revulsum Enn. I 23 repostus
39 suavis ex ore loquellas Funde	P iv fundens e gutture cantus P v inanis fundere voces P vi iacit ore querellas
50 Quod superest and ii 39 491	177 Quod superest
iii 350 903 iv 203 595 768	
1283 v 64 91 206 261 772	
1241 vi 219 423 906 1000	
64 a caeli regionibus ostendebat	193 caeli regione locatam 472 caeli in regione locavit
68 minitanti Murmure	71 minitanti murmure fluctus
94 donarat nomine regem	212 donavit nomine Graium
95 ad aras	213 ad Aram
v 1199 accedere ad aras	
99 mactatu maesta parentis	xxxii aspectum maesta parentis

\* The simple Arabic figures refer to the lines of the *Phaenomena*; the simple Roman references are to the short fragments of the same. The Roman references with P prefixed are to the *Prognostica*. Mar. means the *Marius*. Cons. refers to the principal fragment of Book II of the *Consulatus*; Cons. II and III refer to the second and third fragments of the same. There are no references to Cicero's verse written subsequent to Lucretius' death. The text is that of Baehrens for the *Aratea* and of Baiter for the rest. The text of Ennius is that of Vahlen<sup>2</sup>, of Lucilius, that of Marx.

## LUCRETII I

- 114 Et simul and i 924 iv 780 1276  
v 1181 1213 1242 vi 313  
411 886 1166
- 135 quorum tellus amplectitur ossa  
Cf. iv 734
- 142 noctes vigilare serenas
- 144 clara tuae possim praepandere  
lumina menti  
v 657 et lumina pandit
- 154 divino numine and vi 91  
iv 1233 divina . . . numina  
v 122 divino a numine
- 179 effert in luminis oras  
ii 654 effert in lumina solis
- 190 ut noscere possis and iii 418  
588 iv 811  
noscere possit iii 158  
cognoscere possis ii 462 iii 117  
iv 642 749 v 285 vi 113  
possent cognoscere iv 1214  
pernoscere possis iii 181  
possis cognoscere i 403
- 200 Non potuit
- 212 Terraeque solum subigentes  
cimus ad ortus v 211  
v 698 emergere ad ortus
- 235 E quibus and ii 759 iii 1055  
v 237 531
- 287 validis cum viribus amnis
- 290 venti quoque flamina ferri
- 366 At contra and 570 1087 ii 235  
392 400 404 424 713 iii 25  
191 198 201 iv 95 625 659  
843 vi 976
- 388 tempore totum
- 400 Multaque and ii 109 704 978  
1105 iii 358 iv 310 777 863  
v 837 855 860 931 943 968  
vi 350 540 588 797 863 903  
1215 1267 1282
- 402 vestigia parva
- 413 de pectore fundet

## CICERO

- 300 Et simul  
Enn. A 91 128 352
- 116 quorum stirpis tellus amplexa  
prehendit
- 104 nocte serena  
Enn. A 396 in nocte serena
- xxii lumina pandit  
452 lumine pandit  
380 pandens industria lumina  
305 divino numine  
Mar. divini numinis
- 114 in lumina caeli Extulit  
350 se lumine Extulit  
190 quae noscere possent  
347 omnes cognoscere possis  
1 possis cognoscere  
106 cognoscere signa potesse
- 166 Non potuit  
Mar. convertit ad ortus  
Enn. A 455 sola terrarum
- 1 E quibus and 240 429  
Cons. 75
- 146 magnis cum viribus amnem  
100 inter flamina venti  
198 flamina ventus  
Lucil. 870 ventorum flamina
- 475 at contra
- 69 tempore toto  
Cons. 16 Multaque and 28
- 451 vestigia parva  
Cons. 29 Pectore fundebant

## LUCRETIVS I

- 432 Quod quasi  
 632 Non possunt and 905 ii 485  
 663 Aestifer ignis  
 794 quae . . . diximus ante and iv  
     643  
     846 quos diximus ante  
     907 quod diximus ante and iv  
         383 742 1037  
     iv 73 ut diximus ante and 882  
 818 Cum quibus and ii 761 1008  
     1014  
 833 Sed tamen and ii 541 907 iii  
     261 553 735 iv 689 1171  
     v 104  
 879 Et magis . . . in fronte locata  
     Et magis iii 396 v 629 1171  
     1344 vi 773  
     fronte locata iv 71 97  
     fronte parata iv 204  
 1016 Exiguum . . . horai . . . tempus  
     iii 399 Temporis exiguum par-  
     tem  
 1053 In medium and v 1389 1455  
     in medium v 1160  
 1061 simili ratione and ii 299 377  
     857 1073 1084 iii 572 iv 163  
     751 754 v 910

## LUCRETIVS II

- 1 turbantibus aequora ventis  
  
 12 Noctes atque dies and iii 62  
  
 25 retinentia dextris  
  
 97 varioque . . . motu  
 144 lumine terras  
     iv 377 lumine terra  
 148 Convestire . . . luce  
  
 210 <caeli> de vertice  
 216 cognoscere avemus  
 273 Viribus . . . magnis  
     v 819 magnis viribus  
     vi 559 magnis . . . viribus

## CICERO

- xvi Quod quasi  
 228 Non possunt and Lucilius 436  
 111 Aestiferos . . . ignes  
 120 quos diximus ante  
     Lucil. 51 ut diximus ante;  
     1024 de quo diximus ante;  
     344 quod dixi ante and 346  
     15 ut diximus  
     27 quod diximus olim  
 447 Cum quibus  
  
 69 Sed tamen  
     Lucil. 987 Sed tamen  
  
 13 Et magis and 80  
 93 in fronte locatas  
  
 185 Exiguo . . . tempore  
 Cons. 62 temporis hora  
  
 Limon. In medium  
  
 227 simili ratione

## CICERO

- 90 perturbans aequora  
     Enn. Sc. 367 aequora . . . in-  
     gentibus ventis  
 iii noctesque diesque  
     Enn. A 334 noctesque diesque  
 369 dextra retinens  
 458 dextra . . . iactans  
 231 vario motu  
 473 lumine terras  
  
 332 convestit lumine  
     60 vestivit lumine and 473  
 297 caeli de vertice  
 341 aves . . . cognoscere  
 146 magnis eum viribus



## LUCRETII II

- 299 Et post  
 321 Omnia quae . . . confusa videntur  
     Omnia quae ii 1033 iv 449 608  
         v 465 1377 vi 612 760  
     Omnis quae iv 512  
     confusa videntur v 580  
 336 simili . . . forma and ii 414 iv  
     542  
     simili forma iv 167  
 358 convisens . . . loca  
     v 779 convisunt . . . loca  
 367 tremulis cum vocibus  
  
 379 certam formam  
 447 In quo and iii 95 iv 185  
  
 459 At non and v 999  
  
 474 Vmor dulcis  
     vi 890 dulcis aquai  
 555 fluitantia aplustra  
  
 588 In sese  
 600 docti cecinere poetae  
     v 405 veteres Graium cecinere  
     poetae  
 629 nomine Graii and vi 908  
  
 662 sub tegmine caeli  
     i 988 sub caeli tegmine and  
     v 1016  
 672 igni flammata cremantur  
 674 Vnde ignem iacere  
     vi 389 iaciunt ignem  
  
 705 flammam taetro spirantis ore  
  
 741 Nam cum and iii 374 854 v 345  
     1204 vi 9 215  
 767 in canos candenti marmore  
     fluctus

## CICERO

- 40 Et post and 389  
 371 Omnia quae . . . confusa  
     videntur  
  
 99 fusa videtur  
  
 6 simili . . . forma  
  
 352 loca convisit  
 189 invisens loca  
 P iv tremulo . . . e gutture voces  
     (aliter cantus)  
 159 formam . . . certam  
 264 In quo  
     Lucil. 1236 In quo  
     8 At non and 31  
     Lucil. 868 At non  
 P v aquai dulcis alumnae  
  
 xxv fluitantia . . . aplustra  
     Enn. A 602 aplustria  
 255 In sese  
     33 veteres statuere poetae  
  
 xiii nomine Graii  
 212 nomine Graium  
 222 Graio . . . nomine fertur  
     47 sub tegmine caeli  
  
 Cons. 1 flammatus Iuppiter igni  
 xxvii exigium iaciunt mortalibus  
     ignem  
 331 iactantes . . . ignem  
 Cons. 38 iniecit . . . ignes  
 110 toto spirans de copore flammam  
     mam  
     Enn. Sc. 184 flammam hali-  
     tantes  
 192 Nam cum  
     Enn. Sc. 200 Nam cum  
 71 canos minitante murmure  
     fluctus  
     Enn. A 478 per aequora cana

## LUCRETIIUS II

- 800 luce refulget  
 806 larga cum luce  
 865 Nunc ea and iii 258 iv 143 239  
     292 vi 239  
 1039 Suspiciere in caeli . . . templa  
 1060 temere incassum frustra and  
     v 1002  
 1098 Ignibus aetheriis  
 1099 tempore praesto  
 1114 corpore terra

## LUCRETIIUS III

- 4 pedum . . . vestigia  
     iii 389 pedum vestigia 309  
     vestigia prima 320 vestigia  
     linqui  
 8 fortis equi vis and 764  
     ii 264 equorum Vim  
     iv 987 equos fortis  
     v 397 vis . . . equorum  
 15 divina mente coortam  
  
 85 Nam iam  
 99 in parte locatum  
  
 102 dicitur esse  
  
 109 corpore toto and iii 138 276  
     281 329 351 564 608 799  
     iv 887 1021 1042 1104 1111  
     v 273 vi 1008  
     toto corpore iii 227 and 213  
     toto . . . corpore iii 636 and  
     218 iv 1054  
 124 non aequas . . . partis  
     iv 1231 parte aequa  
     v 684 in partes non aequas  
     dividit orbem  
 140 situm media regione in  
     v 534 in media mundi regione  
     vi 723 media ab regione

## CICERO

- 108 luce refulgens and 154  
 410 candore refulget  
 394 larga cum luce  
 Cons. 33 Nunc ea  
  
 104 suspiciens in caelum  
 32 frustra temere  
  
 Cons. 1 aetherio . . . igni  
 74 tempore praesto est  
 433 corpore terram  
 438 corpore terras

## CICERO

- Cons. 46 pedum vestigia  
 451 vestigia parva  
  
 54 Fortis equi  
 57 equi vis  
 Enn. A 374 fortis equus  
  
 Cons. 3 Menteque divina  
 Cons. 10 divina mente notata  
 74 Nam iam  
 27 ex parte locatas  
 145 in parte locatum  
 151 a parte locata  
 186 parte locata  
 188 in parte locavit  
 iv Dicitur esse  
 vi dicitur esse and xvi  
 289 corpore totus (*aliter* toto)  
 408 corpore toto  
 81 toto . . . corpore and 462 110  
 391 iam toto . . . corpore  
  
 359 non aequa parte secatur  
  
 193 sub media caeli regione lo-  
     catam  
 Enn. A 505 media regione  
 481 mediis regionibus

## LUCRETIIUS III

- 143 Cetera pars  
 147 Cum neque  
 172 At tamen insequitur  
     vi 285 Quem gravis insequitur  
 175 esse necessest and iii 216 iv 674  
 201 cum pondere magno  
     iv 905 pondere magno  
     v 556 magno pondere and 975  
     vi 549  
 218 toto iam corpore cessit  
     iii 223 de corpore cessit  
 242 omnino nominis expers  
     iii 279 nominis . . . expers  
 289 ex oculis micat . . . ardor  
     v 1099 emicat . . . ardor  
 296 vis . . . leonum  
 304 caecae caliginis  
     iv 456 caligine caeca  
 316 Quorum ego nunc nequeo  
 389 vestigia . . . ponunt  
 413 At si and iv 447 557  
 433 Nam procul  
 460 durumque dolorem  
 488 fulminis ictu Concidit and  
     v 400 fulminis ictu  
     vi 316 fulgoris ad ictum  
     vi 386 fulminis ictus  
     vi 406 fulminis ictum  
 529 Inde pedes  
 610 in . . . regione locatam  
     iv 102 in . . . regione locatum  
 660 Omnia iam and v 278 vi 10  
 822 quia quae  
 825 saepe futuris  
 829 mergitur undas  
 849 Atque iterum . . . lumina vitae  
 882 proiecto corpore . . . et illum  
 978 Atque ea . . . quaecumque  
     iv 298 Atque ea  
 1006 Cum redeunt  
 1011 iam vero

## CICERO

- 95 Cetera pars  
 246 Cum neque  
 355 Quam tamen insequitur  
 312 esse necessest  
 132 magno cum pondere  
 356 corpore cedit  
 462 toto cum corpore cedit  
 391 toto processit corpore  
 170 expertes nominis omnes  
 Cons. 12 ardore micantis  
 Cons. 112 micans . . . ardor  
     Enn. A 473 micant oculi  
 370 vis . . . leonis  
 345 caeca caligine and P i  
 478 caligine caeca  
 234 Quarum ego nunc nequeo  
 xv vestigia ponit  
 245 At si  
 186 Nam procul  
 Mar. duos . . . dolores  
     Enn. A 345 duri . . . laboris  
 Cons. 45 fulminis ictu Concidit  
 388 Inde pedes  
 193 sub . . . regione locatam  
 472 in regione locavit  
 Cons. 10 Omnia iam  
 449 omnis iam  
 228 quia quae  
 P iii saepe futuros  
 381 mergitur unda  
 287 atque iterum sol lumina verno  
 330 proiecto corpore  
 275 et illum  
 Cons. 30 Atque ea quae  
 233 Cum redeunt  
 359 iam vero  
 P viii Iam vero and Cons. 26



## LUCRETIUS IV

- 133 in alto and iv 268 v 465 584  
 150 At eum and vi 804  
 171 caeli complesse cavernas and  
     vi 252  
 202 totum caeli spatium  
 208 lumina caelum  
     v 976 lumina caelo  
 244 Et quantum  
     iv 81 Et quanto  
 301 vis magna and vi 530 815  
 368 lumine cassus  
     v 719 cassum lumine and  
     757 cassum . . . lumine  
 391 aetheriis adfixa cavernis  
 394 corpore claro  
 404 tremulis iubar ignibus erigere  
     alte  
 444 Tempore nocturno . . . signa  
     videntur  
     iv 793 Nocturno . . . tempore  
     iv 1008 nocturno tempore and  
     v 970 vi 649  
 564 ab ore  
 577 reddere vocis  
 628 Cum vero  
 823 Lumina . . oculorum and vi  
     1181  
     iv 836 oculorum lumina  
     iv 1143 oculorum lumine  
     vi 184 oculorum ad lumina  
 904 Atque gubernaculum  
 963 multum . . . morati  
 1043 In loca  
 1087 corpore flammam and v 906  
 1100 In medioque  
     v 451 In medio and v 486 vi  
     1006  
     vi 801 in medio

## CICERO

- 375 in alto  
 393 At eum  
 252 caeli lustrare cavernas  
     Enn. A 545 complere cohum  
     . . . caeli  
 262 totum spatium  
 407 caelum totum  
 113 lumina caeli and 405 P vii  
 390 caeli lumina  
 313 Et quantos  
 324 vis magna and 372  
     Lucil. 770 magnam . . . vim  
 369 cassum lumine  
 Cons. 5 Aetheriis . . . inclusa  
     cavernis  
 365 claro cum corpore  
 386 claro corpore  
 403 erigit alte  
 xxiii tremulam . . . flammam  
 271 Tempore nocturno  
 342 signorum nocturno tempore  
 349 nocturno tempore  
 223 nocturno tempore signa  
 245 nocturno convisens tempore  
 Cons. 26 nocturno tempore visae  
 112 ab ore  
     Lucil. 456 in ore  
 P iii reddere voces  
 418 Cum vero  
 479 oculorum . . . lumina  
     Lucil. 1094 oculorum aciem  
 157 Atque gubernaculum  
 Cons. 60 multumque morata  
 466 In loca  
 xxiii corpore flammam and 110  
 219 In medioque

## LUCRETIVS IV

1135 Aut cum

1180 Quem si

1222 stirpe profecta

## LUCRETIVS V

1 pectore carmen

33 corpore serpens and vi 660

75 simulacraque divom

79 Libera sponte sua cursus

lustrare perennis

261 Quod superest . . . flumina  
fontes

284 Nam primum

288 inferior pars

298 ignibus instant Instant

319 Continet amplexu terram

387 gurgite ponti

432 solis rota

v 564 solis . . . rota

437 inde loci and v 791

v 741 Inde loci

450 Propterea quod and vi 829

459 Ignifer . . . ignis

v 498 aether ignifer

505 Ipse suos

509 Motibus astrorum and v 530

510 caeli . . . orbis

575 lumine lustrans and 693

v 1437 lustrantes lumine

582 claram speciem

612 fulgore notatus

616 Brumalis adeat flexus

640 Brumalis usque ad flexus

635 ad signum quodque reverti

636 signa revisunt

644 magnos . . . annos

648 magnos . . . orbes

665 conficere orbem

676 Non nimis

## CICERO

Cons. 25 Aut cum

Lucil. 993 Aut cum

196 Quem si

Cons. 49 stirpe profectam

## CICERO

P vi pectore carmen

215 corpore serpens and 386

Cons. 41 divom simulacra

225 Legitimo cernes caelum lu-  
strantia cursu177 Quod superest . . . flumine  
fontis

Cons. 11 Nam primum

99 pars inferior

188 inferiore in parte

P vi vocibus instat Vocibus instat

239 Amplexi terras

P iv gurgite ponti

Lucil. 40 gurgite salso

281 rota fervida solis

327 inde loci

Enn. A 530 Inde loci and S 4

39 Propterea quod

Sueius i 3 Propterea quod

88 Igniferum . . . aethera

Cons. 37 Ipse suos

Lucil. 1141 ipse suo

Cons. 11 astrorum . . . motus

314 caeli . . . orbem

332 lumine lustrans

Cons. 2 conlustrat lumine

237 lustrantes lumine

Cons. 18 claram speciem

ix fulgore notata

61 Brumali flectens

282 brumali tempore flexus

233 Cum redeunt ad idem caeli  
sub tegmine signum

337 signa revisunt

232 magnos . . . annos

236 magnos . . . orbes

250 conficit orbem

89 Non nimis

## LUCRETIVS IV

- 684 in partis . . . dividit  
vi 86 divisus partibus  
686 Eius in adversa  
688 nocturnas exaequat lucibus  
umbras  
689 flatus aquilonis et austri  
  
691 signiferi . . . orbis  
  
692 caelum lumine lustrans  
694 loca caeli and i 1062  
708 pleno bene lumine fulsit  
  
712 Labitur ex alia signorum parte  
per orbem  
719 lumine fertur  
722 candenti lumine and vi 1197  
757 labatur lumine  
  
766 perlabier orbem  
888 florente iuventas  
915 totum . . . caelum  
1092 mortalibus ignem and 1101  
  
1138 praeclarum insigne  
1169 iam tum  
  
1205 stellisque micantibus aethera  
fixum  
  
1333 terram consternere casu  
1351 tela paratur  
1399 caput atque umeros  
1402 pede pellere  
1437 lustrantes lumine circum

## CICERO

- 268 in partes divisum  
  
395 Cuius in adversum  
288 Exaequat spatium lucis cum  
tempore noctis  
280 auris Aquilonis ad austrum  
Lucil. 527 austrum atque  
aquilonem  
318 Orbem signiferum  
340 Signifero ex orbe  
363 Signifero . . . ex orbi  
225 caelum lustrantia cursu  
130 caeli . . . loca  
137 lumine fulgens  
175 lumina fulgent  
247 pleno . . . lumine  
(Manil. ii 729 luna refulsit)  
226 signorum labier orbem  
  
301 lumine fertur  
P ii candet lumine  
37 labentes lumine  
329 lumine labens  
390 labens per caeli lumina  
226 labier orbem  
Cons. 75 flore iuventae and Cons. iii  
408 caelum totum  
xxvii mortalibus ignem  
Lucil. 1073 mortalibus mor-  
bum  
ii praeclara insignia  
74 iam tum  
Lucil. 105 iam tum  
xiv adfixa videtur Stella micans  
xvii fixa videtur Stella micans  
Cons. 12 stellarum ardore micantis  
433 constravit corpore terram  
Cons. 64 ferroque parata  
417 caput atque umeros  
52 pede pellere  
237 lustrantes lumine mundum



## LUCRETIVS VI

- 2 praeclaro nomine  
 99 caeli de parte  
 135 flamina cauri Perfiant  
 140 Hic ubi and 524 686 836  
     446 Hic ubi se  
 145 ardens Fulminis  
 295 vis . . . venti Incidit  
  
 311 vementi perculit ictu  
 334 celeri volat impete labens  
 372 quod fertur nomine  
 409 tonat ex illa parte  
 412 ausis . . . contendere factum  
 455 Haec faciunt  
 467 Vertice de montis  
 505 Cum supera  
 522 parte feruntur  
 629 in orbi  
 631 corpore tellus  
 780 Aspectu fugienda . . . tristia  
 852 caligine textit  
 857 corpore terram  
  
 881 per undas  
 957 In caelum  
 1213 Atque etiam

## CICERO

- xvii nomine claro  
 369 caeli de parte  
     22 Aquilonis flamina pulsant  
 113 Hic ubi se  
     Lucil. 397 Hic ubi  
 Cons. 41 fulminis ardor  
 198 inciderit vehementi flamine  
     ventus  
 431 valido . . . perculit ictu  
 iii labuntur celeri . . . motu  
 22 qui nomine fertur  
 Mar. Partibus intonuit  
 447 ausa est contendere forma  
 232 Haec faciunt  
 P iii e vertice montis  
 364 Cum supera  
 xxvi parte feretur  
     59 in orbe and 235  
 Cons. 25 corpore tellus  
 xxxii aufugiens aspectum maesta  
 194 caligine tectam  
 433 corpore terram  
 438 corpore terras  
 435 corpora terras  
 197 per undas  
     26 in caelum and 407  
 72 Atque etiam and P iii

*Transmitted February 4, 1921.*

## NOTES ON THE SILVAE OF STATIUS

## BOOK V

BY

WILLIAM A. MERRILL

---

- 1, 5      ut vel Apelleo vultus signata colore  
         Phidiaca vel vata manu reddare dolenti

“That you may be restored to him in his sorrow, born from the hand of Phidias”; this is real poetry, and therefore many scholars have changed nata, the correction made by the second hand of M, to various prosaic words. Surely artists are creators. The corruption of n to v was due to vel and is otherwise very common: ii 2, 47 vegat for negat, iii 1, 30 vemees for Nemees.

- 1, 17      altera cum volucris Phoebi rota torqueat annum  
         sed cum plaga recens et adhuc in vulnere primo  
         nigra domus questu miseramque accessus ad aurem  
         coniugis orbat

Markland was troubled by volucris and changed it to volucrem because he regarded both altera volucris rota and volucris Phoebi as unworthy of Statius. But altera goes logically with annum, partly because alterum would be unmetrical and partly because Statius is careless with his syntax. In 18, Markland would have funere for vulnere, but vulnere is supported by Th. ii 640, at cui vita recens et adhuc in vulnere vires, and by S. iii 5, 24, quae

me vulnere primo intactum . . . . fixisti, v 5, 53, viso vulnere carae coniugis. In 19, miseram aurem is the ear of the deceased that hears not: Lucr. iii 467, neque exaudit voces . . . . illorum potis est ad vitam qui revocantes circumstant lacrimis rorantes ora genasque. Priscilla is called miseram in 155 and the shades are miseris in ii 6, 92. The plain prose would be coniux orbatus accessit ad aurem miserae Priscillae. Accessus means "approach," not "avenue."

**1, 30**      nunc etiam ad planetus refugit iam plana cicatrix

This is sound: the wound, although healed, has recourse again to lamentation. Pliny xx 93, cicatrices ad planum redigere. For a scar to flee for refuge is nothing to Statius: erubuit fistula, iii 3, 58.

**1, 33**      mira fides citius genetrix si pelea fertur  
exhausisse genas

Fertur is due to an attempt to make the line scan, and feretur of Heinsius is correct. Si pelea is a corruption of Sipylea. Fertur exhausisse is contrary to the legend: eius hodie lacrimae manare dicuntur, Hyginus, Fab. ix, cf. Ov. M. vi 312.

**1, 45**      illa quidem nuptuque prior taedasque marito

Nuptuque prior should be changed with the vulgate to nuptum, which is an unusual word and hence altered to nuptu. Similar cases may be found in 1, 4, 10, ii 6, 20, v 3, 207. Where Statius uses taeda of the marriage torch he usually has an interpretative word in the context: v 3, 240 cognita taeda conubia; iii 4, 53 taedas iunxerat et plena dederat conubia dextra, iii 5, 69 iugale conciliare toros festasque accendere taedas, iii 5, 62, Th. v 455, viii 562; even here he writes marito in addition to nuptum.—In 46, Sandstroem's fugata is refuted by Th. ii 204, iam virginitate iugari.—In 51, proavis seu may be defended by i 4, 29 and v 3, 101 modis seu and ii 2, 94 armatis seu. Falso in 52 means "deceit."



1, 83

ille iubatis

molem immensam humeris et vix tractabile tempus  
imposuit

There can be no doubt that iubatis should be retained with Vollmer, Postgate, and Klotz. Domitius was right in taking it as fortissimus, hair being symbolical of strength. Statius calls shoulders surgentes in Th. vii 566, virides in vi 714, grandibus in vi 838, fortis in Ach. i 183; humeroque comanti in S. i 2, 2. Cervix is iubata in Pliny viii 52. In S. iv 9, 97, stabuntne sub illa mole humeri an magno vincetur pondere cervix conveys the general thought. Tempus is retained by Postgate alone of modern editors, but it is difficult to see how it can be interpreted. Pondus of Avantius is the usual reading.

1, 92

omnia nam laetas pila attollentia frondis  
nullaque fumosa signatur lancea penna

Nam is changed to num by Politian and accepted by Phillimore, but that to me seems inconsistent with signatur, for which signetur was read by Politian and Domitius. Laetas is offensive to many who see no happiness in leaves, but the laurel leaves were significant of joy in Statius' mind. In 93 is an interesting example of Virgilian reminiscence: Aen. ix 473 pennata per urbem Nuntia fama ruit. The lance must have been famosa rather than fumosa, and that is the usual reading.—In 95, frenare maniplos intermissus eques has not yet been explained satisfactorily. Centum in the other five places in the Silvae is joined to a noun. Perhaps the meaning is, after all, quis centum valeat frenare maniplos intermissus eques, the reference being to the officer of the cavalry that was distributed throughout the maniples, so that each division should have its own cavalry, as Markland says. In that case intermixtus should be read with Salmasius, and centum maniplos is a general expression for infantry. To make maniplos intermissus eques a parenthesis seems intolerably harsh. Cohorti in 96 I take to refer to infantry, the cavalry arm being signified by alae in 98.

- 1, 105      quaeque tuas laurus volueri Germanice cursu  
Fama velut praegressa diem

Volueri cursu can be defended by Th. v 167, in volueri tenuis fiducia cursu. Curru, by Casaubon, which has been adopted by many editors, makes excellent sense, but the change is not necessary. Velut cannot be right, as a verb corresponding to ligat and linquit is needed. Domitius' vehit is undoubtedly correct.

- 1, 110      vicisti gaudia cene

The most recent editors read paene, which is flat in meaning and not supported by any example of confusion of p and c. I suggest famae: iv 8, 34 gaudia fama, 7, 28 quae gaudia famae. In ii 7, 60, fulminibus stands for culminibus. But if we knew more about the dinner, cenae might stand.—In 117, hinc is properly read by most recent editors for hic of M: iii 3, 106, hinc tibi rara quies. In iii 5, 74, M has hic for hinc and in iv 8, 59 hac for hanc.

- 1, 122      exemplumque ad erile movet

Monet is the usual reading and Markland conjectured movet, but saying "utrumvis defendi protest." Movet can mean "influences": i 2, 68 votis precibusque moveri, Ach. ii 239, Thetidis mandata movent, 357 fortes iactura moveret, and in Th. vi 706 et casus Phlegyaе monet, where movet is a variant reading. But for monet, Th. viii 28, iura bonus meliora monet, vii 504 si verba tamen monitusque tuorum. The clause is parenthetical and introduced to flatter Domitian.—In 123, Klotz follows Heinsius in reading sole infecta Sabina instead of Sabino, and Markland triumphantly quotes Horace Epod. ii 41, Sabina qualis aut perusta solibus; but Statius wished to vary the hackneyed Horatian reminiscence and ea infecta sole Sabino is more elegant than ea mulier Sabina infecta sole. Such a principle would demand omnis for omni in Th. v 364, raptus ab omni sole dies, or soluti in Th. i 219, solutos solis equos.

**1, 132**      dum te pulvere bellorum nube videret  
                  Caesarei prope fulmen equi

Recent editors, except Phillimore, keep the text, but the last named reads in nube with the old vulgate. In seems to be necessary with a local ablative: Th. ix 644, cum fratrem in nube corusca adspicit; on the other hand, Th. iv 664, ubi pulvere Nemeen effervere nube conspicit, Th. v 251, occulta speculamur nube latentes; vi 411, caeco pulvere mixti una in nube latent. In nube occurs in Th. iii 320, 510, v 407, vi 233, 411, vii 708, ix 644, x 538. In S. ii 3, 3, curvata stands for incurvata. Lucan iv 488, non tamen in caeca bellorum nube cadendum est. In 133, fulmen equi is unexampled. There are passages that approximate to it in boldness: S. iv 7, 50, rapidum secutus Caesaris fulmen; v 2, 102, castum vibraret Iulia fulmen; Th. ix 530, fulmineosque veluti praeceps cum cominus egit ira sues; Ach. ii 410, fulmineosque sues; Th. iv 94, fulmineus Tydeus. Caesar's horse was "a charger."

**1, 139**                                      nullamne notavit  
                  illa domum torvo quam non haec lumina figat

I wonder why Vollmer, Klotz, and Postgate have followed Barth in writing notabit. Figat does not make notabit necessary: Th. iii 522, astra notavi . . . . quamquam maiora parantur; xii 758, utque aequa notavit Hinc atque hinc odia extrema se colligit ira. Notabit would seem to call for ullam and not nullam. In 149, velis adnubilat aura secundis, adnubilat occurs nowhere else unless in some of the manuscripts of Ammianus at xxvii 15 where obnubilarunt is read. Obnubilat should probably be read here in the meaning "beclouds."

**1, 158**      nil famuli coetus nil ars operosa medentum

There is no example of famuli as a collective singular in Statius. Famuli may be due to exacti in 157 and famulum would agree with Statian usage: iii 1, 86, coetusque ministrum, 4, 57, famulumque greges; Th. xi 327, famulumque expalluit omnis coetus. The text may be defended by S. iv 2, 39, famulas . . . .





## 1, 205     ille etiam erecte rupisset tempora vitae

For the desperate erecte I make one more suggestion: enectae; r and n are confused in i 5, 16; iii 3, 204; v 2, 131. Statius means ille etiam enecisset se et rupisset vitam suam. Enectae with vitae may be translated "exhausted": Cic. Att. vi 1, 2, provinciam . . . mihi tradiderit enectam.

1, 207     sec prohibet mens fida ducis morandaque sacris  
                 imperiis et maior amor

Sed is the vulgate for sec. Duci was once generally read, but lately ducis has been taken as an objective genitive. Miranda has been questioned by many, but it can be retained with fides understood from fida: i 3, 20, miranda fides; i 2, 171 miratur amatque. Imperiis seems due to the metre; for the plural cf. Ach. i 281, dominique gemit captivus inire imperia. Sacris imperiis means holy orders, that is, the emperor: iii 3, 65, Caesareum coluisse latus sacrisque deorum arcanis haerere datum. One could hardly find a parallel outside of the *Silvae*.—In 219, tantum crinesque genaeque noctis habent may be compared with Ibis 63, utque mei versus aliquantum noctis habebunt.

## 1, 233     illo Maia tolo Venus hoc non improba saxo

Like Ceres, Priscilla is to be preserved in bronze. She is to be as brilliant as Ariadne, in marble she is to be like Venus, and like Maia she is to be preserved, I think, in glass-mosaic—vitro. Whether tholo should mean vitro in this connection, or whether it was an interpretation of vitro, a vault, I do not know. Probably the common splendidior vitro was in the poet's mind from lucida in 233.—In 245, in eodem angusta phaselus aequore, Gevaert's *it* is an improvement rather than an emendation.

2, 2                nec longa mora est aut avia tellus  
                 et mea secreto velluntur pectora morsu

Many scholars have followed Gronovius in reading sed for et, but et may be defended by i 4, 47, nec proturbare curules et

ferrum mulcere toga; ii 1, 198, neque enim . . . spernit et . . . credit; iv 4, 39, non miscent iurgia leges et pacem piger annus habet; v 1, 191, nec videbo Tartara et Elysias . . . admittar in oras.—In 4, udaeque turgentes impellunt lumina guttas, Markland started by changing guttas to guttae which led him to write surgentes for turgentes. It is a matter of taste, in which Markland differs so often from Statius.—In 7, M has longon for longo; it is difficult to account for the added n, which led edition a to print longum: parallel passages are Th. ii 240, v 483, xii 659, S. iv 2, 30, 42.

## 2, 11

etiamne optanda propinqui  
tristia ut octonos bis iam tibi circuit orbis

Propinqui is well attested in other manuscripts and early editions, although Vollmer is the only recent editor who has the courage to keep it. In 59 occurs haec certent tibi conciliare propinqui. A verb meaning "expect" or "await" can be supplied: a prose writer would have written optant propinqui tristia. There is no other occurrence in the *Silvae* of etiamne or et iam ne. I see no reason for changing ut to et. A somewhat similar oxymoron occurs in Th. i 620, etiamnum gaudia pallent.

## 2, 18

turмали trabeque ac remis et paupere clavo

This is unmetrical and otherwise corrupt. The ac probably represents aque repeated from the preceding que. Trabe is usually corrected to trabea. Remis cannot be right and the old correction Remi is untenable; Krohn's recens makes good sense and is now the accepted reading, but recens is too far from remis. I had thought of Quiris: turмали trabeaque Quiris et paupere clavo, if the quantity of Quiris is admissible.—In 21, iugera is questioned by Markland, who thinks that it cannot mean spatiosa. Yet in Th. v 550 occurs spatiosaque iugera complet, and in vi 493, spatia horrida circi. This is another example of Statius' careless use of words.



## 2, 54

negantem

fluctibus occiduis fessusque Hyperione Thulen  
intravit mandata gerens

Fessusque cannot be right, and the old vulgate fesso usque is very likely correct since it keeps -usque. No one of the recent proposals is tenable. The sun and not Crispinus was weary in Thule. Negantem seems justified by *saxa negantia ferro* iii 1, 124.—In 60, the sense is certainly *praecepta senes comitesque paterni*, as Housman would write it, but whether Statius followed that order or the order in the text I cannot decide. Statius allowed himself great liberties in the *Silvae* and a special study of his technique is urgently needed. Other cases of wrong order are i 1, 28 (disputed), and v 1, 144.

## 2, 61

Iamque alio moliris iter

Alio, "elsewhere," occurs in iv 4, 95 and 8, 17, and is paralleled by Th. i 444, *quo fertis iter*. The contrast is in the independent action of his budding manhood, not a mere imitation of his father's exploits.

## 2, 62

nondum validae tibi signa iuventae  
irrepsero genis et adhuc tenor integer aevi

The old vulgate read *decor* for *tenor*, but the correct reading is *teneri*: ii 6, 46, *teneri sic integer aevi Elin adit primosque Iovi puer approbat annos*. He was still a boy; not *aevi maturus*, Th. v 90. Below, 71, at *tibi Pieriae tenero sub pectore*.

## 2, 65

occidio et

Here *i* was repeated—*occidii*, and *o* was written for *i*: v 3, 153, *obsieus* for *Ibyeus*. Then *i* was an earlier error for *t*: i 1, 107, *iura* for *tura*; v 3, 219, *iuus* for *tuus*. The correct reading of the early editions was *occidit et*, rightly recalled by Vollmer, Postgate, and Klotz. *Et* means *etiam*, as frequently in the *Silvae*.—In 73, *hine* is preferred by Baehrens and Vollmer to *tunc*, but

tune is continuative as in iv 3, 47. Vollmer maintains that hilaritas is a consequence of Pieriae curae; but nitor and pietas are not.

**2, 74**      luxuriae confine tenens pietasque per omnis  
dispensata domos

Tenens means keeping (and not overstepping) the line of excess; cf. Th. x 542, iii 530. Timens of Barth and others is not necessary. In domos is the meaning an economy practiced through all homes? This would follow on the previous statement, but it is more likely that dispensata suggested domos because domus is so often used with dispensator, "steward." Hence the common modos is probably right; pietas here is dutifulness toward property.—In 81, infestare libet is said of a general principle: Ach. ii 332, tu . . . libet sumere.

**2, 83**      flectentem iustis et talia dicta parantem

The latest editors read visus, which might be defended by Th. x 819, visus flectit, cf. Th. xi 335, x 541, Ach. ii 121; but it is not plain why he should turn his gaze. I propose for iustis, te istis: ii 1, 226, nil fleteris istis sed flectere libens. Te is elided in ii 1, 150.—In 97, ut crescunt should perhaps be read for sed. Macte is usually followed by quod or the like, so that with its omission another exclamation would be natural here: i 6, 54, ut pugnas capit improbus virilis; or perhaps the sentence should be continued to the next line.

**2, 110**      conatusque tuos nec te reus ipse timebat

This passage is almost hopeless, but I would add one more conjecture, and that is cereus for te reus: cereus of color occurs in Virgil, Bucol. ii 53, cerea pruna and elsewhere, and cereus as a synonym of mollis is suggested by Horace A.P. 163, cereus in vitium flecti. Ipse I take of the speaker. For the confusion of c and t cf. iii 1, 19, 72, iv 6, 51, v 1, 84; Th. xii 167, stupuitque inmanis eundi Impetus atque uno vultus pallore gelati. The turn of thought to strength naturally follows: par vigor et membris

promptaeque ad fortia vires. That would be in Statius' manner in his quick transitions. But there is no example elsewhere of cereus of a person. For this reason I had also thought of *territus*.—In 115, *ilia nuda* may be defended by Th. i 420, *flexoque genu vacua ilia tundunt*.—In 121 I take *gyro leviores* as "nimble circling."—In 123, *Ogygio versantem in pulvere metas* is Statius' cryptic way of saying *versantem currum circa metam* in *Ogygio pulvere*, *metas* being merely the object of the particular excursions made by *Parthenopaeus*. Phillimore's *servantem* suggests a permanently fixed object.

2, 125      *ergo age nam magno ducis indulgentia pulsat*  
               *certaque dat votis hilaris vestigia frater*  
               *surge animo*

Vollmer and Phillimore would read *iam* for *nam*, but there is no other case of *n* for *i* in the manuscript of the *Silvae*, and Statius writes *ergo age seu* in iii 1, 23. *Nam* gives the ground of renewed action in the favor of the prince and the example of the brother. *Magno* is taken by some with *animo*, but it is too far away; there is no instance in Statius of *magno animo*. As some change is necessary, the old vulgate was *magni*. *Magni ducis* occurs in iii 1, 62, *verendi ducis* in v 2, 44, and there are several cases of *ducis* with other adjectives as well as of *ducis* alone. There is confusion of *o* and *i* in v 3, 153, *obsiculus* for *Ibycus*. *Pulsat* is difficult, as it usually has unpleasant associations when used metaphorically, yet here it may mean "beats on me," a strong expression for "impel": Th. viii 249, *Antigonen . . . pulsare querelis*. In verse 126, *hilaris* is dubious; those who keep it take it with *votis*, but there is no certain instance of *hilaris* in Statius, and no instance of *votum* with a word meaning "happy," although *miserabile votum* occurs in Th. ii 642 and *miseri voti* in Th. viii 614. If *hilaris* be taken with *frater* there seems no justification for the brother's hilarity. Perhaps *facilis* should be read for *hilaris*: iii 1, 14, *facilis vestigia*; ii 3, 7, *faciles . . . date*. *Hilaris* and *facilis* differ in only two letters. *Facilis* would mean "compliant."



**2, 129**      *flectere Castor equos umeris quater arma Quirinus*

Umeris does not mean "shoulders" here but is a metrical substitute for brachiis or perhaps is used instead of manibus, which Otto conjectured. Statius uses also ulnis for umeris in ii 1, 66, or for lacertis as in v 2, 66. Th. i 413, *exertare umeros*, corresponds to *exertasque manus* in Ach. ii 95. Sometimes he omits the noun as in Th. viii 441, *abstulit ex umero dextram*. Other cases where umeris means arms or hands are Th. ix 267, *humeros amputat*; Ach. i 352, *arma umeris . . . petebat ferre*; S. iii 1, 178, *nunc umeris irreptet avi*; Ach. i 196, *blandusque umeris se innectit Achilles*. For the general statement: Th. ix 332, *arma decent umeros*; v 2, 118, *equo Troianaque quassans tela*; ii 1, 219, *urnam quatit Aeacus ulnis*. In the next line *plaudere* is also a metrical substitute for *movere*.—In 131, Markland's *aera* for *arma* is ingenious but not necessary.—In 137, *umbroso conige* of the Danube is defended by the associations of ii 3, 55, *umbris scrutatur amantibus undas*.

**2, 145**      *affari vitae specula castellaque longe*

This desperate passage requires a desperate remedy and I propose *vitreas* for *vitae* and the old *speculas* for *specula*. S. i 5, 42, *vario fastigia vitro . . . nitent*. For the corruption: *nostequè* for *nosterque* i 4, 113; *rependis* for *reprendis* v 5, 58: *viteas speculas* became *vitea specula* and then *vitae*. The old correction *nitidas* gives the same meaning.—In 152 I am dubious about *Optatus*. We ought to know more about him.—In 175, *enixus suffice donis*, Markland objects to *enixus*; *enixe* would be an easy change.

**2, 178**      *non minus hoc fortis quam si tibi panderet ipse  
Bellipotens*

Heinsius' very attractive *sortis* is read by Phillimore, yet *fortis* is probably right. *Non minus hoc sc. esset* can be defended by i 4, 43, *hoc illud*; ii 7, 31, *hoc plus quam Senecam dedisse mundo*; iii 5, 14, *cur hoc triste tibi*. *Fortis* as an epithet of Mars occurs in Ov. F. v 598 and Petronius 124, 289. *Ipsè* is

used with another modifying word in ii 1, 186, *ipse trux navita*; iv 1, 11, *ipse reparator maximus*, i 2, 11, *ipsa . . . genetrix Aeneia*, v 2, 46, *ipsa . . . barbara tellus*.

## 3, 3

*neque enim antra moveri*

*Delia nec solitam fas est impellere Cirrham*

Markland and Baehrens change *moveri* to *move*, presumably for the sake of coördination, but Statius is indifferent in such a matter. There are fourteen instances in his works where the active and passive forms occur: v 3, 161, *pedes aequare solutis versibus et numquam passu brevior relinqui*; i 2, 55, *quas ferre faces quae pectora figi*; Th. viii 596, *mergi . . . recumbere*; vii 795, *quati . . . effervere*; v 693, *rapi . . . occumbere*; vii 599, *rapi . . . ardere*; vi 731, *cerni . . . tueri*; vii 170, *nectere . . . rotari*; x, 633, *dari . . . contingere*; iv 823, *perfurere . . . tolli*; vii 112, *credi . . . lymphare*; iii 38, *levari . . . concurrere*; iv 715, *audiri . . . rumpere*; x 391, *moveri . . . ire*. There are comparatively few occurrences of the infinitive present passive; only 131 instances in all of Statius according to Valpy's index, which, however, is not complete.—In 6, Phillimore's *monstrabat* for *monstrabat* is improbable, as the tense form does not occur elsewhere in Statius and the inserted *r* occurs in iii 4, 57, *greges* for *greges*; iv 3, 62, *fragror* for *fragor*.—In 9, *extimui* has been changed to *sustinui* by Markland—a correction of Statius and not an emendation.

## 3, 10

*certe ego magnanimum qui facta attollere regum*

Markland would change *certe* to *ille*, which can be defended by v 5, 38 and 40; but Statius omits the copula with *ego* in i 1, 78, 2, 82; v 3, 262. Note that in line 12 the verb must also be supplied. I can see no reason for departing from the manuscript reading in that line. *Apolline merso* is like Th. iii 628, *unique silet tibi noster Apollo*, and the opposite of Th. viii 374, *maiorque chelyn mihi tendat Apollo*, or even Th. iii 454, *dexter Apollo*. But in Statius' manner the suggestion of light justifies *prae-duxit*; *Apollo* is both the sun and the god of poetry.

3, 19      at tua seu membris emissus in ardua tendens  
fulgentesque plaga rerumque elementa recenses

Markland changes *tendens* to *tendis*, and it is true that no passage of Statius can be quoted for such a series as *emissus . . . tendens . . . recenses*, but the tense of *emissus* may be disregarded; *membris emissus* is equivalent to *liber*. The repeated *que* is common enough: iii 3, 204, *affatusque pios monituraque somnia poseam*.—In 23, *notique modos extendis Arati*, perhaps Statius means by *noti* the phenomena that Aratus knew so well. The released spirit would surpass Aratus in celestial knowledge: the strict syntactical meaning of *noti* is very flat.

3, 28      da vocem magna pater ingenium dolori  
              nam me ter relègens caelo terque ora retexens  
              luna

Que is added after *ingenium* in the inferior manuscripts. For *magna* we may choose between *magnum* and *magno*; there seems to be no reason for a loud voice here, and *vocem*, alone, balances *ingenium*. There is no example of either *magno dolori* or *vocem magnum* in Statius. In iv 4, 71 *parvo* is read for *parva*. In 29, *relegens* and *retexens* are contrasted; the moon collects together and unweaves her face in the sky. Heinsius' *relegens caelum* is attractive at first sight, but the repetition of *ter* would be meaningless. Statius does not use *in caelo* anywhere, and *caelo*, locative, occurs only in Th. iii 31, 271, 473; viii 412; x 858.—In 32, *cinerem oculis hausi* may be illustrated by Th. x 596, *oculis haurire vacantes ignem*.

3, 33    vix haec in munera solvo  
primum animum tacitisque situm depellere curis

Primum is difficult here: perhaps limo should be read, as the initial letter of the line is sometimes omitted: rimo animum would be emended to primum animum: Ov. Pont. iv 2, 19, pectora sic mea sunt limo vitata malorum. Tacitis curis needs no change; the poet clears away the mould from his hidden song.—In 35 I see no compelling reason for reading nec lumine sicco instead of



nunc.—In 44, Klotz's remedy is the most acceptable—a lacuna after 43 and no change in the words.

### 3, 45      Pierio sume gemitus et vulnera nati

Baehren's *sume o* can be defended by *pone o i* 2, 33, *macte o* iv 8, 14. Klotz's *sume en* is not paralleled by *en* with the imperative elsewhere in the *Silvae*. Gronovius' *sume et*, adopted by Vollmer, may be defended by *incipe et* iii 1, 114, *age et* iii 1, 154, but there no second and third *et* follow. *Vulnera* means the self-inflicted wounds of sorrow accompanied by *gemitus*: Th. xii 107 *sua vulnera*. Markland's *munera* is weak.

### 3, 55      putri sonitum daret ungula fossa

*Putri fossa* means the soil of the racecourse that was indented by the horse's hoof and crumbled under the blow. The horses were not shod, and hence the track was soft and yielding: *haurit arenas*, Th. ii 46.

### 3, 56      frondentia vatum praemia laudato genitor te rite ligarem ipse madens oculis

*Tibi* is read by most recent editors, and *litarent* by Phillimore after Ellis and Schwartz. The manuscript reading is abundantly defended by ii 1, 192 *nova sarta ligantem*, Th. iv 602 *vittaque ligatis frondibus*, Ach. i 289 *fronde ligare*. Some scholars think that *ipse* in 58 is inconsistent with *ligarem*, but *ipse* means "yes, I"; cf. ii 1, 203, iii 1, 164, v 1, 188, 2, 148, and v 1, 119, *fovet anxia curas coniugis hortaturque simul flectitque labores*. *Ipsa dapes modicas et sobria pocula tradit*. *Madens oculis* is no more difficult than *madens ense* in Th. iii 230.

### 3, 61      atque tibi moresque tuos et facta canentem

Heinsius and others read *atque ibi* <me>, but Statius frequently omits a pronoun with the accusative of the present participle: Th. iii 519 <me> *canentem obstupere duces*; S. ii 4, 5 <te> *carpentem*; Th. 188 <te> *abeuntem*, Th. vi 802 <eum>

venientem, Ach. ii 120 <eum> haec aure trahentem. For the dative cf. Th. iv 579, talia dum patri canit.

**3, 63** tenderet et torvo pietas aequare Maroni

Perhaps orto is concealed in torvo: Anth. Meyer 865, tristia fata tui dum fles in Daphnide Flacci Docte Maro fratrem dis immortalibus aequas, with reference to the fifth eclogue and quoted by Markland to justify docto.

**3, 68** vincit in ardentem liceat moritura maritum

It is strange that no one has proposed mori itura here: Th. iii 627, pandere . . . . eo; iv 4, 61, ibis frenare; v 3, 10, attollere . . . . ibam; ii 5, 20, moriens it; Th. iii 378, ibo libens certusque mori.

**3, 69** maior aliis forsitan superos et Tartara pulsem  
invidia externis etiam miserabile visu  
funus eat

This is another desperate passage demanding a desperate remedy, and Romae differs in only one letter from maior. For aliis write alius, and for pulsem, pulset with Mueller: iii 5, 75, Dicarchei portus et litora mundi Hospita et hic magnae tractus imitantia Romae. For externis, iv 5, 46, externa non mens Italus, Italus Sunt urbe Romanisque turmis. The clauses following I thus read and punctuate: sed nec modo se natura <iniusta> dolenti, nec pietas iniusta dedit (showed) mihi, limine primo, etc.

**3, 88** nec fida gavisam Pallada buxo

Foeda is defended, not only by the story, but by the corruption in iii 5, 48, Melibia for Meliboea. In 86 the poet mentioned the boughs and tears of the Heliads, and in 87 the Phrygian rock of Niobe; then he passes on to the persons with Marsyas and Pallas; all trite subjects like those mentioned in the beginning of the third book of Manilius. The first two references are to conventional examples of grief; the second two to musical contests with two divinities.

- 3, 92      quis labor Aonios seno pede ducere campos  
             cydalibem nomenque fuit quosque orbe sub omni

In spite of the opinion of many editors verse 92 is sound and means "whose task it is to plough the fields of poetry with hexameter verse." It is another example of the author's habit of tacitly extending a common phrase: ducere aratrum would mean sulcare, and he expects his readers to understand. Plain language is not to be demanded from rhetorical poets like Statius, Valerius Flaccus, and Silius.—In verse 93 cydalibem may be a corrupt gloss, *κῦδος λαβεῖν*, that has extruded some Latin phrase like fama foris. Certainly of the twenty-six conjectures known to me, no one is satisfactory.

- 3, 104    exsere semirutos subito de pulvere vultus  
             Parthenope crinemque adflato monte sepultum  
             pone super tumulos

Here, as in many other places, we must permit Statius to tell his story in his own way, even if it be far removed from the simplicity of Virgil and the plainness of Latin generally. The poet assumed three facts: that there had been an eruption of Vesuvius, that Naples was called Parthenope who also was a person, and his father's tomb. Semirutos vultus and crinem sepultum correspond, and adflato monte is an ablative absolute, "when the mountain was blasted." Vultus and crinis occur together in i 2, 14, Th. v 62, iv 278; the custom of placing hair on tombs is alluded to in S. iii 3, 133 and adflare means "blasts" in v 1, 146, Th. v 194, 527, x 674. What Statius means is that the spirit of Naples that had suffered from earthquake should arise from the dust and place an offering of the hair that had been buried in ashes, on the father's tomb.—In 108, doctaque Cyrene Sparteve, Markland for once was right in changing que to ve, as there is no parallel in the *Silvae* to que . . . ve.



- 3, 109**    si tu stirpe vetas famaеque obscura iaceres  
              nil gentile tenens

Vetas is corrupt as most editors have seen, and a synonym of obscura fama is demanded. I propose (hesitatingly) latens: origo latet i 4, 69. Whether famaе should be changed to fama I cannot decide. In the Lucretian manuscripts u and l are interchanged in iii 95, vocatum for locatum. The stages of corruption were possibly latens, lates, vetas. In 110, nil gentile tenens may be compared with iii 3, 43, of Etruscus, non tibi dona . . . gentis linea. Tumens of Markland is too violent a contrast to the preceding, although it is quite in place in Th. viii 429.

- 3, 112**    ille tuis totiens praestat sed tempora seris

Seris is due to tempora taken of time, and Domitius' sertis is certain. For the hopeless praestat tempora I suggest praesto tempore: i 2, 229, et iam socialia praesto omina, with omission of the verb. Sertis is used for victory as in 285, animam Lethaeis spargite sertis.

- 3, 114**    ora supergressus Pylii gregis oraеque regis  
              Dulichii

Vollmer has not succeeded in establishing gregis, for which we should expect the common senis proposed by Domitius and supported by Pyliique senis in ii 2, 108. But senis would never have been corrupted into gregis, and gravis might have been; the corruption may have occurred in an earlier capital manuscript: Lucr. i 674, vivescat for vigescat. Th. i 284, ille gravis dictis.—In 115, specieque comam subnexus utraque I understand to mean that he crowned his head with garlands, such as would have been won by Nestor's sweetness (Il. i 250) and Ulysses' copiousness (Il. iii 223).

- 3, 118**    artior extensis etenim te divite ritu  
              ponere purpureos Infantia legit amictus

For extensis, extensos is an easy correction. The narrow circumstances were wide enough to permit purple dress: Mart. xii 6,



his course but not Pollux with his cestus.—In 141, *sin pronom vicisse domi* may be defended by iv 6, 89 *si mores humanaque pectora curae nosse deis*.

**3, 149**      *quantus equus pignasque virum decurrere versu*

Postgate's correction *equum* seems best here: ii 1, 162, *comam* for *comas*; iv 3, 145, *series* for *seriem*; ii 7, 108, *levatum* for *levatus*; v 3, 46, *quam* for *quas*. The words for horses and men should be in the same case: v 3, 54, *vis nuda virum non arva rigaret sudor equum*; Th. iii 210, *quantus equis quantusve viris*; Th. ix 151, *sudor equis sudorque viris*. Th. vii 120, *arma virum pulsusque imitatur equorum*. *Pugna virum* occurs in Th. viii 690.—In 155, Calchide points to Chalcide, read by Klotz, but which, with our present information, cannot be satisfactorily explained. Domitius' interpretation of *saltus viriles* in 154 as *carmen poeticum* may, after all, be correct, but I think it refers to recitations accompanied with dancing. In any case the leap from *Leucas* should not be considered.—In 156, Markland changes *doctus* to *docti Battiadae*, I think correctly, for the competency of the elder Statius is not in point here, but what he actually did.—In 157, *arti* of Lycophron is too good; Statius might have written it, but *atri* is far more probable as a reference to his traditional obscurity.

**3, 170**      *litora qua mediis alte permissus anhelat*  
                 *ignis aquis et operta domos incendia servant*

*Permissus*, "let go," is sound, and the change to *permixtus* is unnecessary. *Anhelat* probably means "steams." In 171, the meaning is that the concealed fires keep the houses unharmed: Th. i 572, *servabat nata penates*; 50, *penates servantem*; v 107, *servare domos*; S. v 3, 178, *facis opertae*. *Observant*, "respect," would be more easily intelligible.



## 3, 180

arma probatur

monstrastis aliis praesagumque aethera certis  
auguribus

For probatur W. Meyer's conjecture probator seems most probable: caelestia arma, Livy i 20. By "approved arms" I understand persons worthy of bearing the Salian arms, who were recommended for admission by the elder Statius; still no satisfactory emendation has yet been made. Lipsius' monstrasti Saliis is certain; certis need not be changed to certi with Vollmer.

## 3, 209

me quoque vocalis lucos luocaque tempe

Lucos luocaque was originally lucos lucosque, and an adjective corresponding to vocalis is missing. As Statius, in Th. vi 88, has accisam Nemeen umbrosaque Tempe praecipitare solo lucosque ostendere Phoebo, umbrosa may be read here, as I see Slater has also suggested in J.P. xxx 137.

## 3, 211

nec enim mihi sidera tantum

aequora et terras quam vos debere parenti

Vos makes no sense and quae mos of Krohn, now very generally adopted, is unsuitable; for, as Karsten says, vitam non more sed natura parenti debemus. I suggest quae nos.

## 3, 222

attendunt cunei spectatur Achates

ille magis

It is, of course, possible that Achates may be some old attendant as Koestlin thought, but it is improbable. Imhof's Achaeis is quite generally accepted, but Statius nowhere uses Achaei as a noun. I suggest anhelus, which occurs in Th. viii 388 at the end of the line: anhelus conatur. For the corruption: iii 5, 25, intantum for intactum; v 3, 258, labe for tabe. For the form of the sentence: iii 2, 64, temeraria virtus Illa magis. The father pants with apprehension in sympathy with the son and attracts attention by his agitation.

- 3, 232 et fugit speratus honos qua dulce parentis  
invida Tarpei caperes

For qua, quod should be read, and there is a lacuna between 232 and 233. All the conjectures and interpretations of the manuscript reading are unsatisfactory.

- 3, 250 his tibi pro meritis famam laudesque benignas  
iudex cura deum nulloque e vulnere tristem  
concessit

I cannot believe that iudex is an adjective. A verb is needed as Phillimore suggested with his indit. I propose duxit: Th. ii 404, frigora membris ducere.—In 258, tabe senili by Gronovius is very attractive, yet the change from labe is unnecessary. There is no certain case in M of confusion of t and l. Labe senili suggests tottering old age rather than senile decay: i 4, 41, non labente Numa timuit sic curia felix; iii 2, 51, frigore pectus labitur.—In 273 I would read sic lux with Vollmer but with no lacuna.—In 283, Slater would have the elder Statius landed in the middle of a boat, alno, instead of in the water-grass. Ulva in Aen. vi 416 supports alga here.—In 286 irrupit of M is defended against irrumpit by Th. ii 20, seu maior adegit Erinys ire . . . seu . . . sacerdos . . . implet.—In 288, Slater would have genitor for melior, but melior is supported by v 2, 164, sed venies melior; cf. Th. iii 508, iv 430.

- 3, 293 nec non sine Apolline Sulla

Nec is wrong and recent editors read sic with Sudhaus, but Statius does not write sic non, but non sic: iii 5, 57, non sic Trachinia nidos Aleyone, vernos non sic Philomela penatis: i 6, 41, v 1, 113, and non . . . sic, i 4, 41. Nec sic occurs in i 1, 40; 2, 86. He has sic . . . non ii 7, 98, sic . . . nec v 1, 192. Nec non occurs in iv 4, 21; 8, 8. The old vulgate et non should be written here: iv 2, 17; 6, 24; v 3, 245. Ec was written for et and n added to make a Latin word: the numerous cases of ac for at may be compared for the corruption (i 2, 273; ii 2, 138, 4, 33, 5, 16; iii 2, 129, 4, 99; iv 3, 36, cf. iii 1, 72).

- 4, 7        septima iam rediens Phoebe mihi respicit aegras  
             stare genas totidem Oetaeae Paphiaequae revisent

Domitius' correction *revisunt* should be accepted as a technical astronomical term: Cic. *Arat.* 337, *signa revisunt*, a synonym of *recursant* proposed here by Markland, and of *rediens* in line 7. But *revisunt* also continues the thought in *respicit*—"returns and sees me sleepless still."

- 4, 14       at nunc heus aliquis longa sub nocte puellae

As *heus* does not occur in the *Silvae* elsewhere and is used mostly in uproarious addresses in the comic poets, there seems at first some justification for changing it to *heu*, continuing the note of sorrow; but the poet is thinking rather of the good fortune of *aliquis*. *Heus* is equivalent to *ecce* or *vide*: Ter. *Eun.* 276, *omnium rerum heus vicissitudost*.

- 4, 17       luminibus compello meis hoc turba precatur  
             laetior

All the editors change *precatur* to *precetur* with Heinsius, but I can see no necessity for it. The indicative is no more out of place than it is in *sufficit* in line 19.

- 5, 1        Me miserum neque enim verbis sollemnibus ulla  
             incipiam nec Castaliae vocalibus undis  
             invisus Phoeboque gravis

The text is sound and no changes are necessary. The neuter *ulla* can be defended by Th. xii 245, *sic inchoat orsa Menoetes*.

- 5, 5        dicite post poenam liceat commissa fateri

"Say, Pierides, let me (or you) acknowledge my offense after punishment." This is incoherent, and *liceat* and *fateri* have been questioned. I suggest *cedite* for *dicite*. Statius says that he is hated by Phoebus, and asks what mysteries of the Muses he has defiled. In despair he bids the Muses depart and leave him to his own resources: iv 3, 119, *cedamus chely, iam repone cantus*;



ii 7, 75, cedet Musa. If the text is sound the meaning must be "Muses, what altars have I profaned; tell me; let me confess my fault although I have already suffered the penalty. Have I placed my footsteps in an interdicted grove," etc. The Muses may still be addressed in cernite, 11, and credite, 12. The poem is, however, so hysterical that it is difficult to see a compelling logical connection between its various parts.

5, 8           quem luimus tantis morientibus ecce lacestis  
              viscera nostra tenens animaque avellitur infans

Tantis is sound and is a neuter; but if a change is thought necessary, tanti is better than tantus. For lacestis, Politian's lacertis is most probable: iv 3, 64, Marsicus for Massicus. For anima most editors read animam, which is probably correct, as everywhere else Statius puts viscera with a second noun in the same case. Morientibus is difficult: it must refer to Statius, whose arms were alive; hence Domitius read moeroribus; maerentibus would be better.

5, 10           non te stirpe quidem nec qui mea nomina ferret

Baehrens and Unger expel quidem for a noun, but mea should be supplied: iii 5, 54, nec pietas alia est tibieumque natae; iii 2, 107, duc portus urbesque tuas; 4, 56, dat radios ignemque suum; stirpe tua, v 3, 210.

5, 11                               sed cernite fletus  
              liventisque genas et credite planctibus orbi  
              orbis ego

Whether orbi is genitive or vocative no man can tell, but it is not probable that Pieriae is the logical subject of cernite and credite. Patres and matres in 13, ferto in 14, si qua in 15, and quisquis in 18 all support orbi as a vocative.

5, 14      *convenient cineremque oculis et crimina ferto*

A sorrowing mother would not bring ashes to her eyes at her son's funeral but might bring her hair, so that *crinem* of Heinsius is highly probable; cf. iii 3, 133, v 3, 105, Th. ix 900. But *oculis* may mean "to our sight": v 3, 32, *cineremque oculis humentibus hausi*. *Crimina* is unintelligible; it may mean "remonstrance." *Munera*, of Markland is supported by Th. vi 73, *muneraque in cineres . . . feruntur*, and various particular offerings have been suggested. Many scholars think that the verse is spurious; it is genuine but obscure.—In 17, *papillas* is grotesque, and *favillas* by Domitius should be read. The breasts were neither inflamed nor burning. *Papillas* is due to *pectus*.—In 24, 25, 26, and 27, it is impossible to say what was in the manuscript before the hole was made.

5, 31      *nec eburno pollice chordas  
pulso sed incertam digitis errantibus amens  
sciendo chelyn*

Why Statius should call his thumb ivory is not plain. Cynthia's fingers were ivory in Prop. ii 1, 9, and the hand of Pelops in Th. vii 95. Maximian, iv 11, also has *niveis digitis* of a virgo, but Statius cannot mean that he does not play with his thumb but performs with his fingers. *Pectine*, instead of *pollice*, seems demanded by the sense, as was first suggested by Unger: Virg. Aen. vi 647, *iam pectine pulsat eburno*. But perhaps *pollice* means *pectine* here: iv 4, 53, *tenuis ignavo pollice chordas pulso* of a literal thumb. *Incertam chelyn* is a strange expression inadmissible in prose and perhaps in other poets. An uncertain lyre is one that gives out a tune that is not sure, a wavering melody. In Th. x 445, *quamvis mea carmina surgant inferiore lyra*, he means that the strains are humble. For *sciendo*, *scindo* of the *inferiores* is probably correct in the meaning "divide," a reminiscence of Hor. C. i 1, 15, *carmina divides*. Of course he does not mean that he is rending apart an indefinite lyre; one must not torture poetry. He "tears" the strings in his emotion.

**5, 34** fundere et incomite miserum laudare dolorem

Incompte is undoubtedly correct for incomite after the analogy of incompta oratio in Cicero and Quintilian, and incompti versus in Virgil and Horace. Laudare is, I think, due to inlaudabile above it, and the extruded word must be dubious. Heinsius' saturare is supported by Th. vi 83, exsaturare dolorem.

**5, 35** sic merui sic me cantu habituque nefastum  
aspiciant superi

Sic merui occurs in Th. viii 102, but si merui in S. ii 1, 29 and elsewhere, whence Unger would have si here. Other words have been questioned and the passage is incoherent, yet, I think, sound: "Have I deserved? Should the gods," etc., is interrogative as Rothstein was the first to see.

**5, 38** ille ego qui quotiens blande matrumque patrumque

The only way to dispose of quotiens is to make it parenthetical, but there is no other case of such a use in the *Silvae*. I think that totiens should be read with the old vulgate, the qu being due to the preceding qui. Blande has been needlessly questioned by many; it is an appropriate word with vulnera.—In 39, vivos dolores means "lively" or "acute" pain; the change to viduos or veros is unnecessary. Vivos dolores looks backward to vulnera rather than forward to lugentum.

**5, 42** deficio medicasque manus fomentaque quaero  
vulneribus sed summa meis

Sumo is a common word in connection with medicine, and perhaps sumenda should replace sed summa, which is undoubtedly corrupt. Suma may have been written carelessly for sumenda and then sed inserted to fill out the line.—In 44, 45, quorum . . . pectora is parenthetical and no change of words is necessary.—In 46 and 47 I can add nothing: the statement is incoherent and the passage hopeless. It is most probable that there is a lacuna.



5, 52

tu me caligine maestu

obruis

The old correction *maestum* is most probable: i 4, 10, *questu* for *questum*; ii 6, 20, *Marone* for *Maronem*—both at the end of the verse. *Mersum*, of *Heinsius*, is too common with *caligine* to be corrupted into *mestu*. *Maesta* is not a proper epithet of *caligo* and hence is inadmissible.—In 53, *Politian's durus* for *duro* is correct: i 2, 82, *ego attonito* for *attonitus*.

5, 58

quisnam autem gemitus lamentaque nostra rependis

*Rependis* makes no sense and *reprendis* should be read with *Politian*; iii 4, 57, *gregres* for *greges*; iv 3, 63, *fragror* for *fragor*; i 4, 13, *noste* for *noster*. For the second person cf. ii 6, 1, *quisquis discrimina ponis*.

5, 63

flumina deiuneus

*Heinsius' detineas* is probably on paleographical grounds as the confusion of *t* and *i* and of *u* and *i* are both very common: *tura* for *iura* i 1, 107; *gradu* for *gradi* iii 3, 64.—In 68, *lingua nimium* makes good sense, but the corruption to *sumum* is not easy to explain.

5, 70

aspexi atque unctum genitali carmine fovi

*Aspexi* is difficult and *excepi* would agree with common usage, yet approval seems to be in the poet's thought: iii 4, 17, *placida quem fronte ministrum Iuppiter Ausonius pariter Romanaque Iuno Aspiciunt et uterque probant*. *Unctum* offends modern taste but is probably correct. *Genitali carmine* is inexplicable; it is inconceivable that at the moment of birth *Statius* stood by and recited a poem. Perhaps *carmine* was written carelessly for *tempore*: *Ov. Tr.* iii 13, 17, *genitale tempus*.

5, 74

dedi heu munera nostra

rideres ingatus

Either *heu* or *rideres* must be changed and *Politian's cum* seems preferable, as *Statius* elsewhere does not have *heu* in hiatus

with an ordinary word. For *ingatus* the old correction *ingratus* is best: Th. xii 75, *ingratum munus*; S. iii 3, 185, *muneris . . . ingrate*.

5, 80      *concupii primo gemitum qui protinus ortu  
implicuit fixitque mihi*

Non *cupii* is demanded by the sense: iii 5, 25, in *tantum* for *intactum*. *Gemitum* is used loosely for *luctum*: Th. iii 176, *inspexit gemitus*; Ach. i 68, *quos gemitus terris pelagoque daturus*.

5, 82      *monstravit questuque vulnera caeca ne solvam*

This is a very puzzling passage. *Questus* for *questu* can be defended by iv 3, 104, *ipso* for *ipsos*; iv 6, 65, *acie* for *acies*. Whether *resolvam* or *resolvens* should be read is doubtful. It does not seem necessary to change *vulnera* to *murmura* with Markland: v 1, 18, in *vulnere primo aegra domus questu*.

5, 83      *reptantemque solo demissus ad oscula vestra  
erexi blandoque sinu iam iamque  
excepere genas*

There is no parallel to *ad oscula vestra erexi*, and *vestra* does not make sense here. *Vestra oscula* occurs in Th. iii 151, and *nostra* should probably be read. In general may be compared Th. x 63, *lumine demisso pueri Iovis oscula libat*, and S. iii 3, 177, *prono fusum super oscula vultu*. *Blandoque sinu* seems justified by ii 7, 38, iii 1, 90, iv 4, 76, Ach. ii 93, and by verse 38 above. The missing word in 84 may have been *nitentes*, which occurs in iii 4, 65 and was read in the *Parmensis*. *Natantes* is supported by *maduere genae* in Th. vii 689 and by *manare genas* in S. ii 1, 122. *Excepere* is hopeless. There is deep corruption in these last eight lines and they have been left in a very unsatisfactory state by the editors. I regret, as did Markland, to close these studies with a confession of defeat; but all my predecessors have met the same fate, with and without confession, and even the copyists tacitly admit as much.

*Transmitted September 6, 1920.*

CICERO'S CONDITIONAL CLAUSES OF  
COMPARISON

BY

H. C. NUTTING

## I

The statements in several textbooks on the varied constructions that fall under the general designation "conditional clause of comparison" show considerable diversity as to the statement of facts, and still more in the theories advanced to explain the facts. The present study aims to shed some light upon this situation through careful scrutiny of all the cases in which Cicero uses *si* in any combination in a conditional clause of comparison.<sup>1</sup>

The principal problem, of course, is the matter of tense use, particularly the employment of the present and perfect subjunctive in cases where modern readers feel that a secondary tense would be more natural; and without making any extensive investigation, it is clear that Ciceronian usage shows marked variation

<sup>1</sup> In view of evident misunderstanding of the aim and method of an earlier paper in this series (Vol. V, No. 1), it should perhaps be explained that the writer is dissatisfied with the results of syntactical study that begins with a speculative "origin" and ends with an array of a few facts so marshalled as to appear to bear out the theory. It is certainly less spectacular and more toilsome to examine minutely all the data available in a given field; yet this is a method which reveals facts that can immediately be utilized with confidence, at the same time providing a sure foundation for later generalization. The present study is primarily a minute examination of Cicero's usage in a given construction, with some attempt to set the findings in their proper relation to certain other known facts. The contrasted method may be illustrated by Professor Hale's "Mode and Tense in the Subjunctive 'Comparative Clause' in Latin," *American Journal of Philology*, XIII, 62 ff.



according as the comparative word retains its identity (as in *quam si*), or merges with *si* into an inseparable compound (*quasi*).<sup>2</sup>

Recognizing this natural line of cleavage, the discussion may conveniently be introduced by contrasting examples of the extreme types characteristic of these two major groups, taking first a case in which the comparative word retains its identity; e.g.:

*Brut.* 85. 293: *Bella ironia, si iocaremur. Sin adseveramus, vide ne religio nobis tam adhibenda sit, quam si testimonium diceremus.*

In this example, the tense shift shows conclusively that the conditional clause of comparison is not in any sense "governed" by the first division of the sentence. For only on the assumption of a suppressed apodosis can the contrary to fact condition be explained: "Consider whether strict adherence to truth is not required quite as much as [it would be] if we *were giving* testimony under oath." As a matter of fact, the mood and tense of the verb in the *quam si* construction are chosen on exactly the same principle as if it were an entirely separate sentence.

Similar ellipsis of apodosis and tense shift are seen in the relative construction of the following passage:

*Acad. Prior.* ii. 39. 123: *Censet . . . eadem effici omnia, quae si stante terra caelum moveretur.*

This is part of a discussion of the question whether it is the earth or the sky that revolves: "He holds that all the same effects are produced that [would be] if it *were* the earth that stood still while the heavens revolved."<sup>3</sup>

The fact of ellipsis is so patent that it will suffice to cite here but one or two more instances:

<sup>2</sup> This fact is noted by J. Lebreton, *Études sur la langue et la grammaire de Cicéron*, p. 225. In an earlier article he gives copious illustrations, coupled with some critical remarks; see the *Revue de Philologie*, XXII, 274 ff.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *Tusc. Disp.* i. 24. 57 and ii. 7. 18. Such examples may be compared with others in which the relative construction is filled out; e.g.: *de Orat.* i. 35. 162: *Quin tu igitur facis idem . . . , quod faceres, si in aliquam domum plenam ornamentorum venisses?* Cf. also *ad Fam.* xv. 14. 4, where a condition is implicit in *coram*, and *Lael.* 16. 57, where *nostra causa* conceals a condition.

*ad Fam. xiii. 45: Tibi [negotia] commendo non minore studio, quam si rem meam commendarem.*

*de Re Pub. iii. 33. 45: Sed est tam tyrannus iste conventus, quam si esset unus.*<sup>4</sup>

In Cicero's writings, the single combination *quam si* shows nearly forty examples of suppressed apodosis formally marked by tense shift.

In the other major group (represented by *quasi*, in which the comparative word has merged with *si* to form an inseparable compound), the outstanding fact is a stubborn adherence to the use of the primary tenses of the subjunctive in cases where the modern reader feels a strong contrary to fact implication. And it is distinctly noteworthy that this implication is most sharply felt in examples in which the *quasi*-clause is so loosely attached that it is all but independent;<sup>5</sup> e.g.:

*Tusc. Disp. i. 36. 86: Metelli sperat sibi quisque fortunam; proinde quasi aut plures fortunati sint quam infelices, aut certi quicquam sit in rebus humanis!*

In this passage Cicero is arguing for the desirability of early death, on the ground that we are at all points exposed to the assaults of fortune, and few can hope to enjoy such prosperity as fell to the lot of Metellus. A contrary to fact implication in the *quasi*-clause seems inescapable; for the speaker's tone there is one of scornful rejection—he mentions the idea only to scout it as palpably false: "Every man in his own case counts upon the good fortune of Metellus; just as though the fortunate *out-numbered* the unfortunate, and as though there *were* such a thing as certainty in the affairs of men!" And compare also the following:

*Tusc. Disp. ii. 12. 29: Concludunt ratiunculas Stoici, cur [dolor] non sit malum; quasi de verbo, non de re laboretur!*

<sup>4</sup> In this connection there is an interesting passage in *Top. 3. 15: Non debet . . . . reficere, non magis quam servum restituere, si is, cuius usus fructus legatus esset, deperisset.* Here the two cases compared belong to such diverse categories that a part of the apodosis is necessarily expressed (*servum restituere*), though *deberet* is suppressed in the usual fashion.

<sup>5</sup> For here we cannot so easily fall back upon "sequence" as an explanation of the tense use.

Here the speaker represents himself as utterly out of patience with Stoic pettifoggery: "The Stoics spin sophistries to show that pain is not an evil; as though the trouble *were* a matter of terminology and not of fact!"

## II

In an attempt to solve the problem presented by the use of the primary tenses of the subjunctive in clauses where a contrary to fact implication is strongly felt, the textbook that has probably exerted the strongest influence in America in the formulation of opinion regarding the conditional clause of comparison resorts to the heroic expedient of denying contrary to fact implication to such clauses, advancing the counter proposal that the present and perfect subjunctive here really represent future conditions of the "less vivid" variety, with suppressed apodosis.<sup>6</sup>

Whatever the ultimate truth of the matter may be, the question cannot be settled on *a priori* grounds in this offhand fashion; and it is very easy to show that this particular suggestion does not accord with the facts. Thus, in the first place, we miss the very essence of the meaning of the *quasi*-clause in passages like those last cited, if we do not recognize the contrary to fact implication that is inherent in the speaker's scornful rejection of an idea as palpably false.

In the second place, that the outlook of the *quasi*-construction is not necessarily toward the future is shown conclusively by some of the examples in which the perfect tense is used;<sup>7</sup> e.g.:

*de Nat. Deo.* iii. 35. 86: Sic enim dicitis. *Quasi ego paulo ante de fundo Formiano P. Rutilii sim questus, non de amissa salute!*

Here again is felt the sharp contrary to fact implication that goes with the speaker's impatient rejection of an idea as obviously

<sup>6</sup> See the *New Latin Grammar* of Allen and Greenough, §524, note 2: "Similarly *quasi honeste vixerint*, as if they had lived honorably, is really as [they would do in the future] if they should have lived honorably, and so requires the perfect subjunctive."

<sup>7</sup> This point is noted by Hale also, *loc. cit.*, p. 62.



false; and *paulo ante* proves the time of *sim questus* to be past from the speaker's point of view. Note the similar effect of *priora* in the following passage:

*Phil. xiii. 19. 40: Pergit in me maledicta [iacere?] quasi vero ei pulcherrime priora processerint!*<sup>8</sup>

If further evidence is needed to establish the temporal force of the perfect subjunctive in cases like these, it is supplied by examples in which the perfect subjunctive has dependent upon it another clause which it throws into secondary sequence; e.g.:

*p. Mil. 7. 17: Hoc enim ab istis saepe dicitur; proinde quasi Appius ille Caecus viam muniverit, non qua populus uteretur, sed ubi impune sui posterius latrocinaerentur!*

Here the reference to Appius Claudius itself fixes the time of *muniverit* very clearly, and the imperfect subjunctives of the purpose clauses simply serve to reinforce the fact that the perfect subjunctive is functioning in a *past* condition.<sup>9</sup> Cf. also the following cases:

*p. Caec. 6. 16: . . . utitur; quasi vero . . . tum quisquam fuerit, qui dubitaret, quin. . . .*

*p. Sest. 28. 61: Quasi vero ille non in alias quoque leges, quas iniuste rogatas putaret, iam ante iuravit.*<sup>10</sup>

In the light of these facts there is no escape from the conclusion that the "less vivid future" theory is wholly inadequate to explain the tense use now under discussion.

The case is not so strong against the rival theory that the use of the present and perfect subjunctive in certain cases where the modern reader feels a contrary to fact implication may be explained as a survival of the early Latin use of those tenses (particularly the present) in the regular contrary to fact construc-

<sup>8</sup> Cf. also in *Verr. ii. 5. 66. 169; p. Clu. 50. 138; de Div. ii. 21. 48 and ii. 26. 56; and de Fato iii. 5.*

<sup>9</sup> For this same reason *muniverit* cannot be regarded as a case of *repraesentatio*. And any attempt to treat as a case of *futurum in praeterito* is futile; for this would not explain the tense (perfect), and it is this very tense use that the "less vivid future" theory is designed to elucidate.

<sup>10</sup> Cf. also. *p. Planc. 25. 61*, where one MS reads *triumpharent* in a clause dependent upon *quasi . . . ceperint*.

tion.<sup>11</sup> It is quite true that in Plautus' plays a character may excuse himself from making a loan by the use of the formula *si habeam, dem*, the reply of the hearer showing plainly that he understands the sentence as contrary to fact.<sup>12</sup> And this is matched naturally enough in the conditional clause of comparison; e.g.:

Plautus, *Aul.* 719: . . . . *sedent quasi sint fungi.*

Plautus, *Asin.* 427: *Tamquam si claudus sim, cum fustist ambulandum.*

The contrary to fact implication of the first of these examples lies on the surface. The other sentence is the plaint of a man whose slaves require so much flogging that he must always carry a stick, just as if he *were* lame.

Whether archaic usage in the regular contrary to fact construction exerted any influence upon the tense use in Cicero's conditional clauses of comparison is very problematical. Certainly the burden of proof lies with those who so maintain; and no proof at all is offered. On the other hand, in the absence of proof, it would be wholly natural to assume that when the primary tenses of the subjunctive in the regular contrary to fact construction gave way in favor of the secondary tenses,<sup>13</sup> any parallel construction in the conditional clause of comparison would follow suit.<sup>14</sup> That this actually does happen in many cases is indicated by examples already cited; e.g.:

*de Re Pub.* iii. 33. 45: *Sed est tam tyrannus iste conventus, quam si esset unus.*

Obviously something still remains to be explained regarding the great frequency with which Cicero uses the primary tenses of the subjunctive in conditional clauses of comparison in which the modern reader feels a strong contrary to fact implication.

<sup>11</sup> Cf. Harkness, *Complete Latin Grammar*, §584, 3.

<sup>12</sup> For a full discussion of this matter, see the *American Journal of Philology*, XXII, 297 ff.

<sup>13</sup> On the details of this shift in the regular conditional sentence, see the *American Journal of Philology*, XXVIII, 1 ff.

<sup>14</sup> Cf. Hale, *loc. cit.*, p. 63.

## III

It is proposed, therefore, to take up in order the various combinations in which *si* is used in conditional clauses of comparison, with a view to discovering any evidence bearing upon this vexed question of tense usage.

As a preliminary to such detailed study, it is necessary to speak here of a peculiar flavor that very often attaches itself to phrases introduced by *quasi*, namely, a suggestion of pretense or (false) assumption. This is very noticeable, from Plautus onward; and it is not by any means confined to sentences in which *quasi* functions in phrases that can with certainty be classified as conditional clauses of comparison. Thus, in Plautus a *quasi*-clause is frequently used in connection with verbs like *simulo* in situations where one person is instructing another how to carry through a piece of deception; e.g.:

*Mil.* 1181: *Adsimulato quasi gubernator sies.*

In this combination the conditional idea does not stand out very clearly, the general meaning of the passage being: "Pretend that you are the pilot." Better still is the following example, in which indirect discourse with *simulo* merges into the *quasi*-construction:

*Mil.* 796 ff.:

Ut simulet se tuam esse uxorem et deperire hunc militem:  
*Quasique hunc anulum faveae suae dederit, ea porro mihi,*  
*Militi ut darem; quasique ego rei sim interpretes.*

In regard to this particular construction, it may be noted in passing that it foreshadows the Silver Latin use of *quasi* in subordinate subjunctive clauses giving an alleged ground, or the substance of a person's thought or speech; e.g.:

Suetonius, *Aug.* 11: *Pansae quidem adeo suspecta mors fuit, ut Glyco medicus custoditus sit, quasi venenum vulneri indidisset.*

Suetonius, *Tib.* 11: *Sed increbrescente rumore quasi ad occasionem maioris spei commoraretur, tantum non adversis tempestatibus Rhodum enavigavit.*



In the first of these sentences, the *quasi*-clause is about equivalent to *quod* with the subjunctive; in the other, it is a substitute for the infinitive construction of indirect discourse. Both examples involve an assumption. But it is not clearly implied that the assumption was false, and still less that there was any pretense involved.

To return to Plautus, it was suggested above that the combination *simulo quasi* probably does not mark a true conditional clause of comparison. Yet how faint the line is that separates the two constructions may be seen in the following sentence, in which the order of clauses is reversed:

*Amph.* 198 ff.:

Si dixero mendacium, solens meo more fecero;  
Nam quom pugnabant maxume, ego tum fugiebam maxume.  
Verum *quasi adfuerim* tamen simulabo atque audita eloquar.

A slave returning from abroad is preparing to cover up his cowardice in the face of the enemy by a *pretense* (note *mendacium* and *simulabo*). But it is not so easy here to assign to *quasi* the meaning "that"; for its leading position in the sentence, together with the obvious opposition to *tum fugiebam*, can hardly fail to suggest the feeling that this is a real conditional clause of comparison with contrary to fact implication.

In varying degree and with different shadings, this implication of pretense or (false) assumption everywhere comes to the surface with *quasi* in undoubted instances of the conditional clause of comparison; e.g.:

Plautus, *Aul.* 369: Sed verba hic facio, *quasi negoti nil siet*.

With these words the speaker chides himself for behavior that might seem to rest upon the (false) assumption that he has no business to transact. So in the Ciceronian period, as shown by the examples already cited; e.g.:

*Tusc. Disp.* ii. 12. 29: Concludunt ratiunculas Stoici, cur [dolor] non sit malum; *quasi* de verbo, non de re *laboretur*!

Of this case it was said above that the speaker's tone is one of scornful rejection; it should now be added that it is scornful rejection of a view ascribed to the Stoics.

This peculiarity of meaning on the part of the *quasi*-clause is worthy the most careful attention; for, as will be shown a little later, it probably contributes substantially to the explanation of the peculiar tense use in that construction.

#### IV

In taking up the Ciceronian material<sup>15</sup> in detail, it seems simplest to begin with one of the combinations in which the comparative word retains its identity intact:

##### 1. QUAM SI. 107 CASES CONSIDERED<sup>15</sup>

The examples included under this head fall into two main groups, according as *quam si* means "than if," or "as if." The first of these groups is far the larger.

##### A. THE "THAN IF" GROUP. 84 CASES CONSIDERED

##### a. SECONDARY TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. 61 CASES CONSIDERED

Examples using the secondary tenses of the subjunctive are first to be examined, for the reason that they stand in sentences where a coördinate conditional clause of comparison with suppressed apodosis often automatically reveals itself; e.g.:

*de Fin.* v. 20. 56: Quin ne bestiae quidem, quas . . . . concludimus, cum *copiosius* alantur *quam si essent* liberae, facile patiuntur.

*ad Att.* v. 20. 7: *Uberiores* (litterae) erunt, *quam si* ex Amano *misisssem*.

Sentences of this type need little further comment. Except for suppression of apodosis, the *quam si* construction embodies a normal and regular contrary to fact conditional sentence, phrased from the speaker's point of view and in no wise dependent upon or affected by the first division of the sentence.

The type is very clearly accentuated when the verb of the first division refers to the future, as in the second of the examples

<sup>15</sup> This total includes all cases in which the collocation *quam si* is found. Among them are a few that are open to question or objection on grounds that will be indicated as the discussion progresses.

just cited.<sup>16</sup> In the case next to follow, the deliberate choice of the imperfect tense is striking and significant, inasmuch as the present subjunctive would have yielded a very satisfactory sense:

*ad Att. xii. 51. 1: Venit etiam Nicias, et Valerium hodie audiebam esse venturum. Quamvis multi sint, magis tamen ero solus, quam si unus esses.*

Much more difficult of analysis are examples in which the first division of the sentence contains a verb of past signification; for in such cases an imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive in the *quam si* construction does not automatically tell its story. But even here it is sometimes possible to demonstrate ellipsis and coördination very satisfactorily; e.g.:

*in Verr. ii. 2. 10. 27: Cohors tota illa, quae plus mali Siciliae dedit, quam si centum cohortes fugitivorum fuissent.*

In this passage Cicero is speaking of the rapacious following that Verres took with him into Sicily. Had the tense of the *quam si* construction been chosen with reference to *dedit* of the first division of the sentence, the *imperfect* subjunctive would have been in order, as the time is contemporaneous. The choice of the pluperfect tense seems to mean that the clause is phrased as a past contrary to fact from the point of view of the speaker's present. Cf. also the following:

*de Re Pub. iv. 10. 11: Sed Pericles . . . violari versibus . . . non plus decuit, quam si Plautus . . . noster voluisset . . . Gnaeo Scipioni . . . male dicere.*

*p. Planc. 27. 66: Sed ea res, iudices, haud scio an plus mihi profuerit, quam si tum essent omnes gratulati.*

In the first of these passages the younger Africanus is represented as commenting upon the freedom with which the ancient Greek dramatists attacked the politicians of their day. From the point of view of *decuit*, the pluperfect subjunctive of the conditional clause would necessarily refer to a time antecedent to the age of Pericles; but everything fits perfectly if the *quam si* construction is interpreted as a past contrary to fact, phrased from the point of view of the speaker's present. In the other example,

<sup>16</sup> So in *de Off. iii. 9. 38*, where the present subjunctive in the first division of the sentence has future force.



it is interesting to note that *tum* marks the time both as contemporaneous with *profuerit*, and as antecedent from the point of view of the speaker's present. But the verb is not thus ambiguous; for the choice of the pluperfect tense again betrays the past contrary to fact phrased from the speaker's point of view.<sup>17</sup>

Altogether, of the 61 cases of *quam si* "than if" with secondary tenses of the subjunctive, 36 are demonstrably elliptical and coördinate. For those not already cited, it will be sufficient to give references merely.<sup>18</sup>

The remaining 25 examples using the secondary tenses of the subjunctive with *quam si* "than if" conform, on the surface, to the law of sequence. But it is by no means certain that this is everywhere or in most cases the true explanation of the tense use; e.g.:

*Orat.* 48. 162: *Haec dixi brevius, quam si hac de re una disputarem.*

*p. Scaur.* 16. 37: *Quamquam ea, quae dixi, non secus dixi, quam si eius frater essem.*

*p. Balb.* 10. 26: *Nihilo enim magis uteremur iis adiutoribus, sublatis virtutis praemiis, quam si omnino iis versari in nostris bellis non liceret.*

In all three of these examples it would easily be possible to interpret the *quam si* construction as a coördinate present contrary to fact, phrased from the speaker's point of view. For, as regards the first two cases, it should be remembered that a "present" contrary to fact often extends well into the speaker's past.<sup>19</sup> And, in the remaining example, the first division of the sentence

<sup>17</sup> So *ad Att.* vii. 1. 7, and *de Leg.* ii. 22. 56 (text conjectural).

<sup>18</sup> Imperfect tense: *de Orat.* iii. 13. 49; *in Verr.* ii. 3. 91. 213; *p. Tull.* 12. 30 (supplying a present indicative in the first division of the sentence); *p. Caec.* 23. 64; *p. Clu.* 40. 112; *de Leg. Agr.* ii. 25. 67; *de Har. Resp.* 18. 39 (another reading is *habueris*); *p. Balb.* 3. 8; *in Pis.* 41. 99; *ad Fam.* vi. 4. 3 (*obiecti* as adj.), xii. 29. 2, xiii. 14. 2, xiii. 45, xv. 14. 3; *ad Att.* v. 21. 14, xii. 13. 1; *Acad. Prior.* ii. 18. 58 (variously emended); *de Fin.* iii. 3. 44, iii. 14. 48 (*etiam tum* of the present, as in Plautus, *Pers.* 356); *de Leg.* iii. 10. 23.

Pluperfect tense: *Top.* 3. 15, *post red. ad Quir.* 1. 4; *ad Fam.* v. 16. 3; *ad Quint. Frat.* ii. 13. 2; *ad Att.* vii. 17. 2, ix. 19. 2; *Parad.* iii. 1. 20.

<sup>19</sup> E.g., the statement "He is not my brother" holds for a considerable range of time—past as well as present; and the same is true of the "present" contrary to fact "If he were my brother." For further discussion of this detail, see the *American Journal of Philology*, XXI, 260 ff.

is itself contrary to fact, so that it is wholly natural to carry the same strain through to the end of the sentence: "[If no reward of valor were within their reach], we should no more receive help from these allies than [would be the case] if they *were* altogether prohibited from taking part in our wars."

Yet, with reference to the two cases first cited above, it might be urged that the imperfect subjunctive is chosen to represent the activity or state as contemporaneous with that of the other division of the sentence; and as for the third case, it could be argued that a present subjunctive in the *quam si* construction would have given an excellent sense; hence, possibly, the use of the imperfect tense there is a sign of mechanical leveling, due to the form of the other division of the sentence.<sup>20</sup>

Consequently, though the *quam si* construction in all the above cases probably represents a coördinate construction phrased from the point of view of the speaker's present, in order to avoid any appearance of forcing an interpretation, the examples are classed as indeterminate. With regard to the two following there is perhaps more room for doubt:

*p. Sest. 12. 28: Exanimatus evolat<sup>21</sup> ex senatu non minus perturbato animo atque vultu quam si annis ante paucis in creditorum conventum incidisset.*

*ad Att. xiv. 10. 1: Itane vero? Hoc meus . . . Brutus egit, ut . . . omnia facta, scripta, dicta . . . Caesaris plus valerent, quam si ipse viveret?*

Here again it gives an excellent sense to interpret the *quam si* clauses as coördinate contrary to fact phrased from the speaker's point of view.<sup>22</sup> But *annis ante paucis* of the first passage establishes an antecedent relation to the other division of the sentence;<sup>23</sup> and, in the second, it is possible that the conditional clause of comparison is an integral part of the *ut*-construction, the imperfect subjunctive being used to mark contemporaneous action.

<sup>20</sup> Cf. the frequent treatment of a general truth in like situation.

<sup>21</sup> Historical present.

<sup>22</sup> For *viveret* may be another instance of the "present" contrary to fact that extends into the speaker's past. Cf. footnote 19.

<sup>23</sup> Hence the test above applied to *de Re Pub. iv. 10. 11* here fails.

The other examples classed as indeterminate are as follows: *p. Quinct.* 5. 19, *p. Cael.* 27. 64, *p. Planc.* 25. 60, *ad Fam.* iii. 6. 2 (perhaps *futurum in praeterito*) and vii. 3. 5, and *de Off.* iii. 27. 100.

There still remain for discussion 14 cases using the secondary tenses of the subjunctive. In one of these there is rather clear evidence of mechanical leveling:

*ad Att.* vi. 5. 1: *Quam diu afuisti, magis a me abesse videbare, quam si domi esses.*

The letter from which this sentence is quoted opens with the words: *Nunc quidem profecto Romae es.* Hence *esses* refers to a time that is past from the viewpoint of the speaker; and a co-ordinate contrary to fact construction would seem to call for *fuisses*. It appears, therefore, that *esses* is an integral part of the indirect discourse, and under the law of sequence.

At the same time, it should be noted that the opposition of *afuisti* precludes the elimination of the past contrary to fact idea, also that the feeling for suppressed apodosis is unimpaired. The incongruity involved in this blend of conflicting circumstances is neatly paralleled in a conditional clause of comparison in which the apodosis is expressed, and the condition is implicit in an adjective:

*Acad. Prior.* ii. 28. 89: *Hercules, cum . . . uxorem interimebat, cum conabatur etiam patrem, non perinde movebatur falsis, ut veris moveretur?*

In this passage, the comparison in sense is clearly a co-ordinate contrary to fact, as the antithesis *falsis . . . veris* shows: "Was he not just as profoundly affected by illusions as he *would have been* by actual facts?" Yet the *ut*-clause is mechanically leveled as if subordinate.<sup>24</sup>

The above example introduced by *quam si* therefore differs from those classed as indeterminate in that in it the leveling effect

<sup>24</sup> In his note on this passage, Reid refers to a comment on §75, where he accepts the easy doctrine "imperfect for pluperfect, as so often in Cicero in conditional sentences" (on this point see the *American Journal of Philology*, XXVIII, 153 ff.).



of sequence is demonstrable. The remaining 13 cases are examples of *futurum in praeterito*; and they might all be passed as indeterminate, in that this particular construction has a fixed and predetermined form, so that nothing can be learned from the tense use *per se*. But there are two factors that make for a more or less mechanical type of subordination, and it may be worth while to point these out:

*p. Clu.* 31. 86: Verum alia causa tum Staieni fuit, alia nunc, Acci, tua est. Ille, cum re premeretur, quodcumque diceret, *honestius* diceret, *quam si*, quod erat factum, *fateretur*.

The case of Staienus involved a question as to certain funds placed in his hands for purposes of corruption. Of the courses open to Staienus at that time, Cicero says: "Any explanation that he gave would disgrace him less than if he should admit the actual fact."

As involving the *futurum in praeterito*, the *quam si* clause is necessarily phrased from the point of view of the time indicated by the other division of the sentence; but, in addition, it seems to portray the vista that opened up before the mind of Staienus. So far as this is true, it introduces into the sentence a unifying element, which might smooth the way for the operation of the law of sequence, somewhat as that law operates in indirect discourse; and it is worthy of note that nine of the cases in question are as a matter of fact involved in indirect discourse governed by a verb of thinking or the like, namely: *de Orat.* ii. 49. 200; *in Verr.* ii. 1. 27. 69, ii. 2. 17. 42, ii. 2. 66. 160, ii. 2. 67. 161, ii. 5. 43. 113; *ad Fam.* iii. 6. 1; *ad Att.* vii. 9. 1. and ix. 9. 4.

Five of the 13 instances have a peculiarity that looks toward subordination from another angle; e.g.:

*de Div.* ii. 1. 1: Quaerenti mihi . . . . quanam re possem prodesse quam plurimis . . . ., nulla [*res*] maior occurrebat, *quam si* optimarum artium vias *traderem* meis civibus.

In this case, the condition is a substantive *si*-clause. Note how *si* . . . . *traderem* balances *nulla [res]* of the other division of the sentence: "No better *course* suggested itself than *imparting*

to my fellow citizens, etc.<sup>25</sup> In this connection the important point is that, with the substantive use of the *si*-clause, the notion of suppressed apodosis tends to fade out; and, with the elimination of that element, the whole *quam si* construction would naturally incline toward attachment to the other division of the sentence in a subordinate relation; for otherwise the fading out of the notion of suppressed apodosis leaves the *si*-clause without any point of support.

The substantive use of the *si*-clause in general is common enough, though it is accorded little recognition in the textbooks. Its nature can most effectively be illustrated by setting it side by side with examples of other kinds of substantive clause; e.g.:

Livy xxi. 10. 4: *Viamque unam ad id cernentem, si . . . succinctus armis vivat* ("and seeing but *one road* to this, namely, *if he live* in the midst of arms").

Livy xxxvi. 27. 8: *Haec una via omnibus ad salutem visa est, ut in fidem se permitterent Romanorum* ("all thought this *the one road* to safety, namely, *that they put themselves* under the protection of the Romans").

p. Sest. 67. 137: *Haec est una via . . . et laudis . . . et honoris, a bonis viris . . . laudari et diligi, nosse discriptionem civitatis . . .* ("This is *the one road* to praise and honor, namely, *to win the praise and love* of the good," etc.).

By comparison of these sentences it will be seen that the "one road" is defined equally by the *si*-clause of the first, the *ut*-clause of the second, and the infinitives of the third. The following passage is of interest as employing two of these devices side by side:

de Off. iii. 13. 55: *Quid vero est stultius quam venditorem eius rei quam vendat vitia narrare? Quid autem tam absurdum, quam si domini iussu ita praeco praedicet: "Domum pestilentem vendo"?*

Here, surely, the notion of suppressed apodosis is hardly more in evidence with the *si*-clause than it is with the infinitive.<sup>25</sup>

The four other examples of the substantive type of *futurum* in *praeterito* with *quam si* are given below; note in each case how

<sup>25</sup> For a fuller discussion of the substantive *si*-clause, see *Classical Philology*, III, 178 ff.

the conditional clause balances a *notūn* expression (*ullo modo, nihil, and nulla ratione*) ; e.g. :

*ad Att.* viii. 9. 1: Non videbar *ullo modo* facilius [eum] moturus, *quam si* id, quod eum hortarer, convenire eius sapientiae *dicerem*.

*de Orat.* ii. 49. 200: . . . . tum admiscere huic generi orationis . . . . genus illud alterum . . . . coepi; me pro meo sodali . . . . discernere, *nihil* mihi ad existimationem turpius . . . . accidere posse, *quam si* . . . . sodali meo auxilium ferre non *potuissem*.<sup>26</sup>

*de Nat. Deo.* i. 4. 9: Ea vero ipsa *nulla ratione* melius frui potui, *quam si* me non modo ad legendos libros, sed etiam ad totam philosophiam pertractandam *dedissem*.

The remaining instance of *futurum in praeterito* not already cited is *p. Clu.* 62. 173.

This completes the consideration of the 61 cases of *quam si* "than if" with the secondary tenses of the subjunctive. The majority of the examples were found to be clearly coördinate and contrary to fact, phrased from the point of view of the speaker's present and quite uninfluenced by the form of the other division of the sentence. Indeterminate instances are not uncommon ; but only one example was noted in which the leveling effect of sequence is demonstrable. The 13 cases of *futurum in praeterito* proceed according to the regular rules for that construction, showing some features which might make for mechanical subordination. Throughout the group there is noticeable absence of the notion of pretense or (false) assumption that is so prevalent in *quasi*-clauses.

#### b. PRIMARY TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. 23 CASES CONSIDERED

Compared with the group just discussed, the number of examples here is very small ; and some of these are doubtful. In the first place, it is not always clear that forms in *-erit* and the like are really subjunctive; e.g. :

*de Off.* iii. 24. 93: *Honestius* mentietur, si ex hereditate nihil ceperit, *quam si* ceperit.

Here there can be little doubt, in the light of *mentietur*, that the first *ceperit* is indicative ; and it looks very much as though this

<sup>26</sup> So *ad Fam.* iii. 6. 1.



was true also of the other that balances it.<sup>27</sup> In three other cases there is at least serious ambiguity:

*ad Att.* ix. 10. 8: Tum poterimus deliberare, non scilicet integra re, sed certe minus infracta, *quam si una proieceris te.*

*p. Flacc.* 38. 95: Quam potestis P. Lentulo . . . mactare victimam *gratiorem quam si* L. Flacci sanguine illius . . . odium saturaveritis?

*Parad.* iii. 2. 23: Quae vis est enim, quae *magis* arceat homines ab improbitate omni, *quam si senserint* nullum in delictis esse discrimen.<sup>28</sup>

In the second place, there are four examples showing the combination *quam si* "than if," which probably are not strictly conditional clauses of comparison. Two have the collocation *extra quam si*, which appears to be merely a heavy periphrasis for *nisi*; and in the others *si* combines with *quis* to form an indefinite relative:

*de Invent.* ii. 57. 172: Ut cibo [homines] utantur non necesse est, nisi cum illa exceptione "*extra quam si nolint fame perire.*"

*de Re Pub.* i. 6. 10: . . . negant sapientem suscepturum ullam rei publicae partem, *extra quam si* . . . necessitas coegerit?

*p. Tull.* 22. 51: Quis est, cui *magis* ignosci conveniat, . . . *quam si quis* quem imprudens occiderit?

*p. Mil.* 7. 17: Nisi forte *magis* erit parricida, si qui consularem patrem, *quam si quis* humilem necarit.

To these eight doubtful cases must be added a ninth in which there is an impossible reading:

*de Fin.* iii. 9. 31: Quid autem *apertius, quam si* selectio nulla sit ab eis rebus . . . , tollatur omnis ea, quae quaeratur . . . , prudentia?

No satisfactory emendation has been proposed for this passage. Perhaps *ut* has fallen out before *tollatur*.<sup>29</sup> In any event the *si*-clause plays a secondary rôle in the passage, and it is not the principal in a conditional clause of comparison.

<sup>27</sup> Cf. the use of the future perfect indicative in *de Fin.* iv. 26. 72 (paratiorem me ad contemnendam pecuniam fore, si illam in rebus praepositis, *quam si* in bonis duxero).

<sup>28</sup> Whatever the mood, this last example suggests strongly the substantive use of the *si*-clause.

<sup>29</sup> Cf. *Lael.* 14. 50, where an *ut*-clause is made to depend upon the adjective *verus*; so *ibid.* 4. 14, and *Tusc. Disp.* v. 11. 33.

Of the original 23 possible cases of primary tenses of the subjunctive with *quam si* "than if" there remain 14 to be considered. One of these is a quotation from Terence:<sup>30</sup>

*Tusc. Disp.* iv. 35. 76:

Incerta haec si tu postules  
Ratione certa facere, nihilo *plus* agas,  
*Quam si des* operam, ut cum ratione insanias.

This appears to be an example of the coördinate type, *si des* being a vague future condition, with suppressed apodosis. At any rate the sentence opens with such a condition,<sup>31</sup> and it is altogether likely that the balancing *si*-clause is of the same nature. The following case also should probably be analyzed in the same way:

*de Nat. Deo.* iii. 32. 79: Nam si stultitia . . . . *maius* est malum  
*quam si* omnia mala . . . . ex altera parte *ponantur*, . . . . in summis  
malis omnes sumus.

This analysis is favored by the parallel afforded by certain pure conditional sentences; e.g.:

*Phil.* ix. 5. 10: Omnes . . . ., *si* unum in locum *conferantur*, cum  
Ser. Sulpicio non sint comparandi.

The remaining cases are indeterminate. Note, however, that in the second of those cited below the *si*-clause verges toward the substantive use:

*de Leg.* ii. 5. 13: . . . . quae non *magis* legis nomen attingunt,  
*quam si* latrones aliquas consessu suo *sanxerint*?

*de Invent.* ii. 45. 133: Oportet . . . . [dicere] hoc, quod faciat,  
*indignius* . . . . esse, *quam si* ascribat.<sup>32</sup>

This group as a whole contributes little to the discussion beyond slightly emphasizing the fact that *quam si* "than if" inclines to the coördinate type of conditional clause of comparison.

<sup>30</sup> *Eunuchus*, 61 ff.

<sup>31</sup> The context seems to show that the subject of the verb is not the indefinite second singular.

<sup>32</sup> The other cases are in *Verr.* ii. 4. 60. 134; in *Cat.* ii. 10. 21; *p. Planc.* 12. 28; *p. Scaur.* 16. 36; *Phil.* xi. 11. 26; *ad Fam.* xi. 17. 2; *ad Quint. Frat.* i. 2. 4. 14; *de Fin.* ii. 26. 84, ii. 27. 87, and v. 1. 2; all being in indirect discourse, with two or three examples of the substantive use of the *si*-clause.

## B. THE "AS IF" GROUP. 23 CASES CONSIDERED

## a. SECONDARY TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. 10 CASES CONSIDERED

Small as is their total, the examples under this heading reveal a very important distinction. For both degree and manner are covered by "as if" (e.g., "as great as if" vs. "like as if").

a. *Expressing Degree*

In expressions of degree, cases of "as if" have a very close affinity for the "than if" group. Indeed, at one point the two almost merge; e.g.:

*ad Fam. xiii. 45: Tibi [negotia] commendo non minore studio, quam si rem meam commendarem.*

Literally, this is a case of the "than if" variety. Yet, on the principle of litotes, *non minore studio* is logically equivalent to something like *tam studiose*, with which *quam si* would become "as if."<sup>33</sup>

There are three cases of "as if" expressing degree; and in their syntax they accord exactly with that of the "than if" group:

*Orat. 24. 82: Hoc ornamento liberius paulo quam ceteris utetur hic summissus, nec tam licenter tamen, quam si genere dicendi uteretur amplissimo.*

*de Re Pub. iii. 33. 45: Sed est tam tyrannus iste conventus, quam si esset unus.*

*Brut. 85. 293: Bella ironia, si iocaremur; sin adseveramus, vide ne religio nobis tam adhibenda sit quam si testimonium diceremus.*

In all these examples the shift to the secondary tense of the subjunctive automatically stamps the use as coördinate, with suppressed apodosis.

In the last case cited *tam* has no adjective or adverb to modify; and while it adds a little to the point of the remark to understand the word as expressing degree, yet the case is near the line and forms a natural transition to "as if" in manner expressions.

<sup>33</sup> Cf. *p. Sest. 12. 28 (non minus)*; *p. Cael. 27. 64 (qui minus)*; *in Pis. 41. 99 (nec minus)*; *p. Planc. 25. 60 (nihilominus)*; *p. Scaur. 16. 37 (non secus)*; *ad Fam. vii. 3. 5 (non incommodiore)*; and *ad Att. xii. 13. 1 (non difficilius)*.



*β. Expressing Manner*

On this side of the line three examples by tense shift automatically stamp the conditional clause of comparison as coördinate; e.g.:

*p. Sulla* 13. 39: hoc perspicuum est . . . . *eandem* esse vim negationis huius, *quam si* extra coniurationem hunc esse se scire *dixisset*.<sup>34</sup>

*de Div.* ii. 64. 131: *Similes* enim sunt dei, si ea nobis obiciunt, quorum nec scientiam neque explanatorem habeamus, *tamquam si* Poeni aut Hispani in senatu nostro *loquerentur* sine interprete.

These cases require no comment beyond calling attention to the fact that the conditional clauses of comparison are balanced by *idem* and *similis* in the other division of the sentence. As will appear with the progress of the discussion, this balance is a common concomitant of the coördinate use.

The four other examples in this group have in the first division of the sentence a verb form of past signification, and the choice of tense in the conditional clause of comparison sheds no light on the nature of the usage. But closer inspection discloses a tendency toward functional subordination:

*ad Quint. Frat.* iii. 2. 2: Omnes, *tamquam si* tu *esses*, *ita fuerunt*.

Here the imperfect subjunctive seems to be written from the point of view of *fuerunt*; for a coördinate contrary to fact construction phrased from the speaker's point of view would naturally call for the use of the pluperfect.<sup>35</sup> This may be merely a case of mechanical leveling;<sup>36</sup> but an added element is clearly manifest in the following example:

*p. Sex. Rosc.* 32. 91; Qui, *tamquam si* *offusa* rei publicae sempiterna nox *esset*, *ita* ruebant in tenebris omniaque miscebant.

In this passage there is at least a trace of the implication of pretense or (false) assumption so frequently associated with the use

<sup>34</sup> Of just the same sort is *de Leg. Agr.* 2. 12. 30 (potestatem . . . . *eandem* constituit *quam si*).

<sup>35</sup> By using "though" for "if" in one case, these contrasted points of view may be illustrated as follows:

(1) He answered as boldly as though he *were* himself a king;  
(2) He answered as boldly as if he *had been* a king himself.

<sup>36</sup> Cf. the single case under *quam si* "than if" in which mechanical leveling seems demonstrable (*ad Att.* vi. 5. 1).

of *quasi*. Cicero seems to say that, while Sulla was busy with other things, his minions improved the opportunity to run amuck, *taking it for granted that* there was no danger of discovery. So far as this is true, the thought nexus is distinctly favorable to functional subordination.<sup>37</sup> The other two examples follow:

*Phil. ii. 41. 106: Qui cum essent devii, descenderunt, ut istum, tamquam si esset, consulem salutarent.*

*Part. Orat. 38. 134: Quid impedierit scriptorem quo minus exciperet illud, quod adversarius, tamquam si exceptum esset, ita se dicit secutum?*

Here, too, may be felt the same coloring of assumption on the part of persons indicated in the other division of the sentence.<sup>38</sup>

In the "as if" group there are also some formal marks that should not be passed over without notice. Thus, in cases where *quam si* "as if" indicates degree, *tam* is separated from *quam*; whereas in cases in which it refers to manner, *tam* and *quam* are brought into juxtaposition, making it possible to write *tamquam si*. The tendency toward functional subordination shown by the last mentioned cases suggests the analogy of the conditional clauses of comparison introduced by *tamquam* without *si*, which form a rather numerous group of a distinctly subordinate type, as will be shown later.<sup>39</sup>

Again, as to form, it is worth noting that in the four cases in which *tamquam si* shows evidence of subordination the clause does not follow the other division of the sentence, but is interlocked with it, as often happens with the *cum*-construction and other subordinate subjunctive clauses. To this arrangement may be due the resumptive *ita* found in three of the examples.

<sup>37</sup> Under *quam si* "than if" it was pointed out that the *futurum in praeterito* cases favored mechanical subordination, because of the fact that the situation was represented as viewed by persons indicated in the other division of the sentence. Here the conditions look toward functional subordination; first, because of the elimination of the awkward bar presented by *quam* "than"; second, because the notion of pretense or (false) assumption does not pervade the sentence, but enters the thought complex at just the right juncture to attach itself to the words introducing the conditional clause of comparison; and, third, perhaps the specific color (i.e., of pretense or the like) helps to form a basis for crystallization.

<sup>38</sup> All the more so in *Phil. ii. 41. 106* with the variant reading: *tamquam si esset consul*.

<sup>39</sup> Page 242, note 111.

## b. PRIMARY TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. 13 CASES CONSIDERED

a. *Expressing Degree*

Of the ten examples under this head, one must be rejected at the start:

*de Dom. Sua* 12. 33: Quid est . . . tam stultum quam, si quis quid in vestris libris invenerit, id narrare vobis . . . ?

Here the comparison is between *Quid* and the infinitive (*narrare*), and the *si*-clause is a mere modifier; hence the case does not fall within the scope of the conditional clause of comparison.

In at least three cases the mood of the verb may be called in question:

*p. Caec.* 20. 58: *Tam* restitues, si tuus me libertus deiecerit, . . . quam si procurator deiecerit.

*Ibid.*: *Tam* restitues, si unus servulus, quam si familia fecerit universa.

*ad Att.* viii. 16. 2: Quicquid mali hic Pisistratus non fecerit, tam gratum erit, quam si alium facere prohibuerit.

If these forms in *-erit* are indicative, of course they shed no light on the main problem of this paper.<sup>40</sup>

The six remaining cases in expressions of degree are in their form strikingly like the similar group using the secondary tenses. *Tam* is everywhere separated from *quam*; and in every case the *quam si* construction follows the other division of the sentence:

*de Nat. Deo.* i. 35. 97: An quicquam tam puerile dici potest, quam si ea genera beluarum . . . nulla esse dicamus?

*de Off.* iii. 13. 55: Quid autem [est] tam absurdum quam si domini iussu ita praeco praedicet: "Domum pestilentem vendo"?

*de Re Pub.* i. 34. 51: *Tam* cito evertetur, quam navis, si e vectoribus sorte ductus ad gubernacula accesserit.

*de Off.* i. 7. 23: Qui autem non defendit nec obsistit, si potest, iniuriae, tam est in vitio, quam si parentes aut amicos aut patriam deserat.

*p. Caec.* 31. 89: Interpretabere, cum . . . eo . . . tu restitui sis iussus, tam te in aedes tuas restitui oportere, si e vestibulo, quam si ex interiore aedium parte deiectus sis.

*ad Fam.* xvi. 5. 1: Xenomenes hospes tam te diligit, quam si vixerit tecum.

<sup>40</sup> In the case last cited, if the correct reading is *est* (rather than *erit*), the verb in the conditional clause is probably a subjunctive, perhaps with suggestion of functional subordination.



In general, these examples are indeterminate in form. Yet, on the analogy of cases using the secondary tenses, it would not be unreasonable to assume that at least some of them are of the coördinate type, with conditions of the vague future variety. In fact, the coördinate character of the third case in the list is shown automatically by the circumstance that a part of the apodosis (*navis*) is expressed.

On the other hand, the *si*-clauses in the two examples first cited verge toward the substantive use, with which the notion of suppressed apodosis easily becomes vague; and the last case in the list presents, perhaps, an example of mechanical leveling. At any rate the thought seems to require a coördinate contrary to fact, and nothing points to functional subordination.

The analysis of the fifth case in the list is made difficult by the fact of indirect discourse. The three cases at the end are brought together because *tam* there does not modify an adjective or adverb; hence degree is not so clearly indicated, and a natural transition to the manner group is thus provided.

### *β. Expressing Manner*

*p. Caec.* 21. 61: Non enim reperies quemquam iudicem . . . , qui, *tamquam si* arma militis *inspiciunda sint*, *ita* probet armatum.

*Phil.* vi. 4. 10: [Plancum] *sic* contemnit, *tamquam si* illi aqua et igni *interdictum sit*.

*ad Fam.* ii. 16. 7: [De] Dolabella quod scripsi, suadeo videas, *tamquam si* tua res *agatur*.

With the shift to manner, *tam* is again brought into juxtaposition with *quam*. Indeed, the first example is an exact counterpart of the cases using the secondary tenses of the subjunctive—even to the incorporation of the *tamquam-si* clause, with resumptive *ita*.

Furthermore, here again the conditional clause of comparison tends to portray an assumption on the part of the persons indicated in the other division of the sentence, thus setting up a thought nexus favorable to functional subordination. E.g., in the first example cited, the general sense is: "You will find no

juror who would take up the question of a man's being armed *on the assumption that judgment is to be based on the standard of dress parade.*"<sup>41</sup>

The third case, perhaps, is the most convincing, especially when it is put side by side with similar sentences in which the coördinate character of the conditional clause of comparison is marked automatically by tense shift; e.g.:

*ad Fam. ii. 14. 1: Eius negotium sic velim suscipias, ut si esset res mea.*

With *tamquam si* and the present subjunctive, Cicero sets forth the situation as he wants Caelius to view it;<sup>42</sup> in the contrasted case just cited he presents a contrary to fact phrased from his own point of view.<sup>43</sup>

Speaking for the whole group of cases introduced by *quam si* "as if," the chief fact discovered is that the examples expressive of degree tend to coördination, whereas those expressive of manner show a prevalent coloring of pretense or (false) assumption on the part of persons indicated in the other division of the sentence, thus establishing a thought nexus very favorable to functional subordination.

## 2. QUASI. 237 CASES CONSIDERED<sup>44</sup>

This large group is taken up next for the sake of sharp contrast, and in order to proceed at once to the central problem of this study. For here, more than anywhere else, is found the use of the primary tenses of the subjunctive in cases where the feeling of the modern reader would incline him to expect the use of the

<sup>41</sup> In the second case in the list, the verb of the *tamquam si* clause, though perfect in form, probably so uses the participle as to produce the effect of a present. As a matter of fact, Planeus had been in exile, and has now returned. The conditional clause of comparison seems merely to set forth the rating of the man as determined by Antony's contemptuous regard.

<sup>42</sup> It bears upon this point that, earlier in this same letter, Cicero says: *Dolabellam meum vel potius nostrum.*

<sup>43</sup> Cf. also the case of tense shift with *ac si* in *ad Fam. xiii. 43. 2.*

<sup>44</sup> Including the conjectural *ad Att. v. 13. 1.*

imperfect and the pluperfect; and here, too, can be made out the strongest case for functional subordination.

As for the word *quasi* itself, it should be noted that in early Latin it was still clearly felt to be a compound of *quam* and *si*; e.g.:

Plautus, *Mil.* 481 ff.:

Satin abiit ille, neque erile negotium

Plus curat *quasi* non servitutem serviat?

Plautus, *Curc.* 51:

Tam a me pudicast *quasi* soror mea sit.

In the first of these examples, *quasi* stands for *quam si* "than if"; and, in the other, for *quam si* "as if" in an expression of degree (as is shown by the fact that *tam* modifies an adjective).<sup>45</sup>

In Cicero's writings *quasi* had lost its etymological force. No instance is noted in which he uses the word in the sense "than if"; and the nearest approach to "as if" in expressions of degree is found in a few cases showing the balance *idem . . . quasi*. The word thus is relegated to the vague limbo of "as if" in expressions of manner. How vague this limbo is, and how thoroughly the feeling for *quam* had died out, is shown by the fact that, while *quam si* is always balanced by something in the other division of the sentence (e.g., *maior . . . quam si, tam . . . quam si*), *quasi* is used with the greatest frequency without correlative of any kind; and, when a correlative is used, no pains are taken to select a word that would fit well with *quam*; e.g.:

*Acad. Prior.* ii. 45. 139: Aristippus, *quasi* animum nullum habemus, corpus solum tuetur.

*de Off.* ii. 10. 35: . . . nunc ita seiungam, *quasi* possit quisquam . . . iustus esse.

In view of the lack of a correlative, note how impossible it would be to substitute *quam si* for *quasi* in the first of the above examples; also, how unlikely it is that the speaker would have used *ita* in the second, if he had felt the force of *quam* in the coming *quasi*. As a matter of fact, though *tam* is the most natural correlative for *quam*, not an occurrence of *tam . . . quasi* was noted in Cicero's works.

<sup>45</sup> For other cases consult Bennett's *Syntax of Early Latin*, I, 286.



This change in the force of *quasi* has an important and direct bearing upon the question in hand. For, as already noted, an interjected *quam* "than" is an awkward bar in the way of the development of functional dependence on the part of the conditional clause of comparison;<sup>46</sup> and the same is true of the *quam* in *quam si* "as if" in expressions of degree. But with *quasi* reduced to an expression of manner of such general scope that no specific correlative is needed in the other division of the sentence, the path is smoothed for the development of a subordinate functional relation.

Or, to put the matter in another way, *quam* in conditional clauses of comparison stands in general for coördination, and coördination stands for suppressed apodosis. But emasculate the coördinating element, and allow the feeling for suppressed apodosis to grow vague, and the way toward functional subordination is opened up. For elimination of suppressed apodosis leaves the conditional element without any logical point of support, unless the conditional clause of comparison as a whole sets up a new relation to the other division of the sentence.

Such a consummation is distinctly favored by the fact already pointed out that, while a coördinate conditional clause of comparison is phrased from the point of view of the speaker's present, a *quasi*-clause very often presents the matter from the point of view of persons indicated by the other division of the sentence, commonly with implication of pretense or (false) assumption on their part. This thought nexus provides the basis for the establishment of the new relation between the two divisions of the sentence.<sup>47</sup>

With this analysis, there still remains unanswered the crucial question: How is it that the tense use with *quasi* almost invariably accords with the law of sequence, despite the fact that modern readers feel a strong implication of unreality in so many cases? In reply to this question, there are two things to be said. In the first place, very frequently the implication of unreality

<sup>46</sup> Page 203, note 37.

<sup>47</sup> See again page 203, note 37.

felt with the *quasi*-construction is not identical with the implication of the normal contrary to fact conditional sentence—not merely because the notion of suppressed apodosis is fading but more because the speaker is presenting the matter as an assumption on the part of some one else, albeit in such a way as to discredit that assumption. Moreover, as will soon be shown, the assumption made by the other party is not necessarily discredited by the speaker. Thus the unreality implied by the *quasi*-clause appears to be of a special kind; and for this reason it may have been more easily overridden by the more constant and fundamental factors in the situation that were making for subordination, and for adherence to the law of sequence.

The second part of the answer is suggested by a tabular survey of tense usage in the *quasi*-construction:

- 1 { Hoc nescio quo modo dicitur, *quasi* duo simus.<sup>48</sup>  
    *Quasi* ea res vobis salutis futura sit, ita . . . . imperat.<sup>49</sup>
- 2 Aggredior . . . ., *quasi* nihil umquam audierim de dis immortalibus.<sup>50</sup>
- 3 { *Quasi* metueret, . . . . ita properans de sella exilit.<sup>51</sup>  
    Ita [se gessit], *quasi* . . . . rex numquam esset futurus.<sup>52</sup>
- 4 Impii cives, *quasi* vicissent, gratulabantur [inter se].<sup>53</sup>

These examples are assembled at this point, not for minute analysis, but merely to show the tense equipment available for the *quasi*-construction. At a glance it will be seen that it is identical with the equipment of the indirect question, including as it does the two periphrastic forms.

The ground is somewhat uncertain at this point. But it would seem to be safe to assume that, in his speaking, a Roman was guided subconsciously at any rate by a feeling for the limitations imposed by the extent and the nature of the equipment available in a given case. Thus, in so far as the *quasi*-construction was sinking to the level of a dependent clause, just so far the imperfect subjunctive, for example, would be felt as in its natural place when used in secondary sequence to mark as contemporaneous a

<sup>48</sup> *Tusc. Disp.* ii. 20. 47.

<sup>51</sup> Historical present; in *Verr.* ii. 2. 30. 75.

<sup>49</sup> *de Leg. Agr.* ii. 18. 47.

<sup>52</sup> in *Verr.* ii. 4. 22. 49.

<sup>50</sup> *de Nat. Deo.* iii. 3. 7.

<sup>53</sup> *Phil.* xii. 7. 18.

past act or state. And such adjustment in the case of the secondary tenses would tend to hold the present and perfect subjunctive to analogous functions in primary sequence, even though the speaker's attitude toward another's assumption often is strongly suggestive of the implication of the regular contrary to fact conditional sentence. Indeed, this norm might become so firmly fixed as to account for sporadic cases of arbitrary mechanical leveling in clauses really contrary to fact in thought.<sup>54</sup>

Examination of a few concrete cases will probably make these points clearer:

*p. Clu. 13. 37: Asuvius autem brevi illo tempore, quasi in hortulos iret, in harenarias quasdam . . . perductus occiditur.*

Though the text shows that the real destination of Asuvius was *not* the gardens in question, it is quite as obvious that the *quasi*-clause is something other than a contrary to fact phrased from the speaker's point of view. Note, in the first place, how impossible it would be to supply here an apodosis such as a coördinate contrary to fact construction would require to complete the sense. And, second, observe that the real function of the *quasi*-clause is to set forth the false assumption of the victim as he started out on the fatal journey, or the pretense by which the murderers lured him on. Here are the conditions of functional subordination, and the imperfect subjunctive seems to be used normally according to the rule for sequence.

*in Verr. ii. 5. 49. 129: Ad pedes misera iacuit, quasi ego eius excitare ab inferis filium possem.*

In this passage there may seem to be a greater approximation to the implication of the regular contrary to fact construction, because the *quasi*-clause has to do with the physically impossible. Yet it is clear enough that Cicero means to portray the situation from the point of view of the bereaved mother, who throws herself at the orator's feet, looking to him to accomplish what is

<sup>54</sup> One or two possible cases of such mechanical leveling have been noted under a previous heading.

Still another influence that probably tended to support the use of the primary tenses is indicated on page 221.



beyond the power of man. Here, again, there is little room for the notion of suppressed apodosis, the thought nexus bringing about a functional subordination with which the use of the imperfect subjunctive fits perfectly, marking the time as contemporaneous. It is true that the speaker disclaims the assumption as false; but if this had been a contrary to fact of the normal order, the meaning could only be: "The wretched woman lay at my feet, [as would have been the case] had I been able to raise her son from the dead." It is just because the sentence means something different from this that the *quasi*-clause drops to the level of a functionally subordinate construction.

The following case is particularly interesting as showing the two sequences side by side, thus illustrating most effectively the distribution of the available tense equipment:

*ad Fam.* vi. 8. 2: Haec tua deliberatio non mihi convenire visa est cum oratione Largi. Ille enim mecum, *quasi* tibi non *liceret* in Sicilia diutius commorari, *ita* locutus erat, tu autem *quasi concessum sit, ita* deliberas.

As he writes, Cicero has before him a letter from Caecina. Obviously he does not know the facts in regard to the matter referred to in the two *quasi*-clauses; hence neither of them can represent a coördinate contrary to fact phrased from the point of view of his present. The first *quasi*-clause sets forth the situation as portrayed by Largus, the other deals with an apparent assumption on the part of Caecina. Both are functionally subordinate, and accord with the law of sequence.

In the light of such examples as this, it is not difficult to conceive that a norm might be set up that would hold within sequence cases in which the implication of unreality is strong, and that it might even level mechanically the tense use in clauses where the thought is really contrary to fact from the point of view of the speaker's present.

The case just cited is noteworthy also in that it shows affinity for the line of development which began with the Plautine *simulare quasi*, and issued in the Silver Latin use of the *quasi*-construction as a form of indirect discourse or as a substitute

for *quod* and the subjunctive.<sup>55</sup> For in this passage the first *quasi*-clause has the verb *loquor* in the other division of the sentence, and it embodies the substance of what Largus said. It helps to hold the case within the bounds of the orthodox conditional clause of comparison that the *quasi*-clause precedes the verb of saying. And the resumptive *ita* is a token not to be disregarded.

Before passing to a more detailed consideration of the material in the *quasi*-group, it should be pointed out that a very large number of cases are marked by a varying degree of anacoluthon. Sometimes this is so slight that there is room for doubt whether the punctuation should be stronger than a comma; at other times it is so marked that the clause is properly made to begin with a capital letter after a full stop, as is often the case with *quamquam* in the corrective use. Such loosely attached *quasi*-clauses are numerous even in early Latin; e.g.:

Plautus, *Pseud.* 631 ff.:

Vae tibi; tu inventu's vero meam qui furcilles fidem.

*Quasi* mihi non seseenta tanta soli soleant credier!

The above words are spoken by a person who is trying to induce another to transfer to him a certain sum of money. He means to convey the impression that he is daily trusted in more important transactions, producing this effect by scornfully rejecting the reverse assumption as ridiculous.<sup>56</sup> The same factors will be found in the following passage from Cicero:

*de Off.* iii. 30. 110: At non debuit ratum esse, quod erat actum per vim.—*Quasi* vero forti viro vis possit adhiberi!—Cur igitur ad senatum proficiscebatur, cum praesertim de captivis dissuasurus esset?—Quod maximum in eo est, id reprehenditis.

Here Cicero represents himself as defending and justifying the conduct of Regulus, interjecting his rejoinders to the various criticisms. The sharp and scornful rejection of a view which

<sup>55</sup> Even in the Plautine stage this construction with *quasi* is by some frankly recognized as an object clause; cf. Bennett, *loc. cit.*, p. 286.

<sup>56</sup> For additional examples in early Latin, see Bennett, *loc. cit.*, pp. 285 ff.

the speaker would stamp as false makes the loosely attached *quasi*-clause a very convenient rhetorical device.

In early Latin the use of the present subjunctive in this construction could not come into question from any point of view; for in Plautus the normal contrary to fact conditional sentence was still using the present subjunctive for the most part as its vehicle. But in Cicero the tense question may well appear to the modern reader to be acute; for it is of the very essence of this construction that the assumption of the *quasi*-clause is rejected by the speaker as false, i.e., in some sense at least, as "contrary to fact."

Yet here, too, it is to be noted that the implication is by no means identical with that of the normal contrary to fact conditional sentence; for the view which the speaker rejects is presented as an untenable proposition for which some other person has been stupid enough or insincere enough to make himself sponsor. Moreover, the notion of suppressed apodosis (which is essential to the coördinate type of conditional clause of comparison) is quite lacking, the phrase being a sharp exclamatory unit, with nothing "to be supplied." Furthermore, once again there is a question of distribution according to the resources of tense equipment, as may be seen by adding the three following examples to the one already cited:

*p. Sulla* 19. 54: "Properatum vehementer est, cum longe tempus muneris abesset." *Quasi* vero tempus dandi muneris non valde appropinquaret!

*Tusc. Disp.* i. 35. 85: "... vidi . . . Priamo vi vitam evitare." *Quasi* vero ista vi quicquam tum *potuerit* ei melius accidere!

*de Fin.* v. 31. 94: Flagitiose descivisse videtur a Stoicis propter oculorum dolorem. *Quasi* vero *didicisset* a Zenone non dolere cum doleret!<sup>57</sup>

In English we find ourselves equipped to handle these three last cases without difficulty; e.g.:

<sup>57</sup> Various combinations are found at times. Thus, the present subjunctive stands side by side with the perfect in *p. Caec.* 1. 2, and 6. 16; *de Dom. Sua* 12. 31, in *Pis.* 23. 55, and *de Div.* ii. 21. 48; the imperfect and the pluperfect are found together in *de Dom. Sua* 6. 14; and the perfect and the pluperfect in *ad Fam.* ix. 6. 3. In these passages the force of the various tenses can be studied to advantage.



(1) As though I were suffering nothing! (Imperfect.)

(2) As though I suffered nothing! (Perfect.)

(3) As though I had suffered nothing! (Pluperfect.)

In references to the present, Latin logically retains the present subjunctive to round out the scheme. We confuse the subject (and ourselves) by using form (1) as a rendering for both the imperfect and the present subjunctive.

\* \* \* \* \*

In Cicero's writings there are in all 237 cases of *quasi* to be considered. And here again it is convenient to divide the material on the basis of tense.

#### A. SECONDARY TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. 60 CASES CONSIDERED

Though forming the much smaller group, cases using the secondary tenses of the subjunctive are taken up first because it is here that a coördinate contrary to fact phrased from the speaker's point of view has the one opportunity to betray itself automatically by tense shift. Of such shift four clear cases are found, and one of these is a virtual repetition; e.g.:

*Lael.* 4. 14: *Sensu enim amisso fit idem, quasi natus non esset omnino, quem tamen esse natum et nos gaudemus et haec civitas, dum erit, laetabitur.*

*de Leg. Agr.* ii. 21. 53: *ut . . . eodem loco res sit, quasi ea pecunia legata non esset.*<sup>58</sup>

At this one point *quasi* perhaps shows a conscious trace of its etymology; at any rate the rare and unusual cases here cited<sup>59</sup>

<sup>58</sup> Though an emendation, this case may fairly be included, as it practically repeats ii. 20. 51 (*Eo loco res est ita soluta hereditate, quasi ea pecunia legata non esset*). It is chosen for quotation above rather than the original because of the correlative used. The remaining clear case is *ad Att.* i. 10. 6 (*eo animo . . . quasi*).

<sup>59</sup> *Phil.* viii. 4. 11 is not a case in point. Its *quasi*-clause is of the detached order, and the verb is thrown out of line by a *si*-clause that intervenes within the *quasi*-construction. There are two doubtful cases: *ad Fam.* ii. 9. 2 (unclear, perhaps incomplete, and variously edited), and *de Nat. Deo.* ii. 43. 111, which lacks a verb in the other division of the sentence. One's first impulse is to supply something like *vocitant*; but in a similar passage just preceding (§105) the reading is: *Nostri . . . soliti [sunt] vocitare*, and besides there is here a possible trace of subordinate feeling.

are quite comparable to the coördinate contrary to fact examples introduced by *quam si* ("as if") in expressions of manner. It is interesting to note here, too, the balancing *idem*, which often is a concomitant of the coördinate type of conditional clause of comparison;<sup>60</sup> and it will be seen at a glance that the cases are quite free from the suggestion of pretense or (false) assumption that so frequently goes with the *quasi*-construction when it is grammatically subordinate.

These observations may shed some light upon the following passage, in which the tense *per se* is indeterminate:

in *Verr.* ii. 5. 43. 111: Is tamen in *eadem* causa fuit, *quasi esset* in aliquo manifesto scelere *deprehensus*.

Here again *idem* is the correlative, and there is no trace of the implication that so often marks the subordinate type. Just as in the tense-defined coördinate examples above, so in this passage the speaker seems simply to be likening a real situation to a condition which he describes as a past contrary to fact from his own point of view. On that basis this case, too, may with some probability be classed as a coördinate contrary to fact.<sup>61</sup>

In most of the examples under this head, however, the characteristic flavor of the *quasi*-construction can be detected, and the tense use is determined by the principles above indicated. It remains, therefore, merely to add a few details regarding these cases using the secondary tenses of the subjunctive.

Of the total of 60 examples considered, 15 are loosely attached.<sup>62</sup> Here *quasi* is frequently reinforced, appearing in the combinations *quasi vero* and *proinde quasi*.<sup>63</sup>

The periphrastic of the form *futurus esset* is found in the following passages: in *Verr.* ii. 2. 74. 183 and ii. 4. 22. 49, *p. Clu.* 66. 187, *Cat. Mai.* 23. 82.

<sup>60</sup> See page 202; and cf. sentences in which a relative clause takes up *idem*. e.g., *Acad. Prior.* ii. 39. 123.

<sup>61</sup> Cf. *ad Att.* vi. 9. 3.

<sup>62</sup> Usually it is easy to reach a decision on this point. Only rarely is there room for real doubt as to the proper punctuation, e.g., in *p. Balb.* 13. 36 and *Phil.* ii. 23. 56.

<sup>63</sup> For further discussion of the detached use, see pages 216 ff.

In addition to *ad Fam.* vi. 8. 2, which was cited in another connection, three cases are interesting as inclining toward the Silver Latin use of the *quasi*-clause as a substitute for the regular indirect discourse construction:

*ad Att.* vii. 4. 2: De re publica autem *ita* mecum locutus est, *quasi* non dubium bellum *haberemus*.

*Cat. Mai.* 23. 82: Sed nescio quo modo animus . . . *ita* semper prospiciebat, *quasi*, cum excessisset e vita, tum denique *victurus* esset.

*de Leg.* iii. 13. 30: Vir magnus . . . L. Lucullus ferebatur, *quasi* commodissime *respondisset* . . . duo se habere vicinos. . . .

In the first two of these cases, the balancing *ita* helps to hold the examples within the bounds of the conditional clause of comparison. In the last, the predicate *Vir magnus* is a restraining factor.

Rather characteristic of this group is the use of a verb like *divino* in sentences having to do with happenings that seem prophetic in the light of later developments; e.g.:

*Cat. Mai.* 4. 12: Cuius sermone *ita* tum cupide fruebar, *quasi* iam *divinare* . . . illo extincto fore unde discerem neminem.

*Lael.* 4. 14: qui quidem, *quasi praesagiret*, perpaucis ante mortem diebus . . . triduum disseruit de re publica.<sup>64</sup>

#### B. PRIMARY TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. 177 CASES CONSIDERED

The outstanding feature here is the fact that more than half of the cases are examples of the detached use (namely, present tense, 68; perfect tense, 29); and in these the use of a reinforced form is frequent (*quasi vero*, 56 times; *proinde quasi*, 14 times).

With this large amount of material available, it is possible to look more closely into the detached use, and to consider the relations existing between it and the normal type. Thus, it will be noted that the cases are few in which the present subjunctive can be shown to refer to the future; e.g.:

*Tusc. Disp.* i. 38. 92: Quam (sc. mortem) qui leviores faciunt, somni simillimam volunt esse. *Quasi vero* quisquam *ita* nonaginta annos *velit* vivere, ut, cum sexaginta confecerit, reliquos dormiat! Ne sui quidem id velint, non modo ipse.

<sup>64</sup> For other cases using *divino*, see *ad Fam.* iii. 13. 1 and ix. 24. 1.



Here the phrase following the *quasi*-clause shows the time very clearly; cf. *in Vat.* 3. 7. But the overwhelming use of the present tense is to ridicule as false some assumption as to existing conditions; e.g.:

*Tusc. Disp.* iii. 5. 11: quem nos furem, μελαγχολαν illi vocant; *quasi* vero atra bili solum mens ac non *saepe* vel iracundia graviore vel timore vel dolore *moveatur*!

*p. Sex. Rosc.* 36. 102: Alter . . . testimonium . . . dicturus est; *quasi* vero id *nunc* agatur, utrum, is quod dixerit, credendum ac non, quod fecerit, vindicandum sit!

In the first of these passages the time of the *quasi*-clause is the time of a general truth, as is shown by *saepe*; in the other, the presence of *nunc* defines the time.<sup>65</sup>

Cases using the perfect subjunctive make it clearer still that the primary tenses do not normally refer to the future; e.g.:

*in Verr.* ii. 5. 66. 169: Sed quid ego plura de Gavio? *Quasi* tu Gavio *tum fueris* infestus ac non nomini . . . civium hostis!

*p. Caec.* 1. 2: *Quasi* vero aut idem *possit* in iudicio improbitas, quod in vi confidentia, aut nos non eo libentius *tum* audaciae *cesserimus*, quo nunc impudentiae facilius obsisteremus!

In both these cases the past time is marked by *tum*; and the second is specially interesting as illustrating the use of the present and the perfect subjunctive side by side, and also as showing the secondary sequence into which *cesserimus* has thrown the clause dependent upon it. This past force of the perfect subjunctive in the *quasi*-construction was abundantly shown at an earlier point in this paper,<sup>66</sup> and further demonstration is not necessary here.

From the very fact that a *quasi*-clause is detached, it follows that it is not "governed" in any way by the clause which precedes it. A single illustration will suffice:

*de Div.* ii. 20. 45: At inventum est caput in Tiberi. *Quasi* ego artem aliquam istorum *negem*! divinationem nego.<sup>67</sup>

<sup>65</sup> Cf. *de Leg. Agr.* ii. 31. 85, *p. Mil.* 7. 19 and 31. 84, *Phil.* x. 7. 15 and xi. 2. 6, *Acad. Prior.* ii. 34. 109, *Tusc. Disp.* i. 7. 14 and i. 22. 50.

<sup>66</sup> See pages 186 ff.

<sup>67</sup> With this may be compared other cases in which *quasi* is used in virtual or actual change of speaker; e.g., *in Verr.* ii. 3. 87. 203, *de Fin.* ii. 3. 7 and ii. 6. 17.

This particular example has an added interest by reason of the appended *divinationem nego*, which serves as a foil to bring out strongly the unreality of the *quasi*-clause, which, nevertheless, holds steadily to the present subjunctive.

Speaking for all the tenses used in detached *quasi*-clauses, it seems to be with them a question neither of suppressed apodosis, nor yet of "sequence." Rather, each tense appears to be employed in about the same way as if an indicative were to be written in like situation;<sup>68</sup> e.g.:

*p. Mil. 7. 17: Proinde quasi Appius ille Caecus viam muniverit, non qua populus uteretur, sed ubi impune sui posterī latrocinarentur!*

This *quasi*-clause refers to a past of the aoristic variety, and *muniverit* exerts upon the clause dependent upon it just the same influence that *munivit* would have done. Despite the strong "contrary to fact" feeling inspired by the scornful rejection of the idea advanced in the *quasi*-clause, it is interesting to note that in English, too, such a sentence can be handled without recourse to the contrary to fact form ("As if old Appius Claudius *built* that road, not for the convenience of the public, but as a place where his descendants might plunder with impunity!").

But, without such recourse, it is not easy in English to render an example of the perfect definite variety; e.g.:

*p. Clu. 50. 138: proinde quasi ego non ab initio huius defensionis dixerim invidiosum illud iudicium fuisse.*

Here the time seems to be defined by the phrase *ab initio huius defensionis*. It is, however, with the present tense that the

<sup>68</sup> See again the remarks on page 213; and allow for the occasional future force of the present subjunctive.

This subject is needlessly complicated by Lalin (*De Particularum Comparitivarum Usu apud Terentium*, p. 30), who would supply with certain detached cases a first division of the sentence—somewhat as it is said that a parenthetical clause of purpose "depends upon a verb of saying understood."

It is true that occasionally it is hard to decide whether a *quasi*-clause depends upon the *expressed* first division of a sentence or not (see p. 221); but, having once recognized a case as detached and requiring strong punctuation, it seems to the writer that it misses the real genius of the construction to erect a mechanical scaffolding about the *quasi*-clause. At any rate, it is certain that, as soon as a first division is supplied, the notion of suppressed apodosis tries to rear its head.

English reader finds the greatest difficulty in this particular, his feeling for the "contrary to fact" implication of numerous cases almost inevitably leading him to use the contrary to fact form in translating. How little the Roman was influenced by any such feeling is clear even from a mere statistical tabulation. Thus, using the verb *sum* as an example, the tense use in detached *quasi*-clauses shows distribution as follows:

(1) Quasi sit	68
(2) Quasi esset	10
(3) Quasi fuerit	29
(4) Quasi fuisset	5

It is distinctly interesting that in these detached clauses, where the very essence of the use lies in the flat rejection of the condition supposed, the tense use should remain so uninfluenced by the analogy of the normal contrary to fact conditional sentence. Specially striking are cases in which two different tenses are used in the same sentence; e.g.:

*p. Caec. 6. 16: Quasi vero aut nos ei negemus addictum aut tum quisquam fuerit, qui dubitaret, quin . . . !*

*ad Fam. ix. 6. 3: Erant enim nobis perirati; quasi quicquam de nostra salute decrevissemus, quod non idem illis censuissimus, aut, quasi utilius rei publicae fuerit eos etiam ad bestiarum auxilium confugere quam vel emori vel cum spe, si non optima, at aliqua tamen vivere!*<sup>60</sup>

In the first of these cases, which shows the present and the perfect in contrast, the tense analysis is particularly easy. At first sight, the second example might seem an exception; but fortunately we can fall back upon an arbiter who surely had no reason to force an interpretation, and who does not even notice that the *quasi*-clauses are of the detached type. In a note on this passage, Tyrrell translates it, adding at the end: "Hofmann shows the force of the different tenses by transposing the clauses into the indicative." This accords exactly with the rule worked out above.

Two rather extreme cases of use of the perfect subjunctive follow:

<sup>60</sup> See also the cases cited on page 213, note 57.



*de Div.* ii. 26. 56: Ac tum [galli] canebant nec vicerant. Id enim est, inquires, ostentum. Magnum vero! Quasi pisces, non galli cecinerint!

*p. Sest.* 28. 61: Cur igitur rogationi paruit? Quasi vero ille non in alias quoque leges, quas iniuste rogatas putaret, iam ante iuravit!

In the first of these passages, *cecinerint* caps the imperfect *canebant*, which is in a clause describing the actual happening; moreover, the opposition of *galli* and *pisces* makes the *quasi*-clause strongly "contrary to fact." Yet the speaker disregards all this, and rejects the absurdity as a simple past of the aoristic type. In the other case, *iam ante* seems to show that the time of *iuravit* is as a matter of fact antecedent to that of *paruit*; ordinarily under these circumstances even an indicative would not stand in the perfect tense. There are ways, however, of representing exactly in English even such a perfect subjunctive ("As though long before this he *did* not *swear* to observe other laws whose passage he regarded as unjust!"). The use of the perfect subjunctive in such extreme cases as these shows very clearly how distinct and separate a subjunctive category the detached *quasi*-clause had set up, and how fully it was a law unto itself. Even more striking is a passage from a work under Cicero's name, in which the perfect subjunctive with *quasi* rejects a false assumption, and is immediately taken up by a pure condition in the contrary to fact form:

*in Sall.* 2. 4: Quasi vero tu sis ab illis, Sallusti, ortus! Quodsi esses, non nullos iam tuae turpitudinis pigeret.

Speaking generally, the detached *quasi*-clause is a rhetorical device; and while it is distributed rather generously throughout the range of Cicero's writings, it is found with the greatest frequency in the orations and philosophical works, where it provides a convenient method of ridiculing an opponent as blind, or presumptuous, or insincere.<sup>70</sup>

<sup>70</sup> It fits with this that the verb of the preceding sentence is frequently a word of saying or the like; e.g., *aio* (*p. Planc.* 29. 71), *dico* (*in Verr.* ii. 1. 39. 99), *puto* (*Tusc. Disp.* iii. 29. 71), *iubeo* (*de Leg. Agr.* i. 4. 13), *quaero* (*p. Planc.* 25. 62), *describo* (*de Leg. Agr.* ii. 31. 85), *caveo* (*de Leg. Agr.* i. 5. 14), etc.

Yet this particular use is as old as Plautus, and its stubborn adherence to unrestricted use of its tense equipment after the time when the normal contrary to fact shifted to the secondary tenses of the subjunctive may well have exerted an influence tending to hold the regular *quasi*-construction to a like program. This appears the more probable in view of the fact that, while usually it is easy to identify the detached use, still there are a few cases which are just on the line; e.g.:

*Phil.* xiii. 19. 40: Pergit in me maledicta [iacere?], *quasi vero* ei pulcherrime priora *processerint*.

*de Orat.* iii. 31. 122: eosque rhetoricos inscribunt; *quasi* non illa *sint* propria rhetorum, quae ab eisdem de iustitia . . . dicuntur!

With the comma, the *quasi*-clause merely develops the mistaken attitude or view of persons mentioned in the other division of the sentence; with the semicolon, the speaker is made to reject the notion with scornful emphasis. Either punctuation would give a satisfactory sense in the above examples; and, to make the illustration most effective, *quasi vero* (which usually marks the detached type) is here given the comma, while the semicolon is assigned to *quasi*. There are perhaps a dozen cases thus on the line, where a hair's weight would turn the scale one way or the other. With such a middle ground, it is conceivable enough that one construction might exert considerable influence upon the other.

As already indicated above, it is estimated that there are 97 occurrences of the detached use among the cases using the primary tenses of the subjunctive. It remains now to consider the other 80 examples in which *quasi* appears in the regular use.

Here, too, as among the formally indeterminate cases using the secondary tenses, there is an occasional suggestion of the coordinate relation; e.g.:

*ad Her.* iv. 3. 4: *Quasi si* quis ad Olympia cum venerit cursum, impudentes *dicat* esse illos, qui currere coeperint, ipse intra carcerem *stet* et *narret* aliis, quo modo Ladas aut Boeotus Sicyonius cursitarint, *sic* isti, cum in artis curriculum descenderunt, illos, qui in eo, quod est artificii, elaborent, aiunt facere immodeste, ipsi aliquem antiquum oratorem aut poetam laudant, in stadium rhetoricae prodire non audent.<sup>71</sup>

<sup>71</sup> This is the one case noted in which the reinforced form *quasi si* is used.

In this elaborate comparison marked off by *quasi* and *sic*, the speaker appears to be expressing his own verdict simply, without suggestion of pretense or assumption on the part of another. It seems natural, therefore, to recognize a suppressed apodosis, and to interpret as a vague future.

Again, in connection with the cases using the secondary tenses attention was called to the fact that there is a strong tendency to coördination when the balancing expression is *idem*. This also finds an analogy here; e.g.:

Top. 7. 32: Solebat igitur Aquilius . . . . quaerentibus iis, quos ad id pertinebat, quid esset litus, ita definire, qua fluctus eluderet; hoc est, *quasi* qui adulescentiam florem aetatis, senectutem occasum vitae *velit* definire.

Here the general meaning seems to be: "which is [the same] as if a person should choose to define," etc.<sup>72</sup> So *de Off.* i. 16. 51; which, however, is a citation from Ennius. Possibly two or three other examples should be recognized as coördinate;<sup>73</sup> but the cases shade off by almost insensible gradations toward subordination.

As to the range of the tense force of the present subjunctive in this usage, it seems to reach out toward the future in the two examples just cited in full; and in two other sentences the periphrastic of the form *futurus sit* is found.<sup>74</sup> There may be other sporadic cases.<sup>75</sup> But in the great majority of examples the tense is used to mark contemporaneous action in a context calling for primary sequence,<sup>76</sup> and everywhere is felt in varying

<sup>72</sup> This particular case is like the one preceding in that it chooses an indefinite subject for the *quasi*-clause (note *quasi qui*); and it is interesting, too, for the reason that the condition is strongly suggestive of the substantive use of the *si*-clause.

<sup>73</sup> E.g., *p. Caec.* 21. 61 (*perinde valebit quasi*), *ad Att.* i. 16. 10 (*simile quasi*); so, possibly, *ad Her.* iv. 28. 38. If in *Verr.* ii. 5. 71. 182 and *de Leg.* ii. 3. 6 are coördinate, it is strange that they do not use the secondary tenses (cf. *Lael.* 4. 14, quoted p. 214); perhaps the second is influenced by a *tamquam*-construction which it follows.

<sup>74</sup> *de Leg. Agr.* ii. 18. 47; *de Petit. Cons.* i. 2.

<sup>75</sup> E.g., the last of the verbs in the *quasi*-clause of *p. Planc.* 23. 55.

<sup>76</sup> This range in tense force of the present subjunctive is comparable to that seen in its use in clauses dependent on verbs of fearing, though the distribution there is not the same.



degree the characteristic atmosphere of pretense or (false) assumption that goes with the dependent relation. The abundant material provides striking illustrations for several points.

First, as to the fact that the dependent *quasi*-clause portrays a matter as viewed or presented by persons indicated in the other division of the sentence, the following cases bear clear testimony:

*Tusc. Disp.* iv. 11. 26: Est autem avaritia opinatio vehemens de pecunia, quasi valde expetenda sit, inhaerens et penitus insita.

*p. Planc.* 23. 55: alia te ratio, alia cogitatio ad spem huius opprimendi excitavit. . . . Multi huic invident, . . .; multi etiam communes inimici reorum omnium, qui ita semper testimonium de ambitu dicunt, quasi aut moveant animos iudicum suis testimoniis aut gratum populo Romano sit aut ab eo facilius ob eam causam dignitatem, quam volunt, consequantur.

*de Nat. Deo.* iii. 14. 36: Quo modo autem hoc, quasi concedatur, sumitis, nihil esse animum nisi ignem?

In the first of these passages, the *quasi*-clause is a virtual expansion of *opinio*; in the second, it seems to set forth the *ratio* or *cogitatio* which lay in the minds of the self-appointed witnesses, spurring them on to action; in the third passage, *quasi concedatur* is another way of saying *pro concessio*. All three cases are strongly suggestive of the Silver Latin use of the *quasi*-construction as a substitute for the regular indirect discourse construction.<sup>77</sup>

In the second place, that the unreality so often felt in connection with the *quasi*-clause has underlying it the more fundamental element of assumption or pretense on the part of persons indicated in the other division of the sentence is shown very neatly in the following passage:

*p. Clu.* 3. 8: Aggrediar ad crimen cum illa deprecatione . . ., sic ut me audiatis, quasi hoc tempore haec causa primum dicatur, sicut dicitur, non quasi saepe iam dicta et numquam probata sit.

<sup>77</sup> There is a somewhat similar suggestion in certain cases where the verb of the other division of the sentence is a word of saying, understanding, or the like; e.g., *ad Fam.* vi. 12. 3 and *Tusc. Disp.* ii. 20. 47 (*dico*), *Tim.* 7. 23 (*intellego*), *Tusc. Disp.* i. 7. 13 (*iocor*), *de Fin.* v. 9. 26 (*accipio*). And there is a direct parallel to the early Latin *simulare quasi* in *ad Fam.* ix. 22. 3 (*id facis quasi*).

Here the speaker begs the hearers to make the assumption that accords with the facts (*sicut dicitur*), and to avoid a false assumption. For both points of view he uses the same form; the fact of assumption is the fundamental thing, the other implication is secondary.<sup>78</sup> Seneca provides a striking parallel, in which he sets forth the proper and the improper attitude toward punishment:

*De Ira*, ii. 33. 1: "Minus," inquit, "contemnemur, si vindicaverimus iniuriam."—Si tamquam ad remedium venimus, sine ira venimus, non *quasi* dulce sit vindicari, sed *quasi* utile.

From this angle it becomes less difficult to understand how the *quasi*-construction came to hold so faithfully to the law of sequence, especially as such tense use was supported by the very frequent independent construction in detached exclamatory cases, as pointed out above. At the same time it must frankly be recognized that, in the majority of cases, the speaker clearly gives the impression that he rejects as false the assumption of the *quasi*-clause. Not infrequently the text provides explicit evidence of his attitude; e.g.:

*ad Att.* xiv. 14. 2: *Ita* Brutos Cassiumque defendis, *quasi* eos ego reprehendam; quos satis laudare non possum.

*p. Tull.* 16. 39: Quod ergo ideo in iudicium addi voluisti, ut de eo tibi apud recuperatores dicere liceret, eo non addito nihilo minus tamen *ita* dicis, *quasi* id ipsum, a quo depulsus es, *impetraris*?

*de Div.* ii. 58. 119: Faba quidem Pythagorei [iubent] utique abstinere, *quasi* vero eo cibo mens, non venter *infletur*. Sed nescio quo modo nihil tam absurde dici potest, quod non dicatur ab aliquo philosophorum.

*p. Mur.* 36. 77: Quid quod, cum admoneris, tamen, *quasi* tute noris, *ita* salutas?

In the first of these cases, the speaker points out the real fact in the appended relative clause. In the second, the actual fact is doubly indicated by ablative absolute and relative clause. In the third, the appended phrase brands the assumption as ridicu-

<sup>78</sup> Our English forms are very unfortunate in this connection. Thus we say, "That boy looks as though he *were* cold," even when we mean to say no more than that he *gives the impression of* being cold.

lous. And in the fourth, the need of reminder (shown by the *cum*-clause) indicates the falsity of *quasi tute noris*.<sup>79</sup>

As to this underlying conception, compare the following interesting passage, in which the speaker is choosing a method of representing an interview:

*Tusc. Disp. i. 4. 8: Sic eas [disputationes] exponam, quasi agatur res, non quasi narretur.*

Of course, at the moment Cicero seats himself to write, the discussion is no longer going on; hence *quasi agatur* is in some sense "contrary to fact." But that sort of mechanical analysis quite misses the force of the passage; the speaker really means to say that he will *pretend* that the discussion is going on, in other words, that he chooses the dramatic rather than the narrative method of presentation.

This same passage illustrates a third point, namely, the normal functioning of the primary tenses of the subjunctive under the law of sequence when the verb of the other division of the sentence is a future; so also:

*de Invent. ii. 43. 126: In hoc ita commorari conveniet, quasi nihil praeterea dicendum sit, et quasi contra dici nihil possit.*

Here the future orator is being instructed how to further his ends by creating a certain impression in the minds of judge and jury. In such a sentence it is all one whether the impression to be created is true or false, the primary tenses being used in accordance with the law of sequence to mark the time as contemporaneous or as antecedent.<sup>80</sup>

In this connection considerable interest attaches to an isolated case of the use of the primary tenses of the subjunctive in a secondary context:

*in Verr. ii. 3. 88. 204: Indignissimum videbatur, qua in re senatus optime ac benignissime cum aratoribus egisset . . . , in ea re praedari praetorem, bonis everti aratores, et id non modo fieri, sed ita fieri, quasi liceat concessumque sit.*

<sup>79</sup> Cf. *ad Her. ii. 26. 42* and *iv. 53. 66*, *de Invent. i. 33. 56*, *de Orat. iii. 53. 202*, and *de Re Pub. i. 17. 28*. So numerous other cases.

<sup>80</sup> Cf. *de Invent. ii. 25. 76*, *in Verr. ii. 3. 95. 222*, *p. Caec. 21. 61*, and *ad Att. i. 10. 6* (second example).



Here the *quasi*-clause is obviously an integral part of the indirect discourse dependent upon *videbatur*; and it is very clearly implied that the assumption is false. However one may choose to explain the choice of the primary tenses of the subjunctive here, the case demonstrates very clearly how weak was the influence upon the *quasi*-construction of such "contrary to fact" implication as it carried.

This completes the description of the conditional clauses of comparison introduced by *quasi*. A summary of the findings will be given at the end of the paper.

### 3. UT SI. 96 CASES CONSIDERED

In this combination, the comparative word maintains its identity intact; and the usage approximates rather closely that found with *quam si*.

#### A. SECONDARY TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. 20 CASES CONSIDERED

Here again the secondary tenses are taken up first, in order to disclose any cases that reveal a coördinate construction automatically by shift of tense. Of such shift there are six cases; e.g.:

*Phil.* ix. 5. 12: . . . sic animati esse debetis, *ut si* ille *adesset*.  
*de Fin.* iv. 14. 36: Quam ob rem utrique *idem* faciunt, *ut si* laevam partem *neglegerent*, dextram *tuerentur*, aut ipsius animi . . . cognitionem *amplexarentur*, actionem *relinquerent*.

In the second of the above examples, note the balancing *idem*,<sup>81</sup> which has been noted elsewhere as a frequent concomitant of the coördinate use. Furthermore, a reference to the full text will show that this same passage contains examples of the subordinate

<sup>81</sup> So in *de Fin.* iv. 6. 14. The other three cases are: *ad Fam.* ii. 14. 1, *ad Quint. Frat.* i. 1. 6. 17, and *de Invent.* ii. 30. 90. The last mentioned passage is peculiar in that the *ut . . . si* clause is parenthetical, and *ut* is used in the sense "as, for example"; the case, therefore, perhaps belongs with a detached use soon to be described, but it affords a good example of the tense shift here in question.

Not without interest in this connection is a full contrary to fact sentence (protasis and apodosis) in an elaborate simile introduced by *ut si* (*de Fin.* iii. 14. 46).

use introduced by *quasi* and *tamquam*; so that the two types can be contrasted in close juxtaposition, and dealing with a similar subject matter.

In addition to the clearly defined examples, there is one more which, while indeterminate so far as tense is concerned, is yet akin in meaning to cases of the coördinate type:

*ad Fam. xiii. 21. 2: . . . . in me ipsum magna officia contulit mihique . . . . ita fideliter benivoleque praesto fuit, ut si a me manumissus esset.*

Here the speaker seems simply to express his own verdict that an actual case is on a par with a supposed case. There is no trace of pretense or assumption on the part of the person mentioned in the other division of the sentence.

In this connection mention might be made of another example which seems in thought to be of the coördinate type; but it is involved in indirect discourse and mechanically leveled:

*de Off. i. 25. 87: Miserrima . . . . est . . . . honorum . . . . contentio, de qua praeclare apud eundem est Platonem: "Similiter facere eos, qui inter se contenderent, uter potius rem publicam administraret, ut si nautae certarent, quis eorum potissimum gubernaret."*

This again is a case of the speaker's own verdict. Note, too, *similiter*, which, like *idem*, is a concomitant of the coördinate type. Taken out of the indirect discourse, the clause probably should read: *ut si nautae certent*, a coördinate vague future.<sup>82</sup>

Several cases are indeterminate in meaning as well as in form; e.g.:

*Phil. vi. 2. 4: Ita enim est decretum, ut si legati ad Hannibalem mitterentur.*

It gives the most satisfactory interpretation of this passage to regard it as the speaker's own verdict, with the *ut si* construction representing a present contrary to fact phrased from his point of view. On the other hand, *ut si* may possibly be used here like *quasi* to introduce a clause portraying the point of view

<sup>82</sup> Cf. *de Re Pub. i. 34. 51*, which is parallel in thought, and certainly coördinate (*tam cito evertetur, quam navis, si e vectoribus sorte ductus ad gubernacula accesserit*).

of the persons who passed the decree.<sup>83</sup> In the following case, the balance perhaps inclines toward the second line of interpretation:

*Lael.* 16. 59: Qui dixisset ita amare oportere, ut si aliquando esset osurus.<sup>84</sup>

The three remaining cases of this group are somewhat loosely attached to the other division of the sentence, and *ut si* has the meaning "as, for example, if"; e.g.:

*de Invent.* i. 50. 93: Contrarium est, quod contra dicitur atque ii, qui audiunt, fecerunt; ut si quis apud Alexandrum . . . . dicens . . . . diceret nihil esse crudelius quam urbes diruere.

*Brut.* 16. 62: Multa enim scripta sunt in eis, quae facta non sunt . . . .; ut si ego me a M'. Tullio esse dicerem, qui patricius . . . . fuit.

In the first of these cases, the *si*-clause appears to be of the *futurum in praeterito* order. In the second, Cicero is speaking of the frequent unreliability of family records, and the *si*-clause seems to be a detached present contrary to fact condition: "as, for example, if I were laying claim to descent from Manius Tullius, etc." Some light is thrown upon this use by the following example, in which a detached *ut si* clause has both protasis and apodosis expressed:

*de Off.* i. 28. 97: . . . . cum id, quod quaque persona dignum est, et fit et dicitur; ut, si Aeacus aut Minos diceret "Oderint dum metuant," . . . . indecorum videretur.

So far as this slender material affords a basis for generalization, it would seem that (unlike the detached *quasi*-clause, which was found to be a law unto itself) the detached *ut si* clause conforms to the regular rules for conditional sentences, allowing of expansion by supplying an apodosis.<sup>85</sup>

<sup>83</sup> There is like indefiniteness in *de Opt. Gen. Orat.* 4. 10, *ad Fam.* vii. 20. 1, *ad M. Brut.* ii. 5. 3, and *de Off.* iii. 15. 62.

<sup>84</sup> This is the one case using the periphrastic. Other examples probably of the subordinate type are: *de Orat.* i. 53. 230, *Acad. Prior.* ii. 27. 88, and *Tusc. Disp.* iv. 23. 51.

<sup>85</sup> This certainly is true of *de Invent.* ii. 30. 90—a parenthetical case which was cited on page 226, note 81, and which probably should be classed here, inasmuch as it is a detached illustrative clause, though not subsecutive like those above.



The remaining loosely attached case using a secondary tense is *Acad. Prior.* ii. 15. 48, a passage of very doubtful interpretation.<sup>86</sup> As commonly punctuated, the *si*-clause appears to be contrary to fact. Further discussion of the detached *ut si* clause is reserved for the next heading, under which the material is much more abundant.

#### B. PRIMARY TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. 76 CASES CONSIDERED<sup>87</sup>

In this group the outstanding feature is the overwhelming preponderance of loosely attached cases, namely, 72 of the total 76. The great majority of these are found in the *Auctor ad Herennium* and in the rhetorical works, where the construction provides a convenient method of introducing an illustration of a definition or a general principle that has just been stated; e.g.:

*Top.* 7. 31: *Formae sunt eae, in quas genus sine ullius praetermissione dividitur; ut si quis ius in legem, morem, aequitatem dividat.*

This seems obviously a detached vague future condition; and most of the other cases appear to be of the same sort.<sup>88</sup> The subject of the verb very frequently is indefinite, *ut si quis* and *ut si qui* being common combinations. The indefinite second singular appears in four cases;<sup>89</sup> and the first person plural in five.<sup>90</sup>

<sup>86</sup> See Reid *ad loc.*

<sup>87</sup> Including *de Invent.* i. 5. 7 and ii. 30. 104, in which a question of text is involved.

<sup>88</sup> Cf. full comparisons in which both protasis and apodosis are expressed, e.g., *de Invent.* ii. 18. 55 (apodosis future indicative), and *de Off.* i. 40. 144; so *de Fin.* v. 12. 35, where the *ut si* construction is incorporated within a full conditional sentence of the vague future type. Interesting too in this connection is *de Invent.* i. 50. 94, in which there are two examples of the detached use, the intervening discussion being carried on largely by means of future indicatives and including an *ut si* clause of similar meaning in which the future indicative is the accepted reading.

<sup>89</sup> *ad Her.* iv. 53. 67, iv. 54. 67, *Top.* 4. 24 and 5. 27.

<sup>90</sup> *ad Her.* iii. 9. 17, iii. 22. 37 and iv. 34. 46, *de Invent.* i. 5. 7 and ii. 9. 28. Once the first singular is found, *de Orat.* iii. 23. 88.

In four cases the force of *ut si* is further defined by a prefixed phrase; e.g.:

*ad Her.* ii. 29. 46: Item vitiosum est id augere, quod convenit docere, *hoc modo*; *ut si* quis . . . . *arguat*, . . . . *augeat*, . . . . *dicat*.<sup>91</sup>

Usually the *ut si* clause in this use is an appendix, as in the cases above cited. Rather rarely it is interjected as a parenthesis, interrupting for an instant the flow of the sentence, e.g., *de Fin.* v. 12. 35 and *de Off.* i. 40. 145.<sup>92</sup>

The present tense is used almost exclusively, only three examples of the perfect being found.<sup>93</sup> In a few cases the illustration involves some character well known in history or on the stage, and the present tense is used through repraesentatio, or because the topic is still debated as a live issue in the training schools; e.g.:

*de Invent.* i. 14. 19: Firmamentum est firmissima argumentatio defensoris . . . .; *ut si velit* Orestes dicere. . . .<sup>94</sup>

In one case a loosely attached *ut si* clause of this type is appended to a specific statement rather than to the enunciation of a general principle:

*Brut.* 83. 287: Orationes autem, quas [Thucydides] interposuit, . . . . ego laudare soleo; imitari neque possim, si velim, nec velim fortasse, si possim; *ut si* quis Falerno vino *delectetur*, sed eo nee ita novo . . . ., nec rursus ita vetere. . . .

This combination approximates much more nearly the normal usage in conditional clauses of comparison.

Different, again, is the following example, in which a loosely attached *ut si* clause in its tone of scornful rejection parallels the detached *quasi*-clause:

*Tusc. Disp.* v. 26. 74: se dicit [Epicurus] recordatione adquiescere praeteritarum voluptatum; *ut si* quis aestuans, cum vim caloris non facile patiat, recordari *velit* sese aliquando in Arpinati nostro gelidis fluminibus circumfusus fuisse!

<sup>91</sup> Cf. *ad Her.* iii. 2. 2 and iii. 20. 33. Especially elaborate is *ad Her.* ii. 26. 40 (*id est, huius modi: ut si*).

<sup>92</sup> So *de Invent.* ii. 30. 90 (pluperfect tense).

<sup>93</sup> *ad Her.* iii. 20. 33 and iv. 32. 43; *de Invent.* ii. 9. 28.

<sup>94</sup> So *de Invent.* i. 49. 92 and *ad Her.* iii. 2. 2. Cf. the imperfect subjunctive in *de Invent.* i. 50. 93.

Here very obviously the *ut si* clause is added primarily neither as an explanatory illustration nor yet as a straightforward comparison, but rather as a sharp retort through which the speaker would discredit the view advanced in the preceding sentence. This example of the detached *ut si* clause should be compared with the following case of *quasi*:

*Tusc. Disp. i. 38. 92:* Quam (sc. mortem) qui leviolem faciunt, somni simillimam volunt esse; *quasi* vero quisquam ita nonaginta annos *velit* vivere, ut, cum sexaginta confecerit, reliquos dormiat!

There still remain for discussion three cases; and their interpretation is a matter of doubt; e.g.:

*de Nat. Deo. iii. 31. 76:* Sed urgetis identidem hominum esse istam culpam, non deorum; *ut si* medicus gravitatem morbi, gubernator vim tempestatis *accuset*.

*de Div. ii. 64. 133:* Mea causa me mones, quod non intellegam? Quid me igitur mones? *ut si* quis medicus aegroto *imperet*, ut sumat "Terrigenam, herbigradam, domiportam, sanguine cassam" potius quam hominum more "cocteam" diceret.<sup>95</sup>

It may be that the *ut si* clauses in these examples should be interpreted as in *Brutus* 83. 287, quoted above. On the other hand, the subject matter of the clauses is so chosen as to suggest that the speaker is using them as retorts designed to discredit the position taken by his opponents in argument. In this respect they approximate the use shown in *Tusc. Disp. v. 26. 74*, also quoted above.<sup>96</sup>

Of the total of 76 cases of the use of the primary tenses of the subjunctive with *ut si*, 72 have been classed as of the loosely attached type. The other four follow:

*de Off. i. 14. 42:* In *eadem* sunt iniustitia, *ut si* in suam rem aliena *convertant*.

*Tusc. Disp. iv. 18. 41:* Qui modum igitur vitio quaerit, *similiter* facit, *ut si* posse *putet* eum, qui se e Leucata praecipitaverit, sustinere se, cum velit.

<sup>95</sup> The third case is *Acad. Prior. ii. 11. 33*, which is variously punctuated and understood; see Reid *ad loc.*

<sup>96</sup> The difference between the use with *ut si* and *quasi* in detached clauses of scornful rejection may be that one is a "should" subjunctive and the other a "would" subjunctive.



*Cat. Mai.* 6. 17: *Similesque sunt, ut si qui gubernatorem in navigando nihil agere dicant.*

*Phil.* ix. 6. 13: *Ut igitur, si ipsum consulam, quid velit, sic pedestrem . . . statuam tamquam ex eius auctoritate et voluntate decerno.*

The first three of these examples are probably of the coördinate type; the speaker seems to be stating simply and directly his verdict that an actual case is on a par with or like a supposed case. Note also in the other division of the sentence the balancing *idem, similiter, and similis*.<sup>97</sup>

The last case in the list has a faint suggestion of subordination. Cicero is speaking of his dead friend Servius Sulpicius, whose tastes he has had abundant opportunity to know; and so he votes for a statue representing the man standing, on the assumption that (*ut si*) this is what his friend would like. The thought is not very accurately expressed, but any ambiguity is rectified by the appended *tamquam ex eius auctoritate et voluntate*, which otherwise would be redundant.

#### 4. AC SI. 22 CASES CONSIDERED<sup>98</sup>

##### A. SECONDARY TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. 13 CASES CONSIDERED

*Ac si* is no exception to the rule for combinations in which the comparative word maintains its identity intact; for in this group two-thirds of the examples by tense shift indicate automatically that they are of the coördinate type; e.g.:

*p. Sulla.* 18. 51: *et id aeque valere debet, ac si pater indicaret.*

*ad Att.* iii. 13. 1: *proinde habebō, ac si scripsisses nihil esse.*

*de Fin.* iv. 24. 65: *et catuli aeque caeci (sunt), prius quam dis-pexerunt, ac si ita futuri semper essent*.<sup>99</sup>

<sup>97</sup> It should be stated, however, that some MSS omit the words *similesque sunt* in *Cat. Mai.* 6. 17. If these words are correctly omitted, the example belongs with the group of three last considered.

<sup>98</sup> *Ad Att.* xi. 21. 3 is not a case of conditional clause of comparison.

<sup>99</sup> This is the only case using the periphrastic form. It is an undoubted case of "future contrary to fact," however unorthodox that term may appear. The future contrary to fact is, of course, rare; e.g.:

*in Caecil.* 13. 43: *Ac si tibi nemo responsurus esset, tamen ipsam causam . . . demonstrare non posses.*

*in Verr.* ii. 1. 17. 44: *Nihil dicam nisi singulare, nisi id, quod si in alium reum diceretur, incredibile videretur.* Cf. also *p. Rab. Perd.* 6. 19.

The other like cases are *p. Mur.* 4. 10, *ad Fam.* iii. 5. 4, xiii. 33, and xiii. 43. 2, *ad Att.* iv. 14. 1 and iv. 19. 2. In the example last in the list there is a slight anacoluthon.

The correlatives here are rather interesting, namely: *proinde*, 1; *aeque*, 3; and *non secus*, 5. Thus there is a rather close analogy to the *quam si* group with its large proportion of automatically defined coördinate cases; for with *non secus* as correlative the literal force of *ut si* is "than if." It may be noted, too, that by litotes *non secus* is not far removed from *aeque*; and that *aeque* is a rather fit partner with *similis* and *idem* as a concomitant of the coördinate use.

Of the four cases remaining in this group, three are indeterminate: *p. Clu.* 52. 143, *post red. in Sen.* 8. 20, and *ad Att.* xiii. 49. 1. The fourth has something of the atmosphere of the subordinate use, and the imperfect subjunctive is hard to explain on other grounds:<sup>100</sup>

*ad Att.* xiii. 51. 1: *Nec . . . mehereule scripsi aliter, ac si πρὸς τὸν ὁμοίῳque scriberem.*

Cicero is here speaking of a letter which he wrote to Caesar, and of which he had neglected to send a copy to Atticus. In the *ac si* clause he seems to be describing the attitude he assumed at the time of writing.

In this group of four, *ac si* twice has literally the force "than if" (with *nec aliter* in the case just cited, and with *num secus* in *p. Clu.* 52. 143). The other cases use *iuxta ac si* and *perinde . . . ac si*.

#### B. PRIMARY TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. 9 CASES CONSIDERED

Though the tense gives little direct help in the matter of analysis, on the basis of meaning three of the examples included under this head may be classed as coördinate; e.g.:

*de Re Pub.* iii. 23. 34: *Civitas autem cum tollitur . . . , simile est quodam modo . . . ac si omnis hic mundus intereat et concidat.*

<sup>100</sup> Unless perhaps as a case of mechanical leveling.

This is the familiar type of sentence in which the speaker expresses simply and directly his own verdict that an actual situation is like a supposed case, or identical with it. The other examples are *de Nat. Deo.* iii. 3. 8 and *Parad.* iii. 2. 23, the latter being in indirect discourse. The correlatives are *aeque* and *similiter*.

Five cases seem to be indeterminate; e.g.:

*Part. Orat.* 24. 84: *Nam quae perdifficilia sunt, perinde habenda sunt, ac si effici non possint.*

Here the tense is not conclusive. But the avoidance of the imperfect in the face of the obvious antithesis looks away from coördination; so also the fact that the speaker seems to be presenting the case as it is to be viewed by the persons whose agency is implied in *habenda sunt*. The other indeterminate cases are: *ad Her.* ii. 13. 19, *de Invent.* i. 32. 54 and i. 54. 104, and *p. Q. Rosc.* 5. 15. The last in the list shows the unusual amplification *perinde ac si . . . perinde*, and the second has *pro eo ac si*.

In the remaining example of the group a good case for subordination can be made out:

*ad Fam.* xi. 28. 2: *AIunt enim patriam amicitiae praeponendam esse, proinde ac si iam vicerint obitum eius rei publicae fuisse utilem.*

The case is contributed by Matius, who is defending his conduct against the criticism of those who hold that he ought to rejoice at Caesar's taking off. The adverb *iam* shows that *vicerint* does not refer to the future. It may be that the clause is mechanically leveled; but it is more natural to interpret it as functionally subordinate, setting forth the attitude of the persons mentioned in the other division of the sentence—indeed, it is suggestive even of the detached type of *quasi*-clause with its scornful rejection of another's assumption ("just as though they had demonstrated that his death has been a benefit to the state!").



## 5. OTHER COMBINATIONS. 6 CASES

In loosely attached clauses appending an example, the *Auctor ad Herennium* twice substitutes the heavy *quod genus si* for *ut si*; e.g.:

*ad Her.* iii. 18. 31: Quintum quemque placet notari; *quod genus si* in quinto loco manum auream conlocemus.

So *ad Her.* ii. 23. 45; and Quintus Cicero provides one example of a detached clause of the parenthetical type introduced by *quo modo si*:

*de Petit. Cons.* 11. 45: Nam, cum id petitur quod honeste . . . . promittere non possumus, *quo modo si* qui *roget* ut contra amicum . . . . causam recipiamus, belle negatum est.

Twice the combination *et si* is used in the regular conditional clause of comparison:<sup>101</sup>

*de Fin.* iv. 12. 31: nec si ille sapiens ad tortoris eculeum . . . . ire cogatur, *similem* habeat vultum *et si* ampullam *perdidisset*.

*de Fin.* ii. 7. 21: Idque si ita dicit, . . . . dicit absurde, *similiter et si dicat* non reprehendendos parricidas, si nec cupidi sint nec. . . .

In the first of these examples the tense shift automatically marks coördination; note also the balancing *similis*. The other case, too, is probably coördinate, with some tendency toward the detached use, as seen with *ut si* giving an example.

The remaining case is very elaborate, and further complicated by its inverted order. The introductory phrase is *quem ad modum si*:

*Acad. Prior.* ii. 34. 110: Nec enim, *quem ad modum si* *quaesitum* ex eo sit, stellarum numerus par an impar sit, *item*, si de officio multisque aliis de rebus, in quibus versatus exercitatusque sit, nescire se dicat.

Here coördination is proved by the studied balance which on the one hand leaves it to the conditional clause of comparison to suggest a verb for the *si*-clause of the other division of the sentence, and, on the other hand, just as inevitably implies that *nescire se dicat* is to be supplied as apodosis in the conditional clause of comparison.

<sup>101</sup> With this use of *et*, cf. *similem* . . . . *et*, *Tusc. Disp.* v. 3. 9; *aeque* . . . . *et*, *de Fin.* iv. 27. 76; etc.

## V. CONCLUSION

The discussion in this paper centers about the two extremes marked by the conditional clause of comparison, namely:

(1) The coördinate type, in which the conditional clause of comparison represents a full conditional sentence, phrased from the point of view of the speaker's present, and no more influenced by the other division of the sentence than would be a clause introduced by *sed* or the like, e.g., *Est tam tyrannus iste conventus, quam si esset unus.*

(2) The functionally subordinate type, in which the conditional clause of comparison, with loss of feeling for suppressed apodosis, sinks to the level of a subordinate subjunctive construction and chooses its tense in accordance with the law of sequence, e.g., *Ita Brutos Cassiumque defendis, quasi ego eos reprehendam; quos satis laudare non possum.*

For examples of the coördinate type, the most obvious and satisfactory test is found in the frequent use of the secondary tenses of the subjunctive in cases where the primary tenses would be required if the law of sequence were in operation; for this choice of tense shows the influence of suppressed apodosis, and indicates that the conditional clause of comparison represents a contrary to fact conditional sentence phrased from the point of view of the speaker's present.

Along with other matters, the results obtained by the application of this test are shown in the following table:

## SUMMARY

	Other division of sentence primary		Other division of sentence secondary		Detached		Lack of concinnity	Totals
	Conditional clause secondary	Conditional clause primary	Conditional clause secondary	Conditional clause primary	Primary	Secondary		
quam si:								
"than if" .....	31	23	30				84	107
"as if" (degree) ....	3	10	0	34	0	0	13	
"as if" (manner) ....	3	3	4				10	
quasi .....	4	79	41	97	15	1		237
ut si .....	5	4	11	72	4	0		96
ac si .....	9	9	4	0	0	0		22
et si, quod genus si, etc.	1	2	0	3	0	0		6
Totals .....	56	130	90	172	19	1		468

In the above table, the figures in the first column indicate, for each group, the number of times a secondary tense of the subjunctive is used in a conditional clause of comparison in connection with a present, future, or future perfect in the other division of the sentence, this choice automatically stamping the case as coördinate.

The second and third columns show respectively for the same groups the number of times the primary tenses are used in a primary context, and the secondary tenses in a secondary context. Here, so far as tense use is concerned, the examples in general are indeterminate,<sup>102</sup> and it is necessary to seek other means of interpreting and classifying them.

As a preliminary to the consideration of these, a comparison of columns one and two will serve to justify the observation made at the beginning of the paper, namely, that there is a marked difference of behavior on the part of the conditional clause of comparison according as the comparative word maintains its identity intact (as in *quam si*) or is merged in an inseparable

<sup>102</sup> There are, however, exceptions; e.g., the choice of the pluperfect subjunctive rather than the imperfect sometimes sheds light on the type. See the examples treated on pages 192 ff.



compound (*quasi*). Thus of the 56 cases in which coördination is marked automatically by tense shift, the inseparable compound *quasi* supplies but 4, though it is the commonest introductory word in conditional clauses of comparison—in fact outnumbering the combined total of all the other compounds here listed.

This is specially interesting in view of the strong “contrary to fact” implication which the modern reader feels with most *quasi*-clauses; and it is evident at the start that the kernel of the problem of the conditional clause of comparison lies just here.

Reference to early Latin shows beyond a doubt that *quasi* represents an original *quam si*. This is shown in Plautus by such correlations as *plus . . . quasi* and *tam . . . quasi*, wherein *quasi* stands for *quam si* “than if,” and *quam si* “as if” in expressions of degree. In Cicero the feeling for the etymology of the word had all but faded out, *quasi* being there restricted to the vague limbo of “as if” in expressions of manner.

This development produced a situation more favorable to the evolution of a grammatically subordinate clause. For *quam si* in general stands for coördination, the verb of the *si*-clause taking its tense in accordance with a suppressed apodosis; whereas, with the Ciceronian *quasi*, the notion of suppressed apodosis could much more easily fade out; and, losing that point of support, the *quasi*-construction would naturally set up another kind of connection bringing it into a new relation to the other division of the sentence.<sup>103</sup>

Another factor of prime importance is the fact that, from the earliest times, *quasi* was a particle indicative of pretense or (false) assumption. Thus in Plautus there is frequent occurrence of such combinations as *simulare quasi*, where the meaning closely approximates “pretend that,” which doubtless is the source of the Silver Latin use whereby the *quasi*-clause appears in full subordination as a substitute for the regular indirect discourse construction or a causal *quod* with the subjunctive.

It may be well that this usage, heading straight toward full subordination, hastened the tendency to functional subordination

<sup>103</sup> For further detail, see pages 208 ff.

on the part of strict conditional clauses of comparison introduced by *quasi*.<sup>104</sup> At any rate the two constructions are closely parallel, and indeed all but merge at certain points, e.g., when the conditional clause of comparison shows such combinations as *ita loqui quasi*.<sup>105</sup>

But the important thing to note is that, in the strict conditional clause of comparison, as well as in some other constructions,<sup>106</sup> the notion of pretense or (false) assumption is seldom far removed from *quasi*; moreover, that the pretense or assumption is not on the part of the speaker, but on the part of some person indicated by the other division of the sentence. With the notion of suppressed apodosis fading, this presentation of a situation from the viewpoint of a person indicated in the other division of the sentence develops a situation exceedingly favorable to the depression of the *quasi*-clause to the rank of a grammatically dependent subjunctive construction.

This point will be clearer, perhaps, through the contrast afforded by two concrete illustrations:

*ad Att.* v. 20. 7: *Uberiores [litterae] erunt, quam si ex Amano misissem.*

*p. Clu.* 13. 37: *Asuvius autem brevi illo tempore, quasi in hortulos iret, in harenararias quasdam . . . perductus occiditur.*

<sup>104</sup> At this point account perhaps should be taken also of the possible influence exerted by the use of *quasi* with adjectives, participles, and the like to give an assigned ground for an action or attitude; e.g., *Cat. Mai.* 7. 22: *Sophocles . . . a filiis in iudicium vocatus est, ut . . . illum quasi desipientem a re familiari removerent iudices.*

<sup>105</sup> More striking still is a unique sentence in which the charge advanced against an individual is introduced by *quia quasi*, *Brut.* 12. 48: *Scripsit Thucydides . . . Isocratem . . . scribere . . . aliis solitum orationes . . . ; sed cum ex eo, quia quasi committeret contra legem "quo quis iudicio circumveniretur" saepe ipse in iudicium vocaretur, orationes aliis destitisse scribere.* Kellogg's note *ad loc.* makes the *quia* clause parenthetical, and would fit better if *committeret* were indicative.

<sup>106</sup> A rather unusual and amusing instance is found in a reference to the airs of a man who desired to appear to "know it all," *p. Plane.* 27. 65: *Tum quidam, quasi qui omnia sciret, "Quid? tu nescis," inquit, "hunc quaestorem Syracusis fuisse?"*

That this characteristic connotation of *quasi* touches even the "apologetic" use of the word would seem clear from a passage like *de Leg.* ii. 22. 56: *redditur . . . terrae corpus, et, ita locatum ac situm, quasi operimento matris obducitur.* Here *quasi operimento matris* is another way of saying: *quasi a matre operiatur.* So, too, as taken over in English, the word "quasi" stands for sham or imitation, e.g., "quasi official."

In the first of these examples, the tense shift automatically reveals the elliptical coördinate contrary to fact construction phrased from the point of view of the speaker's present: "than [would be the case], if I had written from Amanus." In the other, the *quasi*-clause sets forth the situation from the point of view, not of the speaker, but of the people indicated in the other division of the sentence; i.e., it tells the pretext advanced to lure the victim on to destruction, or the misapprehension under which he started on his fatal journey. There is scarce a suggestion of suppressed apodosis; and it really would do little violence to the sense of the passage to render *quasi* by "under the impression that," or the like. In other words, the *quasi*-clause is not far removed from a subordinate subjunctive construction setting forth the circumstances of an action.

In cases where the tense of the verb is indeterminate, this notion of pretense or (false) assumption on the part of a person indicated in the other division of the sentence is the best touchstone for conditional clauses of comparison of the functionally subordinate type.<sup>107</sup> Vice versa, it is a criterion of the coördinate type that the speaker phrases the clause from his own point of view as he utters the words,—either as a vague future (primary tense), or as a contrary to fact (secondary tense).

It accords well with this distinction that so many cases of *quam si* "than if" are stamped automatically by tense shift as coördinate; for in such sentences the speaker is apt to be simply and directly expressing his own verdict that a thing is greater or less than it would be under changed conditions. It probably also is in accord with this distinction that a balancing *idem* or *similis* so often is a concomitant of the coördinate use, the speaker there again simply and directly recording his own verdict as to the equality or similarity of two circumstances; e.g.:

p. Sulla 13. 39: perspicuum est . . . eandem esse vim negationis huius, *quam si* extra coniurationem hunc esse se scire dixisset.

<sup>107</sup> The range of this notion, its frequent implication of unreality, and the reason why, despite this implication, the *quasi*-clause adheres so steadily to the rule for sequence, are questions that have been treated in detail elsewhere, and it is not necessary to repeat here; see pages 208 ff. and pages 224 ff.



*Lael.* 4. 14: *Sensu enim amisso fit idem, quasi natus non esset omnino.*

*de Fin.* iv. 14. 36: *idem faciunt, ut si laevam partem neglegerent.*

*de Fin.* iv. 12. 31: . . . . *similem habeat vultum, et si ampullam perdidisset.*

It is frankly recognized that the absolutely certain test of the coördinate type lies in the tense use; but the supplementary criteria just pointed out are not without value, and they will be used to a certain extent in the tentative effort to sum up finally for each of the groups treated in this paper.

# 1. QUAM SI. 107 CASES CONSIDERED

Under this head the material is divided according as *quam si* means "than if" or "as if."

## A. "THAN IF." 84 CASES CONSIDERED

Of these 9 are disregarded as shedding no light on the usage (e.g., because of the use of ambiguous verb forms, such as those in *-erit*). Of the 75 cases remaining, 36<sup>108</sup> are automatically stamped as coördinate by the choice of tense.

In a single case, mechanical leveling in indirect discourse seems demonstrable; and there are 13 occurrences of the *futurum in praeterito* use, which exhibit certain features looking toward grammatical subordination.<sup>109</sup> The remaining cases, though ambiguous in point of tense, are probably largely coördinate; but in indirect discourse it is likely that there are some exceptions. The notion of pretense or (false) assumption that is so characteristic of the functionally subordinate type is noticeably absent in this group.

It seems, therefore, that *quam si* "than if" stands very consistently for coördination, except where indirect discourse introduces a mechanical subordinating force, and apart from cases of the *futurum in praeterito* use, in which exact analysis is difficult.

<sup>108</sup> I.e., the 31 listed in the table, and the five described on pages 192 ff.

<sup>109</sup> For details, see pages 196 ff.

## B. "AS IF." 23 CASES CONSIDERED

Of these, four are rejected as not in point; and the remainder are divided according as "as if" indicates degree (9 cases) or manner (10 cases).

The cases in which *quam si* "as if" denotes degree behave in the same fashion as the "than if" group; four<sup>110</sup> of the nine examples are marked automatically as coördinate, and the others show scarcely a suggestion of the characteristic color of the subordinate type.

The group of ten cases in which *quam si* indicates manner offers a marked contrast. Although three are formally stamped as coördinate, with one exception the others are more or less strongly tinged with the notion of pretense or (false) assumption characteristic of the subordinate type.

Moreover, there is a formal mark that distinguishes the cases of degree from the cases of manner. In the former, the divisions of the sentence are balanced by *tam . . . . quam*; in the latter (when *tam* is used) the words are brought together, making it possible to write *tamquam si*, and probably associating this group with the clearly subordinate construction with *tamquam*.<sup>111</sup>

<sup>110</sup> Including *de Re Pub.* i. 34. 51; see page 204.

<sup>111</sup> The material upon which this study is based is drawn from a collection of *si*-clauses; consequently cases are lacking in which *tamquam* is used without *si*. But from Merguet and other sources some twenty examples have been assembled. The group is thoroughly permeated with the flavor that is so characteristic of the subordinate type; e.g.:

*de Nat. Deo.* i. 8. 18; Tum Velleius fidenter sane, . . . . *tamquam* modo ex deorum concilio . . . . *descendisset*, . . . . inquit. (With this case of "putting on airs," cf. the example with *quasi qui*, *p. Planc.* 27. 65, p. 239, note 106.)

With this group, too, as with *quasi*, there is an occasional approach to the Silver Latin use as a substitute for the infinitive of indirect discourse, or *quod* with the subjunctive; so *Tusc. Disp.* iv. 11. 26 (*opinationem tamquam*), *Acad. Prior.* ii. 14. 44 (*sumpseras tamquam*), and *Brutus* 1. 5 (*tamquam . . . ., angimur*).

Cases using the secondary tenses are all in sequence, including *Phil.* ii. 3. 7, which, so far as thought is concerned, might well have been a coördinate past contrary to fact; the choice of the imperfect tense seems to show mechanical leveling. *Phil.* ii. 18. 44 is really indeterminate.

Examples using the primary tenses show one case of the periphrastic, referring, of course, to the future (*de Invent.* ii. 1. 3). Here, too, all examples are in sequence, excepting the following, which presents a very difficult problem:

*de Orat.* i. 35. 161: Tantus enim cursus verborum fuit . . . . ut eius vim aspexerim, vestigia . . . . vix viderim; et *tamquam* in aliquam . . . .

## 2. QUASI. 237 CASES CONSIDERED

This group is divided between normal conditional clauses of comparison, and detached cases.

The normal examples number 125, of which only 4 are stamped automatically by shift of tense as coördinate. A single case, by a curious lack of concinnity, uses the present subjunctive though it is involved in secondary sequence in indirect discourse. The remaining 120 cases are indeterminate, so far as tense is concerned; and the test of meaning discloses only five that may with probability be classed as coördinate. Everywhere else there is found with greater or less clearness the notion of pretense or (false) assumption that is the common earmark of the subordinate type.<sup>112</sup> In most of the examples the reader gathers the impression that the speaker holds the assumption made to be false; but this is not always the case, though exceptions are rare.

The detached type, numbering 112 cases, is exclamatory in character, and provides a convenient rhetorical device for discrediting an opponent in debate by holding him up to ridicule as supporting an untenable position, and it is much used in the orations and philosophical works. The exclamation is complete

*refertam domum venerim, non explicata veste . . . , sed iis omnibus reconditis, sic modo in oratione Crassi divitias . . . perspexi, sed . . . vix aspiciendi potestas fuit. . . . "Quin tu igitur facis idem," inquit Scaevola, "quod faceres, si in aliquam domum plenam ornamentorum venisses?"*

If this example is in sequence, it is hard to explain the perfect subjunctive in dependence upon *modo . . . perspexi*. Again, so far as thought is concerned, it might have been put as a coördinate past contrary to fact; indeed, the next speaker, who repeats the same thought in a pure condition, does use that form (*venisses*).

It appears, therefore, that the verb of the *tamquam*-clause has been irregularly drawn out of line under the influence of the perfect subjunctives immediately preceding it in another construction (such carelessness would find abundant parallels in Cicero's writings). For the lack of concinnity, compare the single case in which *quasi* reverts to the present subjunctive, though in a secondary context (*in Verr. ii. 3. 88. 204*). Such examples show very clearly what a strong hold the primary tenses had in the *quasi* and the *tamquam* clauses, despite the prevailing implication of unreality.

The close parallelism between the use of *quasi* and that of *tamquam* is illustrated more than once by their use side by side in the same passage; e.g., in *Verr. ii. 4. 22. 49*, *de Fin. iv. 14. 36*, and *Tusc. Disp. iv. 11. 26*.

<sup>112</sup> Compare the two types side by side in *ad Att. i. 10. 6*.



in itself, and implies no suppressed apodosis. The tenses appear to be chosen on the same basis as that for indicatives in like situation, though the implication of unreality (arising from the fact of rejection) is an essential feature of the use. The detached type probably exerted some influence in support of the use of the primary tenses of the subjunctive in regular conditional clauses of comparison in which there is a strong "contrary to fact" implication.

### 3. UT SI. 96 CASES CONSIDERED

Here, too, the material is divided between normal conditional clauses of comparison and detached cases.

The latter, numbering 76, constitute the striking feature of the group. In the detached use, *ut si* has the meaning "as, for example, if," and it provides a convenient method of introducing an illustration after the statement of a general principle or definition, being much used by the *Auctor ad Herennium*, and in the rhetorical works. The cases have mostly the primary tenses, representing conditions of the vague future type.<sup>113</sup> The secondary tenses show but four sporadic examples, apparently of the contrary to fact and futurum in praeterito order. In general, the detached *ut si* clause differs from the detached *quasi*-clause in that the former is phrased according to the common rules for conditional sentences; in other words, it really belongs to the coördinate order of conditional clauses of comparison, but is set off in a separate category by virtue of its detached subsecutive or parenthetic effect.

The normal conditional clauses of comparison introduced by *ut si* number 20, and of these 5<sup>114</sup> are automatically stamped as coördinate by tense shift. So far as tense is concerned, the remainder are indeterminate; but 5 show the meaning of clauses

<sup>113</sup> Such illustrative clauses not infrequently have both apodosis and protasis expressed; cf. p. 229, note 88, and Reid's comment on *Acad. Prior.* ii. 11. 33, with the references there given.

<sup>114</sup> To the number may be added a parenthetic case which is classified above with examples of the detached use (*de Invent.* ii. 30. 90).

of the coördinate type, and the other 10 have a possible hint of the notion of pretense or (false) assumption that goes with the subordinate use.

#### 4. AC SI. 22 CASES CONSIDERED

Of these, 9 are automatically stamped by tense shift as coördinate. On the basis of meaning, the other 13 examples are divided as follows: probably coördinate, 3; possibly subordinate, 8; and probably subordinate, 2.

#### 5. OTHER COMBINATIONS. 6 CASES CONSIDERED

Here *et si* appears twice, once in a clause automatically stamped as coördinate by tense shift, the other case being somewhat uncertain. The sole example with *quem ad modum si* is surely coördinate. There are three detached cases: two with *quod genus si*, appending an illustration, and one a parenthetic example introduced by *quo modo si*.

\* \* \* \* \*

The analysis above attempted is framed, of course, with a view to the interpretation of a Latin text. But aside from the question of interpretation, certain surface facts can be brought together in a brief synopsis that is not without practical value.

	Out of sequence	Within the law of sequence	Detached	Totals
quam si:				
"than if" .....	31 <sup>1</sup>	53 <sup>1</sup>		
"as if" (degree) .....	3	10	0	107
"as if" (manner) .....	3	7		
quasi .....	5 <sup>2</sup>	120	112	237
ut si .....	6 <sup>3</sup>	15	75	96
ac si .....	9	13	0	22
et si, etc. ....	1	2	3	6
Totals .....	58	220	190	468

<sup>1</sup> Five of these 53 cases by tense use show coördination, and hence are really out of sequence; see pp. 192 ff.

<sup>2</sup> Including one case in which the present subjunctive is used in a secondary context.

<sup>3</sup> Including one case that, by virtue of its parenthetic character, is elsewhere classed as detached.

## REGISTER OF CASES CONSIDERED

*Quam si*

## Present Subjunctive

de Invent. ii. 43. 133  
 de Invent. ii. 57. 172  
 in Verr. ii. 4. 60. 134  
 in Cat. ii. 10. 21  
 p. Caec. 21. 61  
 Phil. xi. 11. 26  
 ad Fam. ii. 16. 7  
 de Fin. ii. 26. 84  
 de Fin. ii. 27. 87  
 de Fin. iii. 9. 31  
 de Fin. v. 1. 2  
 Tusc. Disp. iv. 35. 76  
 de Nat. Deo. i. 35. 97  
 de Nat. Deo. iii. 32. 79  
 de Off. i. 7. 23  
 de Off. iii. 13. 55

## Imperfect Subjunctive

de Orat. iii. 13. 49  
 Brut. 85. 293  
 Orat. 24. 82  
 Orat. 48. 162  
 in Verr. ii. 2. 66. 160  
 in Verr. ii. 2. 67. 161  
 in Verr. ii. 3. 91. 213  
 in Verr. ii. 5. 43. 113  
 p. Tull. 12. 30  
 p. Caec. 23. 64  
 p. Clu. 31. 86  
 p. Clu. 40. 112  
 de Leg. Agr. ii. 25. 67  
 de Har. Resp. 18. 39  
 p. Balb. 3. 8  
 p. Balb. 10. 26  
 in Pis. 41. 99  
 p. Scaur. 16. 37  
 Phil. ii. 41. 106  
 ad Fam. iii. 6. 2  
 ad Fam. vi. 4. 3

ad Fam. xiii. 14. 2  
 ad Fam. xiii. 45  
 ad Fam. xv. 14. 3  
 ad Quint. Frat. iii. 2. 2  
 ad Att. v. 21. 14  
 ad Att. vi. 5. 1  
 ad Att. viii. 9. 1  
 ad Att. xii. 13. 1  
 ad Att. xii. 51. 1  
 ad Att. xiv. 10. 1  
 Acad. Prior. ii. 18. 58  
 de Fin. iii. 13. 44  
 de Fin. iii. 14. 48  
 de Fin. v. 20. 56  
 de Div. ii. 1. 1  
 de Div. ii. 64. 131  
 de Re Pub. iii. 33. 45  
 de Leg. iii. 10. 23  
 de Off. iii. 9. 38

## Perfect Subjunctive

p. Tull. 22. 51  
 p. Caec. 20. 58 (bis)  
 p. Caec. 31. 89  
 p. Flacc. 38. 95  
 de Dom. Sua 12. 33  
 p. Plane. 11. 28  
 p. Scaur. 16. 36  
 p. Mil. 7. 17  
 Phil. vi. 4. 10  
 ad Fam. xi. 17. 2  
 ad Fam. xvi. 5. 1  
 ad Quint. Frat. i. 2. 4. 14  
 ad Att. viii. 16. 2  
 ad Att. ix. 10. 8  
 de Re Pub. i. 6. 10  
 de Re Pub. i. 34. 51  
 de Leg. ii. 5. 13  
 de Off. iii. 20. 93  
 Parad. iii. 2. 23



## Pluperfect Subjunctive

de Orat. iii. 49. 200  
 Part. Orat. 38. 134  
 Top. 3. 15  
 p. Quinct. 5. 19  
 p. Sex. Rose. 32. 91  
 in Verr. ii. 1. 27. 69  
 in Verr. ii. 2. 10. 27  
 in Verr. ii. 2. 17. 42  
 p. Clu. 62. 173  
 de Leg. Agr. ii. 12. 30  
 p. Sulla 13. 39  
 post red. ad Quir. 1. 4  
 p. Sest. 12. 28  
 p. Cael. 27. 64  
 p. Plane. 25. 60

p. Plane. 27. 66  
 ad Fam. iii. 6. 1  
 ad Fam. v. 16. 3  
 ad Fam. vii. 3. 5  
 ad Fam. xii. 29. 2  
 ad Quint. Frat. ii. 13. 2  
 ad Att. v. 20. 7  
 ad Att. vii. 1. 7  
 ad Att. vii. 17. 2  
 ad Att. ix. 9. 4  
 ad Att. ix. 19. 2  
 de Nat. Deo. i. 4. 9  
 de Re Pub. iv. 10. 11  
 de Leg. ii. 22. 56  
 de Off. iii. 27. 100  
 Parad. iii. 1. 20

*Quasi*

## Present Subjunctive

ad Her. ii. 28. 45  
 ad Her. iv. 3. 4  
 ad Her. iv. 28. 38  
 ad Her. iv. 53. 66  
 de Invent. i. 48. 89  
 de Invent. i. 55. 107  
 de Invent. ii. 25. 76  
 de Invent. ii. 43. 126 (bis)  
 de Orat. i. 58. 246  
 de Orat. ii. 11. 47  
 de Orat. ii. 23. 97  
 de Orat. ii. 57. 232  
 de Orat. iii. 31. 122  
 de Orat. iii. 53. 202  
 Orat. 47. 157  
 Part. Orat. 36. 125  
 Top. 7. 32  
 p. Quinct. 2. 9  
 p. Sex. Rose. 16. 47  
 p. Sex. Rose. 33. 92  
 p. Sex. Rose. 36. 102  
 p. Sex. Rose. 50. 147  
 in Caecil. 4. 14  
 in Caecil. 5. 17  
 in Verr. ii. 1. 39. 99  
 in Verr. ii. 3. 19. 48  
 in Verr. ii. 3. 87. 203

in Verr. ii. 3. 88. 204  
 in Verr. ii. 3. 95. 222 (bis)  
 in Verr. ii. 4. 26. 59  
 in Verr. ii. 5. 53. 139  
 in Verr. ii. 5. 54. 141  
 p. Caec. 1. 2  
 p. Caec. 6. 16  
 de Imp. Pomp. 23. 67  
 p. Clu. 3. 8 (bis)  
 p. Clu. 50. 140  
 de Leg. Agr. i. 4. 13  
 de Leg. Agr. i. 5. 14  
 de Leg. Agr. ii. 31. 85  
 de Dom. Sua 12. 31  
 de Dom. Sua 19. 50  
 in Vat. 3. 7  
 p. Balb. 6. 14  
 in Pis. 23. 55  
 p. Plane. 23. 55  
 p. Plane. 25. 62  
 p. Plane. 29. 71  
 p. Mil. 7. 19  
 p. Mil. 31. 84  
 Phil. i. 9. 22  
 Phil. iii. 7. 18  
 Phil. x. 7. 15  
 Phil. xi. 2. 6  
 ad Fam. vi. 12. 3

ad Fam. ix. 17. 1  
 ad Fam. xv. 14. 5  
 ad Quint. Frat. i. 1. 7  
 ad Quint. Frat. 1. 3. 7  
 ad Att. i. 16. 10  
 ad Att. v. 18. 3  
 ad Att. viii. 2. 4  
 ad Att. xiv. 14. 2  
 ad M. Brut. i. 4. 3  
 Acad. Prior. ii. 2. 6  
 Acad. Prior. ii. 18. 58  
 Acad. Prior. ii. 25. 80  
 Acad. Prior. ii. 27. 88  
 Acad. Prior. ii. 34. 109  
 Acad. Prior. ii. 41. 128  
 Acad. Prior. ii. 45. 139 (bis)  
 de Fin. ii. 3. 7  
 de Fin. ii. 6. 17  
 de Fin. ii. 13. 42  
 de Fin. ii. 22. 70  
 de Fin. iv. 14. 36  
 de Fin. iv. 28. 77 (bis)  
 de Fin. v. 9. 26  
 Tusc. Disp. i. 4. 8 (bis)  
 Tusc. Disp. i. 7. 13  
 Tusc. Disp. i. 7. 14  
 Tusc. Disp. i. 17. 40  
 Tusc. Disp. i. 22. 50  
 Tusc. Disp. i. 33. 80  
 Tusc. Disp. i. 36. 86  
 Tusc. Disp. i. 38. 92  
 Tusc. Disp. ii. 12. 29  
 Tusc. Disp. ii. 20. 47  
 Tusc. Disp. iii. 5. 11  
 Tusc. Disp. iii. 26. 62  
 Tusc. Disp. iii. 29. 72  
 Tusc. Disp. iv. 11. 26  
 Tusc. Disp. iv. 34. 73  
 de Nat. Deo. i. 10. 26  
 de Nat. Deo. ii. 36. 91  
 de Nat. Deo. ii. 38. 96  
 de Nat. Deo. iii. 4. 11  
 de Nat. Deo. iii. 14. 36  
 de Div. ii. 20. 45  
 de Div. ii. 21. 48  
 de Div. ii. 27. 59

de Div. ii. 29. 62  
 de Div. ii. 39. 81  
 de Div. ii. 58. 119  
 de Re Pub. i. 5. 9  
 de Re Pub. i. 6. 10  
 de Re Pub. i. 17. 28  
 de Re Pub. iii. 7. 10  
 de Off. i. 16. 51  
 de Off. ii. 10. 35  
 de Off. iii. 9. 39  
 de Off. iii. 30. 110  
 Frag. Orat. A. xiii. 27 (M.)  
 Frag. Ep. E. vii. 4 (M)

## Periphrastic Present

de Leg. Agr. ii. 18. 47  
 de Petit. Cons. 1. 2

## Imperfect Subjunctive

Orat. 18. 58  
 p. Quinet. 3. 13  
 p. Quinet. 5. 18  
 in Verr. ii. 1. 38. 98  
 in Verr. ii. 1. 56. 148  
 in Verr. ii. 2. 30. 75  
 in Verr. ii. 3. 78. 181  
 in Verr. ii. 5. 26. 67  
 in Verr. ii. 5. 49. 129  
 de Leg. Agr. 2. 26. 70  
 p. Clu. 13. 37  
 p. Clu. 19. 54  
 p. Clu. 40. 111  
 p. Mur. 36. 75  
 p. Sulla 19. 54  
 p. Flacc. 34. 84  
 p. Flacc. 36. 91  
 de Dom. Sua 6. 14  
 p. Balb. 16. 36  
 p. Plane. 22. 54  
 Phil. ii. 23. 56  
 Phil. viii. 4. 11  
 ad Fam. ii. 9. 2  
 ad Fam. iii. 13. 1  
 ad Fam. vi. 8. 2  
 ad Fam. viii. 11. 2  
 ad Fam. ix. 24. 1

ad Fam. xi. 16. 3  
 ad Att. vii. 4. 2  
 de Fin. iv. 19. 47  
 de Div. ii. 20. 46  
 Cat. Mai. 4. 12  
 Lael. 4. 14

#### Periphrastic Imperfect

in Verr. ii. 2. 74. 183  
 in Verr. ii. 4. 22. 49  
 p. Clu. 66. 187  
 Cat. Mai. 23. 82

#### Perfect Subjunctive

ad Her. ii. 26. 42  
 de Invent. i. 33. 56  
 Orat. 70. 234  
 p. Quinct. 14. 45  
 p. Quinct. 26. 83  
 in Verr. ii. 1. 11. 29  
 in Verr. ii. 1. 13. 35  
 in Verr. ii. 3. 19. 48  
 in Verr. ii. 3. 78. 182  
 in Verr. ii. 3. 88. 204  
 in Verr. ii. 3. 91. 213  
 in Verr. ii. 5. 66. 169  
 in Verr. ii. 5. 71. 182  
 p. Tull. 16. 39  
 p. Caec. 1. 2  
 p. Caec. 6. 16  
 p. Caec. 6. 17  
 p. Caec. 21. 61  
 p. Clu. 3. 8  
 p. Clu. 39. 109  
 p. Clu. 50. 138  
 p. Mur. 17. 35  
 p. Mur. 36. 77  
 de Dom. Sua 12. 31  
 p. Sest. 28. 61  
 p. Sest. 52. 111  
 in Pis. 9. 18  
 in Pis. 23. 55  
 p. Plane. 20. 49  
 p. Plane. 25. 61  
 p. Plane. 33. 82  
 p. Mil. 7. 17  
 Phil. xiii. 10. 23

Phil. xiii. 19. 40  
 ad. Fam. iii. 7. 3  
 ad. Fam. v. 10 A. 3  
 ad Fam. vi. 1. 4  
 ad Fam. vi. 8. 2  
 ad Fam. vii. 27. 1  
 ad Fam. ix. 6. 3  
 ad Fam. ix. 22. 3  
 ad Att. i. 10. 6  
 ad Att. vi. 1. 12  
 ad Att. x. 17. 4  
 Tusc. Disp. i. 35. 85  
 de Nat. Deo. iii. 3. 7  
 de Nat. Deo. iii. 35. 86  
 de Div. ii. 21. 48  
 de Div. ii. 26. 56  
 de Leg. ii. 3. 6  
 de Leg. ii. 19. 49  
 de Fato 3. 5  
 Tim. 7. 23  
 Frag. Or. B. 32 (M.)  
 in Sal. 2. 4

#### Pluperfect Subjunctive

ad Her. ii. 25. 39  
 ad Her. ii. 28. 45  
 ad Her. iv. 55. 68  
 in Verr. ii. 3. 50. 118  
 in Verr. ii. 4. 34. 75  
 in Verr. ii. 4. 54. 120  
 in Verr. ii. 5. 43. 111  
 p. Mur. 36. 75  
 p. Flacc. 21. 49  
 p. Flacc. 30. 74  
 de Dom. Sua 6. 14  
 Phil. xii. 7. 18  
 ad Fam. ix. 6. 3  
 ad Att. i. 10. 6  
 ad Att. v. 13. 1  
 ad Att. vi. 9. 3  
 de Fin. v. 31. 94  
 de Nat. Deo. ii. 43. 111  
 de Leg. ii. 20. 51  
 de Leg. ii. 21. 53  
 de Leg. iii. 13. 30  
 de Off. iii. 32. 113  
 Lael. 4. 14



*Ut si*

## Present Subjunctive

- ad Her. i. 15. 25 (bis)
- ad Her. ii. 20. 32
- ad Her. ii. 26. 40
- ad Her. ii. 26. 41 (bis)
- ad Her. ii. 27. 43
- ad Her. ii. 28. 45
- ad Her. ii. 29. 46
- ad Her. iii. 2. 2 (quarter)
- ad Her. iii. 4. 7
- ad Her. iii. 9. 17
- ad Her. iii. 22. 37
- ad Her. iv. 6. 9
- ad Her. iv. 31. 42
- ad Her. iv. 32. 43 (ter)
- ad Her. iv. 33. 44
- ad Her. iv. 34. 46 (ter)
- ad Her. iv. 53. 67
- ad Her. iv. 54. 67
- de Invent. i. 5. 7
- de Invent. i. 14. 19
- de Invent. i. 18. 26
- de Invent. i. 46. 85
- de Invent. i. 49. 92 (ter)
- de Invent. i. 50. 93
- de Invent. i. 50. 94 (bis)
- de Invent. i. 50. 95
- de Invent. ii. 7. 23
- de Invent. ii. 9. 28
- de Invent. ii. 11. 36
- de Invent. ii. 15. 48
- de Invent. ii. 30. 93
- de Invent. ii. 34. 104
- de Orat. iii. 23. 88
- de Orat. iii. 29. 113 ff. (septies)
- Brut. 83. 287
- Part. Orat. 18. 62
- Top. 4. 24
- Top. 5. 27
- Top. 5. 28
- Top. 7. 31
- Top. 15. 58
- Top. 16. 62
- Top. 21. 82

- Top. 22. 85
- Phil. ix. 6. 13
- Acad. Prior. ii. 11. 33
- de Fin. v. 12. 35
- Tusc. Disp. iv. 18. 41
- Tusc. Disp. v. 26. 74
- de Nat. Deo. iii. 31. 76
- de Div. ii. 64. 133
- de Fato 7. 13
- de Off. i. 14. 42
- de Off. i. 40. 145
- Cat. Mai. 6. 17

## Imperfect Subjunctive

- de Invent. i. 50. 93
- de Orat. i. 53. 230
- Brut. 16. 62
- de Opt. Gen. Or. 4. 10
- Phil. vi. 2. 4
- Phil. ix. 5. 12
- ad Fam. ii. 14. 1
- ad Fam. vii. 20. 1
- ad Quint. Frat. i. 1. 6. 17
- Acad. Prior. ii. 15. 48
- Acad. Prior. ii. 27. 88
- de Fin. iv. 6. 14
- de Fin. iv. 14. 36
- de Fin. iv. 23. 51
- de Off. i. 25. 87

## Periphrastic Imperfect

- Lael. 16. 59

## Perfect Subjunctive

- ad Her. iii. 20. 33
- ad Her. iv. 32. 43
- de Invent. ii. 9. 28

## Pluperfect Subjunctive

- de Invent. ii. 30. 90
- ad Fam. xiii. 21. 2
- ad M. Brut. ii. 5. 3
- de Off. iii. 15. 62

*Ac si*

Present Subjunctive	ad Att. iv. 19. 2
ad Her. ii. 13. 19	ad Att. xiii. 51. 1
Part. Orat. 24. 84	Periphrastic Imperfect
de Nat. Deo. iii. 3. 8	de Fin. iv. 24. 65
de Re Pub. iii. 23. 34	Perfect Subjunctive
Parod. iii. 2. 23	de Invent. i. 32. 54
Imperfect Subjunctive	de Invent. i. 54. 104
p. Clu. 52. 143	p. Q. Rosc. 5. 15
p. Mur. 4. 10	ad Fam. xi. 28. 2
p. Sulla 18. 51	Pluperfect Subjunctive
post red. in Sen. 8. 20	ad Fam. iii. 5. 4
ad Fam. xiii. 33	ad Att. iii. 13. 1
ad Fam. xiii. 43. 2	ad Att. xiii. 49. 1
ad Att. iv. 14. 1	

*Et si, etc.*

ad Her. ii. 28. 45	Acad. Prior. ii. 34. 110
ad Her. iii. 18. 31	de Fin. ii. 7. 21
de Petit. Cons. 11. 45	de Fin. iv. 12. 31

## SUPPLEMENTARY LIST

*Tamquam* (Incomplete)

Present Subjunctive	Perfect Subjunctive
Orat. 53. 178	de Orat. i. 35. 161
de Fin. iv. 14. 36	de Orat. ii. 71. 290
de Fin. v. 15. 42	Brut. 1. 5
Tusc. Disp. iv. 11. 26	ad Fam. xii. 9. 1
Periphrastic Present	de Leg. ii. 3. 6
de Invent. ii. 1. 3	de Off. i. 37. 134
	Cat. Mai. 2. 6
Imperfect Subjunctive	Pluperfect Subjunctive
in Verr. ii. 4. 39. 84	in Verr. ii. 4. 39. 84
p. Clu. 60. 166	Phil. ii. 18. 44
Phil. ii. 3. 7	de Nat. Deo. i. 8. 18
Phil. ii. 16. 41	
Phil. x. 5. 10	
Acad. Prior. ij. 14. 44	

*Transmitted June 22, 1920.*





## THE LUCRETIAN HEXAMETER

BY

WILLIAM A. MERRILL

---

It is my purpose to investigate the metrical technique of Lucretius, book by book, verse by verse, and foot by foot, in order that sufficient material may be at hand for comparative study of other hexameter poets and for possible improvement of the Lucretian text. No attention whatever will be paid to prosody. I am well aware that the subject has been treated by others to a greater or less extent, but I trust that the completeness of the investigation will justify the effort.

## BOOK I

## THE FIRST FOOT

*Caesura after monosyllable*

When there is a masculine caesura in the 1st foot, the 1st foot is necessarily a monosyllable. Of the 1103 verses containing the 1st foot 439, or nearly 40 per cent, have an apparent masculine caesura in this place. The monosyllables consist of 235 conjunctions, 63 pronouns, 61 adverbs, 50 prepositions, 13 verbs, and 17 nouns. But in the great majority of these cases the monosyllable is either a proclitic, or it has an enclitic subjoined to it, or it is part of a word group. There is probably a caesura demanded by a logical pause in verse 421 *haec in quo sita sunt*, 1082 *res in concilium*, 403 *sunt per quae*, 1080 *quin sua quod*, 1024 *sed quia*

multa, 611 non ex, 963 nunc extra, 772 nil in concilio; in all 8 cases. But even in these the caesura is by no means certain, as rhythm frequently overrides the logical connection of words. Perhaps, then, it would be better to exclude the 8 cases and to disallow any caesura at all under such conditions. Of the conjunctions, the most frequent is *et*, proclitic 35 times and with an enclitic 5 times; *nam*, proclitic 22 times and with an enclitic 6; *nec*, proclitic 44 times and with an enclitic 5; *at*, proclitic 21 times and with an enclitic once; *sed*, proclitic 15 times. *An*, *aut*, *cum*, *dum*, *ne*, *ni*, *quam*, *quin*, *quod*, *seu*, *si*, *sin*, *ut*, occur less frequently. Of the pronouns, the relative is most frequent with 36 cases: 19 proclitic, 11 with enclitic, and 6 in a word group. The demonstrative pronoun comes next with 20 cases. The other pronouns are infrequent. Of the adverbs with minimized caesura, *quo* and *quam* occur 6 times, *non* 10 times, *nunc*, *huc*, *haud*, *tum*, and *sic* 5 times each, and *qui*, *hinc*, *tam*, *iam*, *hic*, and *ut* occasionally. Of the prepositions, all are proclitic: *ex* occurs 19 times, *in* 10, and *per*, *de*, *e*, *cum*, *ad*, and *a* occasionally. Of the verbs, *sunt* is proclitic 6 times and has an enclitic twice; *est* is proclitic 3 times, and *dat* once. Of nouns, *res* or *rem* occurs 7 times, *nil* 7, *vis*, *vim* twice, and *nox* once. There should be added for completion of the number of masculine caesuras the 78 cases of *elison*, making 517 in all.

### *Caesura after a trochee*

After a trochaic word in the 1st foot there is apparent caesura 102 times, less than 1 per cent, but in 21 of these the trochaic word forms a word group with the following syllable, so that there are but 81 cases where the caesura is not obscured. An example of the first class is in verse 75, *unde refert victor*, where *unde* is a proclitic; and of the second class in verse 2, *alma Venus*. Here, again, some might say that *alma Venus* is a compound noun; in any case the caesura is weak.

There are 8 cases of trochaic caesura after two words; the foot may then be said to have 2 caesuras. In all cases the monosyllables are parts of word groups.

*Elision after the first syllable*

There is no case of elision of the first syllable of the 1st foot.

*Elision of trochaic word.*

There are 58 cases of elision of a trochaic word at the beginning of the 1st foot.

*Elision of spondee and dactyls*

There are 6 cases of elision of a spondee; 3 cases are with quando, 2 with magno opere, and 1 (363) with contra.

There are 11 cases of the elision of a dactyl. The dactyl is usually an infinitive or ablative form or is the word omnia.

*Ecthlipsis of trochee, spondee, etc.*

There are 12 cases of ecthlipsis of a trochaic word: 5 of quorum, 3 of verum, 2 of ignem, and 1 each of tantum and aurum. There is no case of ecthlipsis of a spondee or dactyl in the 1st foot.

*Thesis<sup>1</sup> of foot a monosyllable*

There is a monosyllable in the thesis of the foot 118 times, nearly 10 per cent. Of these, as has already been stated, 8 verses have 2 monosyllables in the thesis. Pronouns number 7 personal, of which 1 is proclitic and 6 are in a word group; 23 relative, of which 1 is a proclitic; 2 demonstrative, 2 reflexive, and 1 interrogative; 35 in all. There are 4 nouns in a word group; 5 verbs, of which 3 are enclitic and 2 in word groups; 13 adverbs, 1 being enclitic and 12 in word groups; 18 proclitic prepositions, and 43 conjunctions, 23 being enclitic, 8 proclitic, and 12 in a word group. The tendency is apparent of melting monosyllables into word-complexes.

<sup>1</sup> Unaccented part of the foot.



*Dieresis*

The 1st foot is contained within one word 228 times, 20 per cent. Of these 163 are dactyls and 65 spondees. There is, altogether, dieresis after the 1st foot 430 times, nearly 40 per cent. In 106 of the instances the dieresis is obscured because of word groupings, and consequently there is no perceptible pause in the rhythm.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

The 1st foot is a dactyl in 688 cases, approximately 61 per cent; a spondee in 414 cases, 39 per cent.

## THE SECOND FOOT

*Caesura after monosyllables*

In the 2d foot there is a masculine caesura after a monosyllable 226 times, 20 per cent. The monosyllables consist of 61 conjunctions, 47 pronouns, 23 adverbs, 69 prepositions, 11 verbs, and 15 nouns. With the relative pronoun there is probable caesura in 8 cases; with the demonstrative in 2, with the reflexive in 4; and with the verb 2 instances of caesura. All the other 210 cases have the caesura minimized. Of proclitics there are 9 cases with relative pronouns; 5, being all, with personal pronouns; 4 with demonstratives; 2 with reflexives. With the nouns, *res* is proclitic 5 times, *vis* twice, and *nil* once (188). *Est* and *sit* are proclitic 5 times. Of the conjunctions all are proclitic except *et*, enclitic in 5 places. With adverbs all 23 are proclitics and also the 69 prepositions. In a few cases the monosyllable forms a word group with the last syllable of the 1st foot and also looks forward as a proclitic to the second syllable of the 2d foot. Thus, in 567, *mollia quae fiunt*, the 3 words form a word group and similarly 485, *sed quae sunt*. More frequently there are cases like that in 421, *haec in quo*, where the *in* is proclitic with *quo*, and 377 *scilicet id*. There are 7 such duplications with relative pronouns, 1 with a demonstrative, 4 with reflexives, and 4 with

nouns. Enclitics are more infrequent both in arsis and thesis. In 423, *sensus cui nisi*, *nisi* is probably an enclitic; in 836, *ossibus hic et*, *et* is enclitic; but in 126, *coepisse et*, *et* is in arsis and is a genuine enclitic. Altogether, I note 16 cases of this kind. Of the conjunctions, *et* is the most frequent with 21 cases, then *ut* with 12, *si* with 6, and *ac* with 5. In addition there are many cases of word groups where it is impossible to say that either word is a proclitic or enclitic, yet the two together certainly make a word-complex. Such, for example, is 91, *sensit et hunc propter*, 172, *atque hac re nequeunt*, 958, *omne quod est igitur*. Often there is a valid caesura but the monosyllable is thrown back on the ultima of the 1st foot. There seem to be 23 cases of pronouns in such word groups, 5 of verbs, and 4 of nouns—all res.

#### *Masculine caesura in the second foot*

Including the cases of caesura after monosyllables, there are in all 687 cases of masculine caesura in the 2d foot, 62 per cent. In these, 264 are obscured by word grouping of one kind or another, and 423 have a genuine caesura. There is masculine caesura with polysyllables in 430 cases, 30 per cent; 127 after an anapest, 94 after a choriambus, 82 after a molossus, 67 after a spondee, and 60 after an iambus. In addition there are 10 cases of trochaic caesura where the caesura is thrown back and is probably masculine; 8 of these cases are with *atque*; an example may be found in verse 163. Adding the instances in elision there are 736 masculine caesuras in the 2d foot.

#### *Caesura after trochee*

There are 50 cases of caesura after a trochaic word and 3 instances of a double caesura, both masculine and feminine—517, 752, 1069. In addition, there are 80 cases of trochaic caesura at the end of words of various length as follows: after an anti-bacchius (— — ∪) 29 times, after a 4th epitrite (— — — ∪) 19 times, after a 3d paeon (∪ ∪ — ∪) 17 times, after an amphibrach (∪ — ∪) 8 times, and after a dactyl-trochee in one word, 7 times.

There are, then 133 cases of trochaic caesura without elision, of which 3 also contain a masculine caesura. Of these the caesura is obscured 26 times.

*Elision in arsis of the second foot*

There are 2 cases of elision in the arsis of the 2d foot: 326, *nec mare quae impendent*, and 985, *undique si inclusum*.

*Elision before arsis*

There are 57 cases of elision of polysyllables continued from the 1st foot: 12 of pyrrich words, 12 of trochees, 2 of spondees (184, 788), 6 of tribrachs, 4 of molossi, 3 anapests, 9 of an antibacchius (— ∪), 7 of a 1st paeon (— ∪ ∪ ∪) and 2 (671, 793) of a choriambus.

*Elision of trochaic endings*

There is elision of a trochaic word 19 times in caesura, and of longer words as follows: amphibrach 4 times, antibacchius, 2 (187, 787), 4th epitrite (— — — ∪) 10 times, 3d paeon (∪ ∪ — ∪) twice (448, 973), and of a dactyl-trochee 3 times. Probably in all these 40 cases the caesura is minimized by the elision.

*Elision of spondees, dactyls, etc.*

There are 2 instances of elision in caesura of a spondaic word and 1 (in verse 437) of the elision of a dactyl that forms part of an Ionic a maiore (— — ∪ ∪); in 790, of one that is part of a spondee-dactyl. There are 3 instances of the elision of pyrrichs in the thesis of dactyls.

*Ecthlipsis of trochee*

There are 7 cases (none minimized) of ecthlipsis of trochees in the 2d foot: 3 of trochaic words, 2 of a 3d paeon (∪ ∪ — ∪), and 1 each of a 4th epitrite—*aerumnarum* in 108, and of a dactyl-trochee—*religionum* in 932.



*Ecthlipsis in and before arsis*

There are 15 cases of ecthlipsis of words in or preceding the arsis of the 2d foot. In the arsis are 2 monosyllables: nullam rem e, 150, and robore cum in saxi, 882, where many editors read robore cum saxi. There are 5 cases of a trochaic word, 4 of an antibacchius, 3 of a tribrach, and 1 of a pyrrich.

*Thesis of second foot a monosyllable*

There are 79 cases of a monosyllable in the thesis of the 2d foot. In 18 cases the monosyllable is a pronoun: once interrogative in a word group (758), twice personal as proclitic, and once (451) in a word group; 5 times the relative is proclitic and 4 times in a word group; 4 times the demonstrative is proclitic and once (787) an enclitic. There is 1 adjective, an enclitic (365). There are 6 nouns: 1 proclitic (766), 2 enclitic, and 3 in a word group. Adverbs are proclitic 6 times, enclitic twice, and in a word group 6 times. Prepositions are proclitic in 14 instances, and in a word group in 2. Conjunctions are proclitic in 14 cases, enclitic 6, and in a word group 4 times. In all 79 cases the monosyllable is attached to another word.

*Dieresis*

The 2d foot is contained within one word 16 times: 12 dactyls and 4 spondees. All the spondees form part of word groups, and many of the dactyls also. There is, altogether, dieresis after the 2d foot in 157 verses—14 per cent. Of the 157, in 93 the dieresis is obscured through word grouping.

*First and second foot in one word*

Both the 1st and 2d feet are contained within a word in verses 236, 468, and 591.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

There are 530 dactyls, 48 per cent, in the 2d foot, and 572 spondees, 52 per cent.

## THE THIRD FOOT

*Caesura after monosyllables*

In the 3d foot there is a masculine caesura after monosyllables 125 times, a little more than 10 per cent. The monosyllables consist of 26 conjunctions, 28 pronouns, 9 adverbs, 28 prepositions, 30 verbs, and 4 nouns. With the relative pronoun there is a probable caesura in 1 case (204), with the personal pronoun 1 (809), and with the verb 2 (236, 848). Of proclitics there are 5 cases with relative pronouns and 3 with demonstratives. Of the conjunctions, 12 are proclitic, but *ac* is enclitic in 1040 and *et* in 994. With the adverbs 7 are proclitic, and so are all of the 27 prepositions. There are also word groups: once with the relative (451), once with the personal pronoun (4), once (945) with a demonstrative, 14 with a reflexive, 4 with a noun, 5 with a verb, and 2 with adverbs. Enclitics in this position are few except with verbs: once (41) of a demonstrative; but there are 23 verbs, among which *sunt* occurs 4 times, *sint* twice, *sit* once, and the rest *est*.

*Masculine caesura in the third foot*

There are altogether 940 cases of masculine caesura in the 3d foot, a little over 83 per cent. In 447 cases there is anapestic rhythm (40 per cent) and of these 185 have an anapestic word. In 32 additional instances the caesura is obscured by elision or *ecthlipsis* and is therefore retracted as in verse 77, *quanam sit ratione atque alte terminus haerens*; there the caesura falls after *ratione*. There are 5 cases with *que* and 9 with *atque*. Furthermore, in 13 cases the caesura falls before an enclitic as in 5, *concupitur visitque exortum*, where the caesura comes between *visit* and *que*. In all there are 34 such cases of obscured caesura. The masculine caesura in the 3d foot is minimized in 71 cases through word grouping, thus leaving 869 cases where it is probable that the principal caesura is penthemimeral. There is a masculine caesura with polysyllables in 815 cases: 185 after an

anapest, 73 after a choriambus, 107 after a molossus, 318 after a spondee, 120 after an iambus, 7 after a dispondee, 2 after an anapest-spondee, and 1 each after a molossus-spondee (417), spondee-anapest (648) and 1st epitrite (318). Adding elision there are in all 972 instances of masculine caesura in the 3d foot.

#### *Caesura after trochee*

There are 23 cases of caesura after a trochaic word, and 4 cases (223, 337, 442, 745) of a double caesura both masculine and feminine. In addition there are 49 cases of trochaic caesura at the end of words, as follows: after an antibacchius 20 times, after a 4th epitrite 4 times, after a 3d paeon 15 times, after an amphibrach 7 times, and dactyl-trochee 3 times. There are, then, 76 cases in all of trochaic caesura without elision. Of these the caesura is minimized 29 times.

#### *Elision of monosyllable in arsis*

There is elision of a monosyllable in the 1st syllable of the 3d foot once: 826, confiteare et re et.

#### *Elision before the arsis*

There are altogether 30 cases of elision of polysyllables continued from the 2d foot: 3 pyrrichs, 6 trochees, 2 spondees, 9 tribrachs, 1 molossus (801), 5 anapests, 1 antibacchius (351), and 3 of the 1st paeon.

#### *Trochaic elision*

There is elision of a trochaic word 13 times and of longer words as follows: antibacchius 9, 3d paeon 6, amphibrach 2; in all 30. Probably in all these cases the caesura is thrown back and so becomes masculine.

#### *Elision of spondees, dactyls, etc.*

There are no cases of elision or ecthipsis of a spondaic or dactylic word in the 3d foot. There are 4 cases of the elision of a pyrrich in the thesis of dactyls, 3 of them of the preposition sine.



*Ecthipsis of trochees*

There are no cases of the ecthipsis of trochees in the 3d foot, but 4 of words ending in a trochee: an antibacchius in 146, 368, and 721, and a 3d paeon in 324. In all these cases the ecthipsis is minimized.

*Ecthipsis before arsis*

There are 17 cases of ecthipsis of words in or preceding the arsis of the 3d foot. In the arsis there are no monosyllables, but 10 trochees, 3 tribrachs, and 4 1st paeons.

*Thesis of third foot a monosyllable*

There are 180 cases of a monosyllable in the thesis of the 3d foot. In 40 cases the monosyllable is a pronoun: 5 interrogative, 33 relative, 2 demonstrative. The relative is proclitic in 30 instances, and forms a word group in 3 instances. The demonstrative is proclitic in 368 and 679. There are 3 adjectives: 2 independent (366, 625) and 1 in a word group (458). There are 16 nouns: *res* is proclitic 7 times, *vis* twice, and *vi* once; *res* is enclitic 3 times and in a word group 3 times. There are 10 verbs, 1 independent (28), 6 proclitic, 1 enclitic (1077), and 2 in a word group. Adverbs are proclitic 16 times, with enclitics twice, and 3 times in a word group. Prepositions are proclitic 48 times; conjunctions 36, and in word groups 6 times. The monosyllable is independent in position only 3 times. In verse 185 there is elision of a monosyllable in thesis: *si e*.

*Dieresis*

The 3d foot is twice contained within a word: *mollia* 570 and *inter* 787; both probably belong to word groups. There is dieresis altogether after the 3d foot 235 times, 21 per cent. Of these, in 201 cases the dieresis is obscured through word grouping.

*First half of verse in one word.*

The first, second, and first half of the 3d foot are contained within one word in verse 85, Iphianassai, and in verse 583, innumerabilibus.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

There are 371 dactyls in the 3d foot, approximately 34 per cent, and 731 spondees, 66 per cent.

## THE FOURTH FOOT

*Caesura after monosyllables*

In the 4th foot there is a masculine caesura after monosyllables 62 times. The monosyllables consist of 5 conjunctions, 26 pronouns, 1 adverb, 9 prepositions, 16 verbs, and 5 nouns. Of the relative pronouns, 5 are proclitic and 1 (421) is in a word group. The personal pronoun occurs 4 times in word groups. The demonstrative is proclitic 4 times and occurs 3 times in word groups. The reflexive occurs 9 times in word groups. All 5 of the conjunctions are proclitic and also the one adverb (722). The 9 prepositions are all proclitic. Five verbs are proclitic, 4 enclitic, and 7 are in a word group. Est occurs 8 times, sint 4, sunt twice, and sit and fit once.

*Masculine caesura in the fourth foot*

There are 613 cases of masculine caesura in the 4th foot—55 per cent of the 1098 verses. In 237 cases there is anapestic rhythm, and of these 153 have anapestic words. In 47 cases the caesura is obscured: 29 by elision or ecclipsis, 11 by a proclitic or word group, and 9 times through being thrown back by an enclitic, as in 67, primusque obsistere, 440, quodcumque erit. There is masculine caesura with polysyllables in 362 cases (33 per cent); in 298 cases (27 per cent) the caesura follows spondaic words, in 40 cases a spondee distributed between two words, a

molossus 21 times, a dispondee twice, and a choriambus once (975). In all, including elisions, there are 661 instances of masculine caesura.

#### *Trochaic caesura*

There are only 2 cases of caesura after a trochaic word in the 4th foot (834, 876); 7 after an antibacchius, and 1 (970) after a 3d paeon. There are, besides, 11 cases of a double caesura, both masculine and feminine; altogether there are 21 cases of unelided trochaic caesura. In 11 of them the caesura is minimized.

#### *Elision of monosyllable in arsis*

There are no cases of elision of a monosyllable in the arsis of the 4th foot.

#### *Elision before arsis*

There are 21 cases of elision before the arsis of polysyllables continued from the 3d foot: 1 of a pyrrich (216), 15 of trochees, 1 of a spondee (139), 3 of tribrachs, and 1 (186) of an anapest.

#### *Elision of trochees*

There is elision of a trochaic word in caesura 5 times, and of longer words as follows: amphibrach 6, 3d paeon 8, and antibacchius 10; total 29. In all of these the caesura is probably thrown back as in 627, *solida atque aeterna*. There is elision of *que* 10 times and of *atque* 4 times.

#### *Elision of spondees, dactyls, etc.*

There is elision of an Ionic *a maiore* in 27, of a molossus in 305 and 306, and of spondees in 533, 782, 788. There are 3 cases of elision of pyrrichs in thesis.

#### *Ecthlipsis*

There are 13 cases of ecthlipsis of trochees, all with retracted caesura. There are 2 trochaic words, 8 amphibrachs, and 3 3d paeons. The ecthlipsis is obscured in 188, 198, and 450. Ecthlipsis occurs before the arsis of the 4th foot 3 times.



*Thesis of fourth foot a monosyllable*

There is a monosyllable in the thesis of the 4th foot 173 times. Of these one verse (589) has 2 monosyllables in the fall of the foot. Pronouns number 4 personal, all of which are proclitic, 28 relative, of which 25 are proclitic and 3 in word groups; 5 reflexive, 1 proclitic and 4 in word groups; and 3 interrogative, all proclitic; 40 in all. There are 32 nouns, of which 21 are proclitic, 8 enclitic, and 3 in word groups. Of verbs, 10 are proclitic, 4 enclitic; adverbs, 10 proclitic; prepositions 50, and conjunctions 27, all proclitic.

*Dieresis*

The 4th foot is contained within a word 170 times and the foot also closes with a word in 455 other cases, making 625 in all, 56 per cent. The dieresis is minimized through word grouping in 172 cases; 5 where the foot is contained within a word and 167 otherwise. There seems to be a bucolic dieresis in 4 cases: 259, 626, 853, and 961.

*Last two and a third feet in one word*

In verses 830 and 834 the last two and a third feet are contained within one word—homoeomerian.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

There are 268 dactyls in the 4th foot, approximately 24 per cent, and 840 spondees, 76 per cent.

## THE FIFTH FOOT

*Caesura after monosyllables*

In the 5th foot there is a masculine caesura after a monosyllable 31 times. The monosyllables consist of 12 conjunctions, 11 being proclitic and 1 (420) enclitic; 4 relative pronouns, all proclitic; and 1 personal pronoun (36) in a word group. There are 2 proclitic prepositions. Four nouns are proclitic, 2 of nil and 1 each of res and gens (550, 1033). In 894 res seems to be

independent. Verbs are proclitic twice (sit, sunt), and sit is in a word group in 460. Adverbs are proclitic 3 times, and non is in a word group in 393.

### *Masculine caesura in fifth foot*

There are altogether 40 cases of masculine caesura in the 5th foot. In addition to the 31 cases enumerated above of monosyllables of which 30 are minimized, there are 9 other cases in which 2 are minimized; thus there are 40 cases with no elision. There is, among them, masculine caesura after an iambus 3 times, after a spondee 3 times, and after an anapest 3 times. The masculine caesura follows a spondee distributed between two words in 16 instances. The caesura is minimized once after an iambus (793) and once after an anapest (155). The caesura is retracted 4 times; 3 times with que and once (813) with atque. There is anapestic rhythm in the 5th foot 14 times, thrice with an anapestic word. Including elisions there are 72 instances in all of masculine caesura.

### *Trochaic caesura*

There are 492 cases out of 1094 of trochaic caesura without elision, almost 45 per cent; 225 come after trochaic words, 191 after an antibacchius, 57 after a 3d paeon, 13 after an amphibrach, and 2 after a 4th epitrite. In 4 cases there is also a masculine caesura in the foot. In 45 cases the caesura is minimized.

### *Elision of monosyllable in arsis*

There is no case of the elision of a monosyllable in the arsis of the 5th foot.

### *Elision before arsis*

There are 21 cases of elision before the arsis of the 5th foot of words continued from the 4th foot; 6 of a trochee, 4 of a tribrach, 2 of an anapest, and 1 (225) of an antispast (◡--◡), 5 of a 4th epitrite (---◡), 1 (501) of a spondee-tribrach, 1 (827) of a dispondee, and 1 (874) of an anapest-tribrach.

*Trochaic caesura in elision*

There is elision of a trochaic word in the caesura of the 5th foot 8 times; and of an antibacchius 8, of a 3d paeon twice, and of a pyrrich-dactyl once (95); in all 19. There is elision of que 3 times and of atque twice.

*Elision of dactyls*

There are 24 instances of the elision of dactyls in the 5th foot.

*Ecthlipsis*

Ecthlipsis occurs before the arsis of the 5th foot 13 times; of a trochaic word 5 times, tribrach 4, antibacchius 3, and a 4th epitrite once (692). There is ecthlipsis of a dactylic word, alterum, in 1012.

*Thesis a monosyllable*

There are 46 cases of a monosyllable in the thesis of the 5th foot, including one line (460) where there are 2 monosyllables. There are 26 prepositions, 16 conjunctions, 2 interrogative pronouns, 1 relative pronoun (437), and 1 verb (138); all proclitic. The verb sit in 460 is also in a word group.

*Dieresis*

The 5th foot is contained within a word 272 times, and the foot also closes with a word 214 times; in all 486 times, nearly 45 per cent. The dieresis is minimized 57 times, 6 where the foot is contained within a word.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

The verse has a spondee in the 5th foot 7 times, dactyls 1087.

*Fifth and sixth feet in one word*

In 6 cases the 5th and 6th feet are contained within one word that is either a dispondee or a 4th epitrite. In one case (1077) the last syllable is missing, but the 5th and 6th feet must have been either a dispondee or 4th epitrite with the first syllable a proclitic monosyllable. Counting these in, there are 72 cases of the 5th and 6th feet included within one word.



## THE SIXTH FOOT

*Caesura after monosyllables*

There are ten cases of caesura, without elision, after the arsis of the 6th foot, and all are minimized. There are 3 relative pronouns, 1 demonstrative, and 1 possessive; 1 adjective, 1 adverb, and 3 prepositions.

*Masculine caesura in the sixth foot*

There is caesura without elision after the arsis of the 6th foot 32 times and all are minimized.

*Elision before arsis*

There is elision before the arsis of the 6th foot 13 times: 5 of a 1st paeon, and 8 of a pyrrich.

*Ecthlipsis*

There is ecthlipsis twice; in both cases of a 1st paeon.

*Thesis a monosyllable*

There is a monosyllabic thesis, or in other words a monosyllabic close of the hexameter, 32 times, synonymous with caesura after the arsis. Of these, there is an enclitic noun 11 times and a word group once (410); enclitic reflexive pronouns 4 times and a word group twice; a verb enclitic 5 times and word group 5, an adverb enclitic once (613), and word group once (738); and an enclitic indefinite pronoun (440) and an enclitic personal pronoun (812), once each. Of the enclitic nouns, *res* occurs 7 times; the other nouns are *vis*, *vi*, and *cor*. Of the enclitic verbs, *est* and *sunt* both occur twice, and in a word group *sunt* occurs 3 times and *sit* once.

*Dieresis*

The 6th foot is contained within a word 473 times—43 per cent.

*Number of spondees and trochees*

There are 574 out of 1093 complete verses that have a trochee in the 6th foot; about 52 per cent.

## THE VERSE AS A WHOLE

*Constitution of the verses in Book I*

There are 1093 unmutilated and uninterpolated verses in the 1st book. Of the possible 32 varieties of arrangement of dactyls and spondees in the first 5 feet Lucretius has 22, as follows, arranged in the order of the poet's preference.

1. dsssd	189—17 per cent.	12. sssdd	30
2. ddssd	147—13 per cent.	13. dsddd	25
3. sdssd	109—10 per cent.	14. ddddd	21
4. ssssd	94	15. sdddd	20
5. dsdsd	94	16. ssddd	12
6. dddsd	89	17. sdsds	2
7. dssdd	80	18. dsdds	1 (64)
8. sddsd	61	19. ddsds	1 (1116)
9. ssdsd	44	20. dssds	1 (616)
10. sdsdd	36	21. sddds	1 (60)
11. ddsdd	35	22. sssds	1 (991)

The number of words in a line is as follows:

6 words, 400 lines	9 words, 27 lines
7 words, 337 lines	4 words, 6 lines
5 words, 170 lines	10 words, 2 lines
8 words, 151 lines	
	<hr/> 1093 lines

*Caesuras*

There is manifold variety in the caesuras employed. Disregarding all that are minimized and that occur in elision, and including the retracted caesuras, all but 6 verses have caesuras. These 6 are 236, 487, 565, 678, 836, and 917. In 487 a feminine caesura in the 3d foot—esse videtur—is minimized; in 678 the caesura occurs in elision in the 3d foot—esse haec; in 236, 565, 836, and 917 the caesura is masculine but minimized. The most frequent occurrence is the simple masculine caesura in the 3d foot—142 times. Then come  $m^3 m^4 f^5$  129 times;  $m^2 m^3$  109;  $m^3 m^4$  107. The next group in frequency is  $m^2 m^3 m^4 f^5$  86;  $m^2 m^3 m^4$  56;  $f^2 m^3$  63;  $m^3 f^5$  52. The third group, having between 25

and 50 instances, embraces  $m^2 m^3 f^5$  49;  $m^2 m^4 f^5$  40;  $m^2 m^4$  30. Between 15 and 25 are  $f^2 m^3 m^4$ ,  $m^4 f^5$ , both 22;  $m^4$  23;  $f^2 m^3 m^4 f^5$  18. Between 10 and 15:  $m^3 f^4$  12;  $f^2 m^3 f^5$  12; and  $m^2 f^3 m^4$  10. Between 5 and 10:  $m^2 f^3$  9;  $m^2$ ,  $m^2 f^3 m^4 f^5$ —both 7;  $m^2 m^3 m^5$ ,  $f^3 m^4$ ,  $f^1 f^2 m^3 m^4 f^5$ , and  $f^1 m^3 m^4$ —all 6; and  $f^2 m^4 f^5$  5. There are four occurrences each of  $m^2 m^4 m^5$ ,  $m^3 m^4 m^5$ , and  $f^1 m^2 m^3$ ,  $f^1 m^3 m^4 f^5$ ; three of  $m^2 f^5$ ,  $f^1 m^3$ , and  $f^2 f^3$ ; two of  $m^3 m^5$ ,  $m^2 m^3 m^4 m^5$ ,  $m^2 m^3 f^4 f^5$ ,  $m^2 m^3 f^4$ ,  $m^3 f^4 f^5$ ,  $f^1 m^2 m^3 m^4$ ,  $f^1 m^2 m^3 f^5$ ,  $f^2$ ,  $f^2 f^3 f^5$ ,  $f^3$ ,  $f^3 m^4 f^5$ . There are isolated instances, that in the nature of the case must be doubtful, of  $m^1 f^2 m^4$ ,  $m^2 f^3 f^4$ ,  $m^2 f^3 f^5$ ,  $m^4 m^5$ ,  $f^1$ ,  $f^1 m^2 m^4$ ,  $f^1 m^2 m^4 f^5$ ,  $f^1 m^3 m^5$ ,  $f^1 m^3 f^5$ ,  $f^2 m^4$ ,  $f^2 f^3 m^4$ ,  $f^3 f^5$ ,  $f^5$ . The poet likes to repeat metrical schemes so far as caesura is concerned in successive lines; over and over again this happens with two lines, and occasionally it is extended to a larger number: thus there is repetition in 252, 253, 254, and 255. But although caesuras may correspond, elisions and caesuras together rarely do.

### *Frequency of elisions*

Lucretius is sparing of elision: 319 verses have only one elision or *ecthipsis* in the verse; 51 have two, 13 three, and only 2 (234, 377) four. The total number is 385, being 35 per cent.

## BOOK II

### THE FIRST FOOT

#### *Masculine caesura*

There are 445 instances of a monosyllabic arsis in the 1st foot, nearly 38 per cent, as there are 1173 verses in the second book. Of these 32 are relative pronouns, of which 22 are proclitic, 9 in a word group and 1 with an enclitic. There are 176 proclitic conjunctions, of which the most numerous are *et* 49, *nec* 41, *nam* 18, *aut* 15, and *sed* 14; 68 conjunctions in word groups, 16 being of *et*, making a total of 244 conjunctions. There are 42 proclitic prepositions, and 15 demonstrative pronouns of which 6 are proclitic, 5 enclitic, 3 in a word group, and 1 independent, in verse



231. Of the 9 verbs there are 4 proclitic, 1 (954) with an enclitic, 3 in word groups, and 1 (1140) in a genuine caesura. Of pronouns interrogative there are 5 proclitics and 1 (1046) in a word group. There are 13 nouns, 4 of them proclitic, all nil, 2 with enclitics, and 7 in word groups. Of adverbs there are 32 proclitics, 48 in word groups and 3 in genuine caesuras. There is 1 interjection (14), a proclitic. There are 71 cases of masculine caesura in the 1st foot in elision or ecthipsis; 62 of them are minimized and 9 probably not; altogether, then, there are 516 cases of masculine caesura in the 1st foot, almost 44 per cent.

#### *Caesura after trochee*

There are 116 instances of feminine caesura after trochaic words and 10 where the trochee is distributed between two words: 126 out of 1173. Of these 117 are minimized, 8 not minimized, and 1 (669) doubtful.

#### *Elision of first syllable*

There is no case of the elision of the first syllable of the 1st foot.

#### *Elision of a trochaic word*

There are 44 cases of the elision of a trochaic word in the 1st foot.

#### *Elision of a spondee*

There are 10 instances of the elision of a spondee.

#### *Elision of dactyl*

There are ten cases of the elision of dactyls. Six of them are infinitive forms.

#### *Ecthipsis of trochees, spondees, and dactyls*

There are 7 cases of the ecthipsis of a trochee, but none of a spondee or dactyl.

*Thesis of first foot monosyllabic*

The thesis of the 1st foot is a monosyllable in 121 instances. There are 32 conjunctions—et 10 and si 7; 26 adverbs; 26 prepositions; 13 relative pronouns; 8 verbs—est 4, sit 2, fit 2; 6 nouns—res 2, nil 2; 8 other pronouns; 1 interjection and 1 adjective. All the nouns are in word groups and also the adverbs, the relative pronouns, the two personal pronouns, the single instances of interrogative pronoun, interjection, and adjective, 3 demonstrative pronouns, 3 verbs and 30 conjunctions. There are 2 proclitic conjunctions, 1 demonstrative pronoun (183) and all 26 prepositions. There are 1 enclitic demonstrative pronoun (387) and 5 verbs.

*Dieresis*

The 1st foot is contained within a word 216 times, a little over 18 per cent; 54 of these are minimized. There is also dieresis otherwise 218 times, and 148 of these are minimized. Altogether there is dieresis in 434 verses, over 28 per cent.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

The 1st foot is a dactyl 782 times, 66 per cent; a spondee 391 times, 34 per cent.

## THE SECOND FOOT

*Masculine caesura*

In the 2d foot there is a masculine caesura after a monosyllable 224 times, nearly 20 per cent. The monosyllables comprise 51 conjunctions, 51 pronouns, 28 adverbs, 66 prepositions, 20 verbs, and 8 nouns. In all cases the caesura is minimized. Of proclitics there are 22 cases with relative pronouns and 7 with demonstratives. Of the nouns res is proclitic 3 times and nil twice. Sunt is proclitic in 1074. Of the conjunctions 50 are proclitic and 1 (731) is in a word group. Of adverbs 25 are proclitic, and 64 prepositions, the other 2 being enclitic. There are 2 enclitic demonstrative pronouns, 2 adverbs, 1 relative pronoun (164), 14 verbs, and 1 reflexive pronoun (875). In word groups are 11

demonstrative pronouns, 1 conjunction (731), 1 adverb (447), 2 relative pronouns, 3 nouns—*res* once and *vi* twice, 5 verbs, 4 reflexive pronouns and 1 personal (746). In addition there are 484 other cases of masculine caesura in the 2d foot, making in all 708 instances—60 per cent; 403 of them are minimized, leaving a genuine caesura in 305 cases. Of the 484 occurrences after polysyllables 85 follow an iambus, 64 a spondee, 127 an anapest, 76 a molossus, and 132 a choriambus. There is also a masculine caesura through elision 34 times; grand total 742.

#### *Caesura after trochee*

There are 53 cases of trochaic caesura after an unelided trochaic word and of these 26 are minimized. There are 12 instances of a double caesura, both masculine and feminine. In addition there are 115 cases of trochaic caesura after polysyllables—34 after an antibacchius, 14 after a 3d paeon, 35 after a 4th epitrite, 16 after an amphibrach, and 16 after a dactyl-trochee. The trochaic caesura after polysyllables is minimized 58 times.

#### *Elision in arsis*

There is one case of the elision of a monosyllable in arsis: *quae*, 126. There is elision of polysyllables in 75 cases before the arsis: 18 of a 1st paeon, 6 of an antibacchius, 9 of a trochee, 9 of a pyrrich, 20 of a tribrach, 3 of a molossus, 6 of an anapest, and 4 of a choriambus. *Atque* occurs twice, in 488 and 626.

#### *Trochaic caesura in elision*

There is elision of a trochaic word 11 times and twice (377, 1064) the caesura is retracted. Longer words are elided as follows: dactyl-trochee 5 times, 4th epitrite 5, 3d paeon twice, and an amphibrach once.

#### *Elision of spondees, dactyls, etc.*

There is elision of a spondee in verse 922, of a dispondee in 647, and of an Ionic a minore in 320 and 564. A 2d paeon is elided in 74 and a spondee-dactyl in 751. In all there are 6 cases.



There is elision of a monosyllable in the thesis twice—*si* in 35 and *vi* in 549; and 7 instances of elision of pyrrichs—*neque* 3 times, *quoque* 3, and *sine* once.

### *Ecthlipsis*

There is 1 instance of ecthlipsis of a monosyllable in thesis—*cum*, in verse 859. There is ecthlipsis of a trochaic word 4 times and of trochaic polysyllables 6 times—a 3d paeon in 364, an amphibrach in 483, an antibacchius 3 times, and a 4th epitrite once (290).

### *Ecthlipsis before arsis*

There is ecthlipsis of a monosyllable before the arsis with *cum* in 54 and 1140. There are 3 cases of ecthlipsis of a tribrach and 4 of an antibacchius. The ecthlipsis is minimized in all cases.

### *Thesis of second foot a monosyllable*

There are 89 instances of a monosyllabic thesis in the 2d foot. In 30 instances the monosyllable is a pronoun: twice interrogative in a word group, once in a doubtful case (66) of a personal pronoun. The relative pronoun is proclitic 7 times and in a word group 6, and the demonstrative is in a word group 3 times. There are 2 nouns—one proclitic (815) and one in a word group (754). Adverbs are proclitic 5 times and in a word group 11 times. There are 19 proclitic prepositions, and 28 conjunctions of which 23 are proclitic, 4 in a word group and 1 (1077) enclitic. Thus in all 89 cases the monosyllable is attached to another word. There are 2 monosyllables in thesis in 262 and 886.

### *Dieresis*

The 2d foot is contained within a word 34 times; 20 minimized. There is dieresis after longer words in 130 cases, 94 minimized. Altogether there are 164 instances, of which 114 are minimized.

### *First and second feet contained in one word*

The 1st and 2d feet are contained within a word twice—828 and 862.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

There are 552 dactyls, about 48 per cent, and 621 spondees, 52 per cent.

## THE THIRD FOOT

*Caesura after monosyllables*

In the 3d foot there is a masculine caesura after monosyllables 136 times—approximately 11 per cent. There are 25 conjunctions, all proclitic, 37 pronouns, 10 adverbs, 25 prepositions, 33 verbs, 5 nouns, and 1 adjective. In all but 5 cases the caesura is minimized. There are 24 proclitic prepositions, 5 demonstrative pronouns, 6 relative, 3 nouns, 8 adverbs, and 1 adjective (738). Verbs are enclitic 25 times, prepositions once (567), demonstrative pronouns 3 times, and 1 noun (vi in 289). Word groups have 8 verbs, 13 reflexive pronouns—10 being inter se, 5 demonstrative pronouns, 1 noun—res in 687, and 2 adverbs. Adding the 25 proclitic conjunctions, the 3 independent personal pronouns, and the 2 independent reflexive and demonstrative pronouns, the number is again 136.

*Masculine caesura in third foot*

After polysyllables there are 858 instances of masculine caesura without elision; including the monosyllables 994, nearly 85 per cent. There is anapestic rhythm in 396 cases, 34 per cent; and in 174 cases there is an anapestic word. Adding the 66 cases of caesura in elision, the grand total is 1060. The polysyllables comprise 338 spondees, 102 molossi, 150 iambi, 67 choriambi, 174 anapests, 15 dispondees, 5 1st epitrites, 4 dactyl-iambi, 1 amphibrach-iambus, and 2 molossi-spondees. The caesura is minimized in 70 cases with monosyllables and in 212 cases with polysyllables, making 282 in all.

*Caesura after trochee*

There are 15 instances of trochaic caesura after an unelided trochaic word, and of these 9 are minimized. Trochaic caesura after longer words occurs 54 times, and in 6 verses there are both

masculine and feminine caesuras. The trochaic caesura occurs after an antibacchius 34 times, an amphibrach 9, a 4th epitrite twice, a 3d paeon 5 times, and a dactyl-trochee 4 times. It is minimized 23 times. The total number of feminine caesuras is 69.

#### *Elision in arsis*

There are 2 instances of the elision of monosyllables in the arsis of the 3d foot: si in 36 and se in 190. Of polysyllables there is elision before the arsis 46 times: of a 1st paeon twice, tribrach 13, trochee 9, molossus 3, pyrrich 3, spondee 7, antibacchius 5, anapest 4 times.

#### *Elision of trochee*

There is elision of a trochaic word 4 times, and of longer words 19 times as follows: amphibrach 7, 3d paeon 3, antibacchius 7, 4th epitrite once (439), and dactyl-trochee once (1104). Que occurs 7 times and atque once (511), whence the caesura is retracted. In all these 23 cases the caesura is doubtless masculine.

#### *Elision of spondees, dactyls, etc.*

There is elision of an Ionic a maiore once, in line 13; of pyrrichs 4 times, once in thesis (544), and of a dactyl-spondee once (423). A monosyllable in thesis is elided in 630.

#### *Ecthlipsis*

There are 7 cases of ecthlipsis of a trochaic word and longer: 2 of a trochee, 2 of an antibacchius, 2 of an amphibrach, and 1 (1044) of a 3d paeon. There are 13 cases of ecthlipsis of polysyllables before the arsis: 8 trochees, 2 1st paeons, 3 pyrrichs; and 2 of monosyllables—cum in 272 and iam in 974.

#### *Monosyllabic thesis*

The thesis is a monosyllable 192 times; in 617 and 882 there are 2 monosyllables. There are 22 relative pronouns, 55 prepositions, 11 nouns, 12 verbs, 27 adverbs, 58 conjunctions, 5 other pronouns, 1 adjective, and 1 interjection. The relative pronoun is proclitic 20 times and in a word group twice. The prepositions



are all proclitic. The nouns are proclitic 3 times and in a word group 8 times. The verbs are proclitic 7, and in a word group 5 times. The adverbs are proclitic 20, and in a word group 7 times. The conjunctions are proclitic 50 times, and in a word group 7 times, and enclitic once (1042). The reflexive pronoun is proclitic once (325), the interrogative once (925), the personal once (893), the demonstrative twice, an adjective once (1057), and an interjection once (434). Thus all of them are minimized.

### *Dieresis*

There is dieresis when the foot is contained within a word 9 times; 8 with the word *inter*. There is dieresis after longer words 252 times; the total 261 is about 22 per cent. The dieresis is obscured in 240 cases.

### *First half of verse*

The first half of the verse is contained within one word once, in 873.

### *Number of dactyls and spondees*

There are 394 dactyls, 33½ per cent, and 789 spondees, 66½ per cent.

## THE FOURTH FOOT

### *Caesura after monosyllables*

There are 86 instances of masculine caesura after monosyllables in the 4th foot, of which 50 are minimized. There are 7 adverbs, 6 nouns, 11 demonstrative pronouns, 1 personal pronoun, 24 verbs, 10 reflexive pronouns, 11 conjunctions, 8 relative pronouns, and 8 prepositions. The verbs are proclitic 9 times, the demonstrative pronouns 3, the relative pronouns 6, the nouns 3, the adverbs 6, the prepositions 8, and the conjunctions 11 times. The verbs are enclitic 11 times and in a word group 4 times. The demonstrative pronouns are in a word group 6 times, the personal once—*sic nos*, 56, the reflexive 10 times, the relative 2, the noun 3, and the adverb once (143). The demonstrative is independent twice.

*Masculine caesura in fourth foot*

There are 567 additional cases of masculine caesura in the 4th foot; if to these are added the 86 monosyllables and 51 elisions, there are in all 704 cases, 59 per cent. The polysyllables comprise 22 choriambi, 325 spondees, 138 anapests, 39 iambi, 33 molossi, 7 dispondees, 2 1st epitrites, and 1 dactyl-iambus. The caesura is minimized 50 times with monosyllables and 75 with polysyllables: 125 out of 653. There is anapestic rhythm 198 times, nearly 11 per cent; 138 with an anapestic word and 60 otherwise.

*Trochaic caesura*

There is feminine caesura with an unelided trochaic word once (415) and with polysyllables 5 times as follows: after an antibacchius 4 times, and once (503) after a 3d paeon. There is double caesura 12 times. Altogether there are 18 cases of which 2 are minimized.

*Elision in arsis*

There is no instance of elision of a monosyllable in arsis. There is elision before the arsis of a polysyllable 28 times as follows: tribrach 10 times, pyrrich twice, trochee 13, antispast once (270), amphibrach once (769), 1st paeon once (953).

*Trochaic caesura in elision*

There is trochaic caesura in elision 34 times: of a trochaic word 11 times, of a 3d paeon 11, amphibrach 5, and antibacchius 7 times. The caesura is retracted with atque in 622.

*Elision of spondees, dactyls, etc.*

Spondees are elided in 8 instances: 3 molossi, 2 Ionics a maiore, and 3 spondees. A dactyl is elided once (781). In the thesis there is elision 4 times: 3 monosyllables—te, qua, cum, and 1 trochee—ante, 298.

*Ecthlipsis*

There is ecthlipsis before the arsis 7 times: 5 trochees, 1 antibacchius (831) and 1 tribrach (984). In caesura there is ecthlipsis of trochees 9 times: 3 trochaic words, 3 of an antibacchius, and 3 of 3d paeons. There is 1 case of ecthlipsis of a monosyllable in thesis: cum in 812.

*Thesis a monosyllable*

There is a monosyllabic thesis 181 times; an interjection proclitic once (14); conjunctions proclitic 40; prepositions proclitic 54; verb enclitic 9, proclitic 10; relative pronoun proclitic 18; reflexive pronoun in word group 10, of which inter se occurs 7 times; adverb proclitic 19; nouns enclitic 2, proclitic 16; interrogative pronoun once proclitic (1095), and demonstrative once proclitic (107).

*Dieresis*

There is dieresis after the 4th foot 667 times, nearly 57 per cent. The 4th foot is contained within a word 176 times. The dieresis is minimized 237 times. There is, perhaps, a bucolic dieresis 3 times: in 16, 492, 539.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

There are 313 dactyls in the 4th foot—26.6 per cent, and 860 spondees—73.4 per cent.

## THE FIFTH FOOT

*Masculine caesura*

There are 46 instances of caesura after monosyllables in the 5th foot: 8 proclitic prepositions, 15 proclitic conjunctions, 3 proclitic nouns, and 2 nouns in word groups, 1 proclitic verb (393), and 1 in a word group (309), 9 proclitic relative pronouns, 1 proclitic demonstrative pronoun (483), 5 proclitic adverbs, and 1 (543) in a word group. There are 13 cases of masculine caesura after polysyllables: after an antibacchius 5,



spondee 5, 1st paeon 2, iambus once (804). Of these 3 are obscured. The total number of cases of masculine caesura is 76: 46 monosyllables, 13 polysyllables, 17 in elision.

*Caesura after trochee*

There are 2 caesuras in five verses, and 511 instances, 43 per cent, of trochaic caesura; 211 after a trochaic word, 201 after an antibacchius, 79 after a 3d paeon, 12 after an amphibrach, 7 after a 4th epitrite, and 1 (413) after a molossus-trochee. Of these 59 are minimized. Adding 25 cases of caesura in elision, there are 536 cases of trochaic caesura in the 5th foot.

*Elision in arsis*

No monosyllables are elided before the arsis, but 25 polysyllables: 3 of an antibacchius, 1 (47) of a dactyl-pyrrich, 6 of a trochee, 1 of a pyrrich (260) that is possibly an iambus, 2 of an anapest-trochee, 3 of a 4th epitrite, 4 of a tribrach, 2 of a spondee, 1 (935) of a choriambus, 1 (954) of a molossus, and 1 (1046) of a 1st paeon.

*Trochaic caesura in elision*

There are 8 cases of elision of a trochee, 3 of a 3d paeon, and 5 of an antibacchius; 16 in all. The caesura in all these cases is, of course, masculine.

*Elision of spondees, dactyls, etc.*

There are 11 cases of elision of dactyls, 13 of an Ionic a maiore, and 1 of a pyrrich-dactyl; total 25. In the thesis a pyrrich is elided twice.

*Ecthlipsis*

There are 3 cases of ecthlipsis of a trochaic word before the arsis, and 1 (938) of an antibacchius—naturam—in the thesis.

*Thesis a monosyllable*

The thesis of the fifth foot is a monosyllable 60 times: 24 conjunctions, all proclitic; 28 prepositions, also proclitic; 7 verbs, of which 3 are proclitic and 4 in word groups, and 1 proclitic relative pronoun (453).

*Dieresis*

There is dieresis after the 5th foot 540 times, 46 per cent, of which 129 are minimized. The foot is contained within a word 301 times.

*Last part of the verse in one word*

In verse 932 the last  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet are contained within one word. In 87 instances the 5th and 6th feet are contained within a word.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

The 5th foot is a dactyl in 1167 verses, a spondee in 6 verses. Verse 475 is noteworthy: *ac mansuescat*; there *ac* is proclitic.

## THE SIXTH FOOT

*Caesura*

There is a caesura in the 6th foot 50 times, of which 22 follow monosyllables. There are 6 relative pronouns in word groups, 1 demonstrative (925), 2 adjectives, 3 nouns, and 4 conjunctions. All 6 prepositions are proclitic. After the 28 polysyllables there is 1 pyrrich (57), 14 iambs, 8 choriambi, 4 anapests, and 1 molossus (615). All are minimized.

*Elision*

There are 12 cases of elision before the arsis: 5 of a pyrrich, 4 of a tribrach, 2 of a 1st paeon, and 1 (925) of a choriambus. There are 2 instances of elision of a trochaic word and 4 of an amphibrach. There is *ecthipsis* of an amphibrach 4 times, 3 being with *putandum est*.

*Thesis a monosyllable*

The thesis is a monosyllable in the 6th foot 59 times: verb, enclitic 21; adverb 2; noun 12; relative pronoun 1 (412); preposition 1 (791); in word groups: verb 11; noun 1 (185); reflexive pronoun 6, relative pronoun 3; and conjunction 1 (1125). All are minimized.

*Dieresis*

The 6th foot is contained within a word 520 times—43 per cent.

*Number of spondees and trochees*

In the 6th foot there are 587 spondees and 586 trochees.

## THE VERSE AS A WHOLE

*Constitution of the verses*

There are 21 of the possible 32 combinations of dactyls and spondees in the second book as follows:

1. dsssd 218; nearly 11 per cent	12. ssdsd 37
2. ddssd 152	13. ddddd 25
3. sdssd 126	14. sssdd 23
4. dsdsd 120	15. sdddd 18
5. ssssd 86	16. ssddd 13
6. dddsd 83	17. dsdds 3
7. dssdd 74	18. dssds 2
8. ddsdd 61	19. sddds 2
9. dsddd 48	20. sdsds 1 (302)
10. sddsd 42	21. dddds 1 (935)
11. sdsdd 39	

*Number of words in a line*

Four hundred and thirty-two verses have six words; 358 seven; 183 five; 140 eight; 41 nine; 16 four; 3 have ten words.

*Caesuras*

The variety of the caesuras is so great that it is difficult to believe that Lucretius had any conscious principles of employing subordinate caesuras. There are 45 verses without a logical caesura, but they are all accounted for by disregarding the logical subordination. The most frequent occurrence is that of  $m^3$ , 235 and 42 minimized, making 227—23½ per cent. Then comes  $m^3 f^5$ , 100;  $m^3 m^4 f^5$ , 90;  $m^3 m^4$ , 76;  $m^4 f^5$ , 77;  $m^4$ , 68;  $m^2 m^3$ , 67;



$m^2 m^4$ , 51;  $m^2 m^4 f^5$ , 47;  $m^2$ , 44;  $m^2 m^3 f^5$ , 39;  $m^2 m^3 m^4$ , 32;  $m^2 m^3 m^4 f^5$ , 26;  $f^2 m^3$ , 26;  $f^5$ , 22;  $m^2 f^5$ , 16;  $f^2 m^4$ , 13;  $f^2 m^4 f^5$ , 12;  $f^2$ , 11;  $m^2 f^3$ , 10 and 1 minimized, making 11;  $f^3$ , 8 and 2 minimized, making 10;  $f^2 m^3 m^4$ , 8;  $f^2 f^5$ , 6. The following occur 3 times:  $m^3 f^4$ ,  $f^2 m^3 f^5$ ,  $m^2 f^3 m^4$ ,  $f^3 m^4$ ,  $f^1 m^3$ ,  $m^2 f^3 f^5$ . There are two examples of  $m^2 m^5$ ,  $m^2 m^4 m^5$ , and of  $f^3 m^4 f^5$ . There are single instances of  $m^3 m^5$ ,  $f^2 m^3 m^4 f^5$ ,  $m^2 f^3 m^4 f^5$ ,  $f^1 m^2 m^3$ ,  $f^1$ ,  $m^1 m^4 f^5$ ,  $m^1 m^3 f^5$ ,  $m^1 m^3$ ,  $m^1 f^2$ ,  $f^1 m^4$ ,  $m^2 f^3 m^5$ ,  $f^1 m^2 m^3 f^4 f^5$ ,  $f^2 m^3 f^4$ ,  $m^4 m^5$ .

### *Frequency of elisions*

In the second book 701 verses have elision—nearly 60 per cent. There is 1 elision only in 635 lines—54 per cent, 2 in 55, 3 in 10, and 4 in 1 (243) line.

## BOOK III

### THE FIRST FOOT

#### *Caesura after monosyllables*

There are 438 instances of a monosyllable in the arsis of the first foot, 40 per cent, as there are 1091 verses in the third book. Of these there are 49 relative pronouns, of which 26 are proclitic, 21 in a word group, and 2 independent. There are 140 proclitic conjunctions and 92 conjunctions in word groups, making a total of 232. There are 25 proclitic prepositions, and 18 demonstrative pronouns of which 3 are proclitic, 14 in word groups, and 1 (865) independent. Of the verbs 5 are proclitic and 5 in a word group. Of interrogative pronouns 3 are proclitic and 3 in word groups. There are 13 nouns; 10 proclitic and 3 in word groups. Of the verbs 5 are proclitic and 5 in word groups. There are 5 personal pronouns, 3 proclitic and 2 in word groups; 1 proclitic reflexive pronoun (883); and 1 proclitic indefinite pronoun (817). There are 48 proclitic adverbs and 30 in word groups. Thus, of the 438 instances, in all but three examples the caesura is minimized.

*Masculine caesura in first foot*

There are 91 cases of masculine caesura in the 1st foot in elision or ecthipsis. Altogether, then, there are 529 instances of masculine caesura in the first foot, 48 per cent.

*Caesura after trochee*

There are 111 instances of feminine caesura after trochaic words, and 9 where the trochee is distributed between two words: 120 out of 1091. Of these 112 are minimized and 8 independent.

*Elision of first syllable*

There is no instance of the elision of the first syllable of the verse.

*Elision of a trochaic word*

There are 61 cases of elision of a trochee in the 1st foot.

*Elision of spondees*

There are 16 instances of elision of a spondee.

*Elision of dactyl*

There are 17 cases of the elision of a dactyl.

*Ecthipsis in arsis*

There are 14 cases of ecthipsis of a trochee but none of a dactyl or spondee.

*Monosyllabic thesis*

The thesis of the 1st foot is a monosyllable in 94 instances. There are 42 conjunctions, 25 adverbs, 16 prepositions, 5 relative pronouns, 3 verbs, and 1 each of reflexive, demonstrative, and personal pronouns. Of the conjunctions 24 are proclitic and 18 in word groups. There are 19 proclitic adverbs and 6 in word groups; 16 proclitic prepositions, 3 proclitic relative pronouns and 2 in word groups; 1 (421) proclitic verb and 2 in word groups. The 3 other pronouns are all in word groups (43, 135, 906). Thus no monosyllable is independent.

*Elision and ecthlipsis in thesis*

There is ecthlipsis of a monosyllable in thesis in 394 if the reading is correct, and ecthlipsis of a pyrrich in 904.

*Dieresis*

The 1st foot is contained within a word 193 times. There is also dieresis otherwise 240 times. Altogether there is dieresis in 433 verses, nearly 40 per cent; 243 of them are minimized.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

The 1st foot is a dactyl 818 times, 75 per cent; a spondee 273 times, 25 per cent.

## THE SECOND FOOT

*Caesura after monosyllables*

In the second foot there is masculine caesura after monosyllables 221 times, 20 per cent. The monosyllables number 49 conjunctions, 45 pronouns, 32 adverbs, 63 prepositions, 23 verbs, 1 interjection, and 8 nouns. In 200 cases the caesura is minimized. Of proclitics there are 12 cases with relative pronouns, 3 with demonstratives, 1 with a personal pronoun (1077), 1 with a pronominal adjective (1065); 46 conjunctions, 62 prepositions, 26 adverbs, 1 interjection (3), 1 noun (183). In word groups there are 2 relative pronouns, 17 demonstratives, 1 personal pronoun (12), 7 nouns, and 6 reflexives—3 with *inter se*, 6 adverbs, and 3 conjunctions. There is an enclitic preposition in 375, and 23 enclitic verbs and 1 enclitic personal pronoun (28). There seems to be a genuine caesura after a demonstrative pronoun in 520. After polysyllables, there are 416 instances of masculine caesura in the 2d foot, making in all 637, nearly 60 per cent. Of the 416, 130 are minimized, leaving a genuine caesura in 286 instances. Of the 416 cases after polysyllables 70 follow an iambus, 36 a spondee, 160 an anapest, 51 a molossus, and 99 a choriambus. There is also a masculine caesura through elision 73 times, thus making a grand total of 710.



*Caesura after trochee*

There are 42 instances of feminine caesura after an unelided trochaic word, and 6 of a double caesura, both masculine and feminine, in the 2d foot. In addition there are 85 examples of trochaic caesura after polysyllables, 24 after an antibacchius, 9 after a 3d paeon, 28 after a 4th epitrite, 11 after an amphibrach, and 13 after a dactyl-trochee. The trochaic caesura is minimized 64 times out of the 133.

*Elision in arsis*

There are 3 instances of elision in arsis of a long monosyllable (77, 137, 390), and of polysyllables 66 times: 15 1st paeons, 4 of an antibacchius, 4 of a trochee, 9 of pyrrichs, 22 of tribrachs, 1 molossus, 8 anapests, 3 choriambi.

*Trochaic caesura in elision*

There is elision of a trochaic word 44 times and of longer words as follows: dactyl-trochee 3, 4th epitrite 8, 3d paeon 6, amphibrach 2; in all 63.

*Elision of spondees, dactyls, etc.*

There is elision of spondees in 8 verses, of a molossus once (356), of a bacchius twice, of an Ionic a maiore once (524), and of a dactyl once (560). There is elision of monosyllable in thesis twice, both of si, and of 5 pyrrichs.

*Ecthlipsis*

There is 1 instance of ecthlipsis of a monosyllable in thesis, eum in 159. In 3 places ecthlipsis occurs with trochaic words and in 7 with polysyllables: of an amphibrach 3 times, 4th epitrite twice, and of a 3d paeon and dactyl-trochee each once (666, 728). In all there are 11 instances.

*Ecthlipsis before the arsis*

There are 17 occurrences of ecthlipsis before the arsis: 5 of a tribrach, 5 of an antibacchius, 3 of a pyrrich, 2 of a trochee, and 2 of a 1st paeon.

*Thesis a monosyllable*

There are 74 instances of a monosyllable in the thesis of the 2d foot. In 15 cases the monosyllable is a pronoun: the relative is proclitic 6 times and in a word group 5; the demonstrative in a word group twice, and the indefinite and interrogative in word groups once each (556, 802). There are 5 nouns, all in word groups, and 2 adjectives. One verb is proclitic (409), and 3 are in word groups. One adverb is in a word group (823), and 12 are proclitic. Eight prepositions are proclitic and 13 conjunctions; 12 conjunctions are in word groups and 2 are enclitic.

*Dieresis*

The 2d foot is contained within a word 20 times, and in 156 other places there is dieresis at the close of the foot; 176 in all. Of these 114 are minimized.

*First and second feet contained in one word*

The 1st and 2d feet are contained within one word twice—295, 499.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

There are 558 dactyls and 533 spondees.

## THE THIRD FOOT

*Masculine caesura*

In the 3d foot there is a masculine caesura after monosyllables 154 times, 14 per cent; of these 68 are minimized. There are 11 nouns—3 proclitic and 8 in word groups; 8 reflexive pronouns in word groups and 1 independent (887); 1 enclitic personal pronoun (1105) and 1 independent (968), and 3 in word groups; 1 relative pronoun in a word group (678), and 3 proclitic; 1 proclitic interrogative pronoun (823), 4 proclitic demonstrative pronouns, 4 enclitic and 1 (969) in a word group. There are 37 enclitic verbs, 12 proclitic adverbs and 1 in a word group (853); 36 proclitic prepositions and 2 enclitic; 26 proclitic conjunctions and 1 (657) in a word group.

After polysyllables there are 789 instances of masculine caesura without elision; including the monosyllables, 943, 86 per cent. There is anapestic rhythm in 598 cases, nearly 55 per cent, and in 211 instances this follows an anapestic word. Adding the 41 instances of caesura in elision or ecthipsis there is a grand total of 984, 90 per cent. The polysyllables consist of 295 spondees, 97 molossi, 110 iambs, 57 choriambi, 211 anapests, 7 dispondees, 4 1st epitrites, 3 dactyl-iambs, 3 amphibrach-iambs, 1 choriambus-anapest (907), and 1 double anapest (1037). In verse 203 there is hiatus in caesura. The caesura is minimized in 68 instances with monosyllables and in 172 with polysyllables, making 140 in all.

#### *Caesura after trochee*

There are 61 instances of trochaic caesura and 29 of them are minimized. Feminine caesura after a trochaic word occurs 16 times and after longer words 36; in 9 verses there are both masculine and feminine caesuras. The trochaic caesura occurs after an antibacchius 18 times, after an amphibrach 3, a 3d paeon 11, and a dactyl-trochee 4 times.

#### *Elision in arsis*

There is 1 instance of elision of a monosyllable in arsis, si in 612. Of polysyllables, 47 are elided as follows: 1st paeon 6, tribrach 9, trochee 11, molossus 2, pyrrich 10, spondee 1 (258), antibacchius 4, anapest 3 times, iambus once (homo, 925):

#### *Trochaic caesura in elision*

There is elision of a trochaic word in 12 verses, and of longer words in 16: amphibrach 4, 3d paeon once (74), antibacchius 8, 4th epitrite thrice. Atque occurs 6 times. In all these cases the caesura becomes masculine.



*Elision of spondees, dactyls, etc.*

There is elision of a spondee once (186), of an Ionic a maiore once (2) and of a molossus twice. An iambus-tribrach is elided once (63). In the thesis the monosyllable *de* is elided in verse 153, and 11 pyrrichs are elided in the thesis.

*Ecthlipsis*

There are 9 cases of ecthlipsis of a trochaic word or longer; 1 of an antibacchius (91) and 8 of an amphibrach. There are 14 cases of ecthlipsis before the arsis of polysyllables; 6 trochees, 4 tribrachs, 4 of an antibacchius. There is no ecthlipsis of monosyllables.

*Monosyllabic thesis*

The thesis is monosyllabic 198 times; in verse 575 there are 2 monosyllables. There are 25 relative pronouns, 55 prepositions, 12 nouns, 2 verbs, 35 adverbs, 62 conjunctions and 7 other pronouns. The relatives are proclitic 20 times and in word groups 5 times. All of the prepositions are proclitic. Six nouns are proclitic and 6 in word groups. Of the 2 verbs 1 (876) is proclitic, and 1 (293) in a word group. Of the adverbs 27 are proclitic and 8 in word groups. Of the conjunctions 60 are proclitic and 2 in word groups. There are 2 proclitic interrogative pronouns, 3 proclitic demonstrative, 1 proclitic personal pronoun (135), and 1 proclitic reflexive (884). Thus all are minimized.

*Dieresis*

There is dieresis when the foot is contained within a word once: *inter* in 325. There is dieresis after longer words 256 times; the total, 257, is 23½ per cent. The dieresis is obscured in 231 instances.

*First half of verse one word*

The first half of the verse is contained within one word once: *insatiabiliter* in 907.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

There are 358 dactyls in the 3d foot, 32.8 per cent, and 733 spondees, 67.2 per cent.

## THE FOURTH FOOT

*Caesura after monosyllables*

There are 96 instances of masculine caesura after monosyllables in the 4th foot, of which 52 are minimized. There are 13 nouns, 32 pronouns, 18 verbs, 10 adverbs, 5 prepositions, and 18 conjunctions. Six nouns are proclitic and 7 in word groups. Seven personal pronouns are in word groups and 3 demonstrative; and 4 demonstratives are proclitic and 2 enclitic. One reflexive is proclitic (886) and 10 in word groups. Two relatives are proclitic and 2 in word groups; and 1 (1050) interrogative is proclitic. There are 4 proclitic verbs, 11 in word groups, and 3 enclitic. Four adverbs are proclitic and 6 in word groups. All 5 prepositions are proclitic. There are 2 conjunctions in word groups and 16 proclitic.

*Additional masculine caesuras*

There are 522 additional instances of masculine caesura in the 4th foot, 47.7 per cent; if to these there be added the 96 monosyllables and 61 elisions, there will be in all 679 instances, 62 per cent. The polysyllables comprise 16 choriambi, 282 spondees, 144 anapests, 39 iambs, 30 molossi, 9 dispondees, and 2 1st epitrites. The caesura is minimized 52 times with the monosyllables and 130 with the polysyllables, 182 out of 618. There is anapestic rhythm 199 times, 18 per cent; 144 with an anapestic word and 55 otherwise.

*Trochaic caesura*

There is no feminine caesura with an unelided trochaic word, but with polysyllables 13 times: ten after an antibacchius and 3 after a 3d paeon. There is double caesura 7 times with monosyllables; altogether trochaic caesura occurs 20 times, of which 10 are minimized.

*Elision in arsis*

There is no occurrence of elision of a monosyllable in the arsis of the 4th foot. There is elision before the arsis of polysyllables 23 times: tribrach 7, pyrrich once (795), trochee 11, anapest 3, spondee once (384).

*Trochaic elision*

There is trochaic elision 27 times: of a trochaic word 9 times, of a 3d paeon 4, amphibrachs twice, antibacchius 11, and once of a 4th epitrite (154). The caesura is retracted with atque in 888 and 1066.

*Elision of spondees, dactyls, etc.*

Spondees are elided in 8 instances: 3 molossi, 3 Ionic a maiore, 1 dispondee (174), and 1 spondee (1011). In the thesis, a dactyl is elided once (508) and monosyllables 3 times.

*Ecthlipsis*

There is ecthlipsis before the arsis 6 times: 3 tribrachs, 2 trochees, and 1 monosyllable—cum in 869. In caesura there is ecthlipsis of a trochee 6 times, of an antibacchius 15, of a 3d paeon twice, and of an amphibrach twice. In the thesis there is ecthlipsis of a monosyllable twice (101, 358).

*Monosyllabic thesis*

There is a monosyllabic thesis 191 times: nouns proclitic 7 times, enclitic 3, in a word group 8, and independent once (1017); personal pronouns proclitic 3, enclitic once (894), and in a word group twice; relatives proclitic 9, word group twice; interrogative once proclitic (354); reflexive once proclitic (925) and 4 times in word groups. The demonstrative is once proclitic (63) and twice in word groups. Adjectives are proclitic twice; verbs proclitic 9 times, enclitic 5, and in a word group 3; adverbs, 27 proclitic and 4 in word groups; prepositions 58 proclitic and 3 enclitic; and 35 proclitic conjunctions. Only one of these 191 is independent.



*Dieresis*

There is dieresis after the 4th foot 631 times, nearly 58 per cent. The 4th foot is contained within a word 141 times. The dieresis is minimized 246 times. There is no bucolic dieresis.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

There are 296 dactyls in the 4th foot, about 27 per cent, and 795 spondees, 73 per cent.

## THE FIFTH FOOT

*Masculine caesura*

There are 56 examples of caesura after monosyllables in the 5th foot: 4 proclitic nouns and 1 in a word group; 8 proclitic relative pronouns and 1 in a word group (159); 3 proclitic demonstrative pronouns and 2 in word groups; 1 personal pronoun in a word group (906), and 1 interrogative pronoun in a word group (909); 4 proclitic verbs; 6 proclitic adverbs and 1 (889) in a word group; 7 proclitic prepositions; 16 proclitic conjunctions and 1 proclitic interjection (206). Thus all are minimized. After polysyllables there are but 2 instances: 1 after an antibacchius in 93 and 1 after a spondee in 874; both minimized. In 35 other places there is masculine caesura in elision.

*Caesura after trochee*

There are 467 instances of trochaic caesura, including three verses that have both masculine and feminine caesura, 43 per cent. The caesura is minimized 148 times. After a trochaic word it occurs 192 times; after an antibacchius 173; after a 3d paeon 80; after an amphibrach 5; after a ditrochee 3, after a 4th epitrite 5; after a dactyl-trochee 3 times and a molossus-trochee once (219). There are 5 monosyllables.

*Elision in arsis*

No monosyllables are elided in arsis, but 25 polysyllables: 5 tribrachs, 9 trochees, 2 of an antibacchius, 4 of a dispondee, 1 of a spondee (1046), 3 of an anapest, and 1 of an iambus-tribrach (780).

*Elision of trochees*

There are 27 examples of trochaic elision: 16 of a trochaic word, 10 of an antibacchius, and 1 (388) of a molossus-trochee.

*Elision of spondees, dactyls, etc.*

There are 28 instances of elision of dactyls, 5 of an Ionic a minore, 1 of a 1st paeon (64), 1 of a 2d paeon (614), and 1 of a spondee-dactyl (1045); in all 36. In the thesis a pyrrich is elided once (900).

*Ecthlipsis*

There are 13 examples of ecthlipsis before the arsis: 1 of a tribrach (61), 3 of a trochee, 4 of an antibacchius, 3 of a 4th epitrite, and 2 of a spondee-tribrach. There are 2 instances of trochaic ecthlipsis: 1 of a trochee in 455 and 1 of an antibacchius in 228. The monosyllable cum occurs in ecthlipsis in verse 159.

*Monosyllabic thesis*

The thesis of the 5th foot is a monosyllable in 85 instances and all proclitic. There are 47 prepositions, 31 conjunctions, 3 adverbs, 3 verbs, and 1 demonstrative pronoun (180).

*Dieresis*

There is dieresis of the 5th foot 431 times, 39.5 per cent; 251 are minimized. The foot is contained within a word 203 times; 228 otherwise.

*Last half of foot one word*

The ultima of the 4th foot and the entire 5th and 6th are contained within a word in verse 83. The 5th and 6th feet are contained within a word 51 times.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

The 5th foot is a dactyl 1082 times and a spondee 9 times.

## THE SIXTH FOOT

*Caesura*

There is caesura in the 6th foot 64 times, in all cases minimized. Monosyllables precede in 22 cases: there are 3 nouns in word groups, 2 relative pronouns, 1 demonstrative in a word group (644), 1 adjective in a word group (317), 2 verbs in word groups, and 2 adverbs; 7 proclitic prepositions; 2 proclitic conjunctions and 2 in word groups. After polysyllables caesura occurs after 23 trochees, 16 anapests, and 3 1st paeons; 42 in all.

*Elision and ecthipsis*

There are 20 occurrences of elision before arsis: 12 of a pyrrich, 7 of a 1st paeon, and 1 of a dactyl (634). There are 3 instances of elision of an amphibrach. There is ecthipsis of an amphibrach in 95.

*Monosyllable in thesis*

The thesis is a monosyllable in the 6th foot 67 times; all minimized. Nouns are enclitic 19 times and in word groups 5; personal pronouns enclitic twice, relatives enclitic once (548) and in a word group twice, demonstratives in a word group once (267), reflexives in word groups 4 times and enclitic 3; verb enclitic 14 times and in word group 8; adverbs enclitic once (840) and in a word group twice; prepositions enclitic once (705); and conjunctions enclitic twice and in a word group twice.

*Dieresis*

The 6th foot is contained within a word 514 times, 47 per cent.

*Number of spondees and trochees*

In the 6th foot there are 503 spondees, 46 per cent, and 588 trochees, 54 per cent.



## THE VERSE AS A WHOLE

*Constitution of the verses of Book III*

1. dsssd	221 ; 20 per cent	13. ssdsd	25
2. ddssd	186	14. sdddd	14
3. dsdsd	105	15. sssdd	13
4. dddsd	87	16. ssddd	8
5. sdssd	86	17. ddsds	2
6. dssdd	86	18. sdsds	2
7. ddsdd	59	19. dsdds	1
8. sddsd	47	20. dsds	1
9. sdsdd	42	21. dddds	1
10. dsddd	39	22. sssds	1
11. ssssd	35	23. sdsss	1
12. ddddd	29		
			<hr/> 1091

*Number of words in a verse*

6	357	5	127	4	5
7	344	9	65	11	1
8	186	10	5	3	1

*Caesuras*

It is as difficult in Book III as in the other books to deduce any doctrine of auxiliary caesuras. There are 55 verses without logical caesuras; that is, the caesuras in these lines are all in elision or minimized. Of the 55, 53 may be said to have a masculine caesura in the 3d foot. In verse 2, following Mirgel, *De Synaloephis et Caesuris*, p. 15, there is a masculine caesura in elision. In 56 the caesura is retracted. In 83, 432, 569, 893, 857, 937, and 1034 the caesura is in elision. In 715 it falls after a preposition in composition. Of the other two verses, one (154) has a masculine caesura after the 2d and 4th feet, retracted, and the other (673) may be said to have a masculine caesura in the

4th foot. Altogether, disregarding elisions and obscurations (of course largely subjective) the following results appear:

$m^3$ , 259 and $53=312$ ;	$m^2 m^3 m^4$ , 33	$f^3 m^4 f^5$ , 5
28.5 per cent	$m^2 f^5$ , 17	$f^2 m^3 m^4 f^5$ , 1
$m^3 f^5$ , 81	$f^2 m^4$ , 16	$m^2 f^3 m^4 f^5$ , 5
$m^3 m^4 f^5$ , 62	$f^2 m^4 f^5$ , 6	$f^1$ , 1
$m^3 m^4$ , 79	$f^2$ , 12	$m^1 m^4 f^5$ , 1
$m^4 f^5$ , 45	$m^2 f^3$ , 14	$f^3 f^5$ , 5
$m^4$ , 78 and $1=79$	$f^3$ , 6	$f^2 f^4$ , 1
$m^2 m^3$ , 81	$f^2 m^3 m^4$ , 4	$m^3 f^4 f^5$ , 1
$m^2 m^4$ , 48 and $1=49$	$f^2 f^5$ , 5	$f^4$ , 1
$m^2 m^4 f^5$ , 18	$m^3 f^4$ , 6	$f^1 m^4 f^5$ , 1
$m^2$ , 43	$f^2 m^3 f^5$ , 4	$f^1 m^3 m^4$ , 2
$m^2 m^3 m^4 f^5$ , 20	$m^2 f^3 m^4$ , 6	$f^2 f^3$ , 1
$m^2 m^3 f^5$ , 25	$f^3 m^4$ , 4	$f^2 f^3 m^4 f^5$ , 1
$f^2 m^3$ , 18	$f^1 m^3$ , 1	$m^2 m^3 f^4$ , 1
$f^5$ , 17	$m^2 f^3 f^5$ , 1	$m^1 m^3$ , 3

### *Frequency of Elisions*

In the third book 589 verse have elisions or nearly 54 per cent. There is 1 elision only in 383 lines, 35 per cent; 2 in 188; 3 in 17, and 4 in one verse (793).

*Transmitted November 16, 1921.*

## THE LUCRETIAN HEXAMETER, II\*

BY

WILLIAM A. MERRILL

---

BOOK IV

## THE FIRST FOOT

*Caesura after monosyllables*

There are 496 instances of a monosyllabic arsis in the 1st foot, 35 per cent, as there are 1279 verses in the fourth book. Of these 16 are nouns, 9 of which are proclitic, 6 in word groups, and 1 (423) independent. There are 2 personal pronouns, 1 proclitic (967) and 1 in a word group (912). There are 27 demonstratives, 13 of which are proclitic and 14 in word groups; 39 proclitic relative pronouns and 16 in word groups—55 in all. There are 4 interrogative pronouns, of which 2 are proclitic and 2 in word groups. There are 2 proclitic adjectives, 4 proclitic verbs and 10 in word groups. Of adverbs, 37 are proclitic and 44 in word groups—81 in all. There are 42 proclitic prepositions; and 192 proclitic conjunctions and 61 in word groups—253 in all.

*Masculine caesura in elision and ecthipsis*

There are 84 places where the caesura is thrown back by elision or ecthipsis; added to the 496 monosyllabic, the total of instances of masculine caesura in the first foot is 580—46 per cent. Probably all of these are minimized except one.

---

\* Continued from page 296. On page 289 read "Ionic a minore . . . Ionic a maiore is elided once."



*Caesura after trochee*

There are 169 instances of feminine caesura after trochaic words and 7 where the trochee is distributed between two words. Of these 104 are minimized and 65 not minimized.

*Elision of first syllable*

There is no instance of the elision of the first syllable.

*Elision of trochaic word*

There are 59 instances of the elision of a trochee in the 1st foot; 14 are with *atque*.

*Elision of spondee*

There are 17 instances of the elision of a spondee.

*Elision of dactyl*

There are 14 cases of the elision of a dactyl.

*Ecthlipsis*

There is 1 case of ecthlipsis of a monosyllable—*quom* in 1204, and 8 of a trochaic word. There is 1 instance of a dactyl (616); none of a spondee.

*Monosyllabic thesis*

The thesis of the 1st foot is a monosyllable in 52 instances, and in 59 other cases a monosyllable forms part of the thesis. Of the 52, there are 3 personal pronouns in word groups, 19 relative, also in word groups, 1 verb in a word group (325), 2 proclitic and 1 enclitic (774); 4 adverbs in word groups and 3 proclitic; 6 proclitic prepositions; 12 proclitic conjunctions and 1 in a word group (1180).

*Elision in thesis*

There is elision of a pyrrich in thesis 11 times, and elision of a monosyllable once (*si* in 557). There is no instance of ecthlipsis.

*Dieresis*

The 1st foot is contained within a word 256 times. There is dieresis 487 times altogether, nearly 39 per cent. Of these, 180 are minimized.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

The first foot is a dactyl 937 times, 73.3 per cent; a spondee 342, 26.7 per cent.

## THE SECOND FOOT

*Caesura after monosyllables*

In the 2d foot there is caesura after monosyllables 285 times, 22 per cent. In all but 17, the caesura is minimized. There are 7 proclitic nouns, 3 in word groups, and 1 independent (162); 1 proclitic personal pronoun (241), and 1 in a word group (339); 20 proclitic demonstrative pronouns, 1 in a word group (367) and 1 (1046) enclitic; 27 relative pronouns and 1 in a word group (715); and 2 reflexive pronouns in word groups. There are 14 proclitic verbs and 10 enclitic; 23 proclitic adverbs and 3 in word groups; 97 proclitic prepositions and 1 (597) enclitic; and 69 proclitic conjunctions and 3 in word groups.

*Masculine caesura*

After polysyllables there are 495 instances of masculine caesura in the 2d foot, which being added to the 285 with monosyllables makes 780 cases, 60 per cent. Of the 495, 230 are minimized, leaving a genuine caesura in 265 instances. After polysyllables, 98 follow an iambus, 66 a spondee, 167 an anapest, 69 a molossus, and 95 a choriambus. There is also a masculine caesura through elision and ecthipsis in 58 additional verses. The grand total is 838.

*Caesura after trochee*

There are 61 instances of feminine caesura after an unelided trochaic word, and 17 occurrences of a double caesura, both masculine and feminine, in the second foot. In addition there are 113 cases of trochaic caesura after polysyllables: 28 after an antibacchius, 19 after a 3d paeon, 25 after a 4th epitrite, 20 after an amphibrach, 21 after a dactyl-trochee. The trochaic caesura is minimized 115 times out of the 191.

*Elision in arsis*

There are 3 instances of elision in arsis of a monosyllable (247, 281, 1115), and of polysyllables 78: 14 of a 1st paeon, 11 of an antibacchius, 6 of a trochee, 2 certain pyrrichs and 5 doubtful, 26 tribrachs, 6 anapests, 6 choriambi, 1 molossus (618), and 1 iambus (741).

*Trochaic caesura in elision*

There is elision of a trochaic word 26 times and of longer words as follows: dactyl-trochee once (1183), antibacchius 2, 3d paeon 9, amphibrach 4, 4th epitrite once (900); in all 44.

*Elision of spondees, dactyls, etc.*

There is elision of a spondee in 3 verses, of a dispondee once (930), of a bacchius 2, of a dactyl-spondee once (1136). A 2d paeon is elided in 359 and a spondee-dactyl in 1191. There is no elision of a monosyllable in the thesis, but 4 certain pyrrichs are elided and 1 doubtful, tibi in 875.

*Ecthlipsis*

There is no instance of ecthlipsis of a monosyllable in the thesis. In the arsis, in 2 places ecthlipsis occurs with trochaic words, and in 13 with longer words: 8 after a tribrach, 2 after a 1st paeon, 3 after an antibacchius. There are also 2 instances of ecthlipsis of monosyllables in the arsis (474, 1180). There



is ecthipsis in caesura with 9 trochaic endings as follows: 2 trochees, 4 dactyl-trochees, and 1 each of a 3d paeon (14), amphibrach (306), and antibacchius (786).

### *Thesis a monosyllable*

There are 102 instances of a monosyllable in the thesis of the 2d foot: 41 short syllables and 61 long. Of the 61, there are 3 nouns in word groups, 1 demonstrative pronoun in a word group (1089), 1 proclitic personal pronoun (931), 3 proclitic relatives and 3 in word groups, 2 proclitic interrogatives and 1 (475) in a word group; 1 proclitic adjective (1231) and 1 in a word group (327); 1 verb in a word group (671); 12 proclitic adverbs and 9 in word groups; 7 proclitic prepositions; and 9 proclitic conjunctions and 7 in word groups.

### *Dieresis*

The 2d foot is contained within a word 20 times, and in 161 other places there is dieresis at the close of the foot; 181 in all. Of these 139 are minimized.

### *First and second feet in one word*

The 1st and 2d feet are contained within a word in 4 verses.

### *Number of dactyls and spondees*

There are 639 dactyls and 640 spondees in the 2d foot.

## THE THIRD FOOT

### *Caesura after monosyllables*

In the 3d foot there is a masculine caesura after monosyllables 189 times, almost 16 per cent. Of these 107 are minimized. There are 10 nouns in word groups and 1 enclitic (277); 1 proclitic personal pronoun (369), 3 proclitic relative pronouns, 3 in word groups, 1 enclitic (398), and 1 independent (862), 7 proclitic demonstratives, 5 in word groups, 10 enclitic and

1 independent (287), 8 reflexives in a word group and 1 enclitic (375) and 1 indefinite in a word group (199). There are 33 enclitic verbs, 17 in a word group and 1 (122) proclitic; 8 proclitic adverbs and 3 in word groups; 34 proclitic prepositions; and 38 proclitic conjunctions, 1 enclitic (668), and 1 independent (296).

#### *Masculine caesura*

After polysyllables there are 909 instances of masculine caesura without elision; including the monosyllables 1098, 86 per cent. There is anapestic rhythm in 437 verses with polysyllables and 111 with monosyllables: 548 in all, 43 per cent; and in 219 places this follows an anapestic word. There is spondaic rhythm in 472 verses. Adding the 31 instances of caesura in elision and ecthipsis, the grand total of masculine caesura is 1129. The polysyllabic words consist of 331 spondees, 114 molossi, 157 iambs, 54 choriambi, 219 anapests, 12 dispondees, 13 1st epitrites, 1 anapest-spondee, 4 amphibrach-iambs, 1 molossus-anapest, 1 choriambus-spondee, 1 spondee-anapest, 1 4th paeon. The caesura is minimized in 107 cases with monosyllables and 287 with polysyllables; 394 in all.

#### *Caesura after trochee*

There are 111 instances of trochaic caesura and 42 of them are minimized. Feminine caesura after a trochaic word occurs 17 times and after longer words 69 times; in 15 verses there are both masculine and feminine caesuras. The trochaic caesura occurs after an antibacchius 43 times, after an amphibrach 4, a 3d paeon 19, a 4th epitrite 2, a dispondee-trochee once (994).

#### *Elision in arsis*

There is no example of the elision of monosyllables in the arsis. There are 72 polysyllables elided: 11 trochees, 5 antibacchius, 8 anapests, 7 pyrrichs, 2 molossi, 4 1st paeons, 1 iambus (472 suo OQ, sua vulgate), 1 molossus-trochee (702), 28 tribrachs, 3 spondees, 1 choriambus-tribrach (1144), 1 amphibrach-iambus (1179).

*Trochaic caesura in elision*

There is elision of a trochaic word 11 times, and of longer words 11: amphibrach 3, antibacchius 2, 3d paeon 6. *Atque* occurs 7 times.

*Elision of spondees, dactyls, etc.*

There is elision of a spondee once (886), and of a molossus once (224). In the thesis there is elision of a monosyllable 3 times: *si* 515, *qui* 1082, and *tu* 1188. *Pyrrichs* are elided 4 times.

*Ecthlipsis*

There are 7 cases of ecthlipsis of a trochaic word or longer: 2 of a trochee, 2 of an antibacchius, and one each of a 3d paeon (691), amphibrach (755,) and dactyl-trochee (776). There are 17 occurrences of ecthlipsis before the arsis: 6 of tribrachs, 9 of trochees, and 1 each of an antibacchius (1056) and a pyrrich (1119). There is ecthlipsis of a monosyllable in the thesis once—*cum* in 790.

*Monosyllabic thesis*

The thesis is a monosyllable in 189 verses; in two there are 2 monosyllables (651, 1134); all are minimized. There are 14 nouns—10 proclitic and 3 in a word group; 1 proclitic personal pronoun; 2 proclitic reflexive pronouns, 21 proclitic relatives and 11 in word groups—32 in all; 1 proclitic interrogative pronoun, 3 demonstrative—1 enclitic and 2 proclitic; 1 proclitic adjective; 8 proclitic verbs; 29 adverbs—24 proclitic and 5 in a word group; 49 proclitic prepositions, and 51 proclitic conjunctions.

*Dieresis*

There is dieresis, where the foot is contained within a word, once, *inter* in 961. There is dieresis after longer words 272 times; the total is 21 per cent. The dieresis is obscured 246 times.

*First half of verse in one word*

The first half of the verse is contained within one word in 994.



*Number of dactyls and spondees*

There are 486 dactyls in the 3d foot, 37.3 per cent, and 793 spondees, 62.7 per cent.

## THE FOURTH FOOT

*Caesura after monosyllables*

There are 93 instances of masculine caesura after monosyllables in the 4th foot, of which 63 are minimized. There are 9 nouns, 14 pronouns, 24 verbs, 8 adverbs, 7 prepositions, 31 conjunctions. Three nouns are proclitic and 6 in word groups; 4 proclitic relative pronouns and 1 in a word group (1212); 3 proclitic demonstratives, 3 in a word group and 1 independent (1225); 2 reflexive pronouns in word groups; 8 proclitic verbs, 8 enclitic and 8 in word groups; 5 proclitic adverbs and 3 in word groups: 7 proclitic prepositions; and 29 proclitic conjunctions and 2 in word groups.

*Masculine caesura in fourth foot*

There are 672 instances of masculine caesura after polysyllables, 52 per cent; if to these are added the 93 after monosyllables and 51 in elisions there are in all 816 instances, 63 per cent. The polysyllables comprise 17 choriambi, 349 spondees, 207 anapests, 57 iambs, 32 molossi, 8 dispondees, 1 iambus-anapest, and 1 spondee-anapest. The caesura is minimized in 63 instances with monosyllables and 202 with polysyllables, 265 out of 765. There is anapestic rhythm 329 times: 207 with anapestic words, 46 with monosyllables and 76 otherwise. There is spondaic rhythm in 389 verses.

*Trochaic caesura*

There is feminine caesura with an unelided trochaic word 10 times, and with polysyllables 21 times: 10 after an antibacchius, 7 after a 3d paeon, 4 after an amphibrach. There is a double caesura 4 times with monosyllables. Altogether trochaic caesura occurs 36 times, of which 21 are obscured.

*Elision in arsis*

There are 3 instances of elision of monosyllables in the arsis: si in 804, se in 961, and ubi in 916. There is elision before the arsis of polysyllables 31 times: tribrach 8, pyrrich 1 (238), spondee 4, antibacchius 3, and trochee 15.

*Trochaic elision*

There is trochaic elision 35 times: of a trochaic word 10 times—3 with atque; of a 3d paeon 7—3 times with que; of an antibacchius 14—2 with que; of an amphibrach 4.

*Elision of spondees, dactyls, etc.*

Spondees are elided in 2 instances in caesura; and monosyllables 3 times in thesis: si, se, and quae.

*Ecthlipsis*

There is ecthlipsis before the arsis 9 times; 6 trochees, 2 tribrachs, and 1 antibacchius (326). In caesura there is ecthlipsis of a trochee once (333), of a 3d paeon 4, antibacchius 8, and of an amphibrach once (869); total 14. In the thesis ecthlipsis occurs with a monosyllable once—cum in 294.

*Monosyllabic thesis*

The thesis is a monosyllable 210 times, and in 12 other cases there is a short monosyllable in the thesis. Nouns are proclitic 13 times, enclitic 3, in a word group 9; total, 25; personal pronouns proclitic once (880) and in a word group twice; demonstrative pronouns proclitic and in a word group each twice; relative pronouns 22 proclitic and 2 in word groups; interrogative pronouns once proclitic (119); reflexive pronouns 4 proclitic and 2 in word groups; verbs, 8 proclitic, 5 enclitic, and 6 in word groups; 19 proclitic adverbs; 60 proclitic prepositions and 2 enclitic; and 59 proclitic conjunctions. All are obscured.

*Dieresis*

There is dieresis after the 4th foot 708 times, 55.3 per cent. The 4th foot is contained within a word 171 times. The dieresis is obscured 396 times. There is a bucolic dieresis possibly in 3 instances: verses 339, 1164, and 1185.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

There are 346 dactyls in the 4th foot, 27 per cent, and 933 spondees, 73 per cent.

## THE FIFTH FOOT

*Masculine caesura*

There are 50 instances of masculine caesura after monosyllables in the 5th foot: 1 noun in a word group (925); 1 demonstrative pronoun in a word group (469) and 1 proclitic (1053); 9 proclitic relative pronouns and 2 in word groups; 1 proclitic interrogative pronoun (884); 1 proclitic adjective (616); 1 proclitic verb (833) and 3 enclitic; 5 proclitic adverbs and 1 in a word group; 4 proclitic prepositions and 1 enclitic (545); and 19 proclitic conjunctions. After polysyllables there is masculine caesura in 6 instances: 3 after spondees, 2 after an antibacchius and 1 (448) after an iambus. In all there are 57 instances of masculine caesura without elision, and 51 are obscured. One verse, 990, is incomplete. In elision there is masculine caesura also in 19 verses through retraction.

*Caesura after trochee*

There are 612 instances of trochaic caesura, including 2 where there are both masculine and feminine caesuras, nearly 48 per cent. The caesura is obscured 305 times. After a trochaic word it occurs 266 times, after an antibacchius 218, a 3d paeon 108, amphibrach 8, ditrochee 1, 4th epitrite 2, dactyl-trochee 5, and molossus-trochee 2. There is a short monosyllable twice.



*Elision in arsis*

Monosyllables are elided in the arsis 3 times, and 32 polysyllables as follows: 6 tribrachs, 11 trochees, 3 spondees, 1 anapest, 1 dubious pyrrich or iambus (147), 3 pyrrichs, 1 antispast (322), 1 anapest-spondee, 4 4th epitrites, and 1 1st paeon.

*Elision of trochee*

There are 18 examples of trochaic elision; 14 of a trochaic word and 4 of an antibacchius. *Atque* occurs 4 times.

*Elision of spondee, dactyl, etc.*

There are 26 instances of elision of dactyls, 14 of Ionics a maiore and 3 of a pyrrich-dactyl; 43 in all.

*Ecthlipsis*

There are 7 examples of ecthlipsis before the arsis: 2 of tribrachs, 2 of trochees, and 1 each of an antibacchius, a 1st paeon, and a 4th epitrite. There is one instance of a trochaic word and 1 of a dactyl.

*Monosyllabic thesis*

There is no instance in the 5th foot of the thesis being contained within a monosyllable.

*Dieresis*

There is dieresis after the 5th foot 590 times, 46 per cent; 371 are obscured. The foot is contained within a word 325 times.

*Fifth and sixth feet in one word*

The 5th and 6th feet are contained within a word in 31 verses.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

There are 5 spondaic verses in the fourth book and 1273 dactyls. One verse is incomplete.

## THE SIXTH FOOT

*Caesura*

There is caesura in the 6th foot 56 times and 7 more in elision, making 63 in all. All are obscured. Twenty-eight follow monosyllables: 3 nouns in word groups, 4 proclitic demonstrative pronouns, 5 relative pronouns in word groups; 1 adjective in a word group (1184); 1 verb in a word group (289); 4 proclitic adverbs; 5 proclitic prepositions; and 5 proclitic conjunctions. After polysyllables 9 follow an anapest, 15 an iambus, and 4 a choriambus.

*Elision and ecthipsis*

There are 12 occurrences of elision before the arsis: 6 of a pyrrich, 4 of a 1st paeon, and 2 of a doubtful pyrrich or iambus. There are 6 instances of trochaic elision: 1 of a trochaic word and 5 of an amphibrach. There is ecthipsis once of an amphibrach (932).

*Monosyllabic thesis*

The thesis is a monosyllable in the 6th foot 62 times. All are obscured. Nouns are enclitic 9 times and in word groups 10; personal pronouns in word groups twice, reflexive pronouns also in word groups twice, relative pronouns enclitic twice, an interrogative in a word group once; adjective in word group once; verb enclitic 25 times, of which *est* occurs 13, and in a word group once; adverbs in word groups once and enclitic twice; conjunctions in word groups 4 and enclitic 2.

*Dieresis*

The 6th foot is contained within a word 560 times, 43 per cent.

*Number of spondees and trochees*

In the 6th foot there are 581 spondees, 45.4 per cent, and 697 trochees, 54.6 per cent.

## THE VERSE AS A WHOLE

*Constitution of the verses*

1. dsssd	237, 18½ per cent.	12. ssdsd	40
2. ddssd	187	13. ddddd	37
3. dsdsd	128	14. ssddd	20
4. dddsd	123	15. sssdd	18
5. sdssd	101	16. sdddd	13
6. dssdd	93	17. sddds	2
7. ddsdd	65	18. ddsds	1
8. sddsd	64	19. dsdds	1
9. dsddd	56	20. dssds	1
10. sdsdd	46	Incomplete	1
11. ssssd	44		
			<hr/> 1278

*Number of words in a line*

6	418 verses	9	47 verses
7	462	4	9
8	197	10	4
5	141		
			<hr/> 1278

*Caesuras*

The determination of valid caesuras is largely subjective, and doubtless there would be no agreement about them by different observers, and even the same observer would probably come to different decisions at different times. There are 89 verses without a logical caesura as all in them are obscured or in elision. Two are dubious—in verses 776 and 1111—but they are probably  $m^3$ ; 1 verse is incomplete. Of the remainder 72 may be said to have  $m^3$ , 7  $m^4$ , 7  $m^2$ , and 1  $f^2$ .

As in the earlier books  $m^3$  leads, 320 (25 per cent), plus 74, making 394;  $m^4$  142 plus 7, 149;  $m^3 m^4$  103;  $m^2 m^4$  80;  $m^2 m^3$  72;  $m^3 f^5$  70;  $m^2$  52 plus 7, 59;  $m^4 f^5$  31;  $f^1 m^3$  27;  $m^3 m^4 f^5$  26;  $m^2 m^3 m^4$  25;  $f^3$  24;  $f^5$  24;  $f^2 m^4$  21;  $f^2 m^3$  18;  $m^2 m^4 f^5$  16;  $m^2 f^3$  16;  $m^2 f^5$  13;  $f^2$  11 plus 1, 12;  $f^1 m^4$  10;  $f^2 m^3 m^4$  10;  $m^2 m^3 f^3$  9;  $f^1 m^3 m^4$  7;  $m^3 f^4$  7;  $f^1 m^3 f^5$  4;  $m^2 f^3 m^4$  4;  $f^2 m^4 f^5$  4;  $f^1 m^2 m^3 f^5$  3;  $f^1$  3;  $f^1 m^2 m^4$  3;  $f^2 f^5$  3;  $f^2 m^3 f^5$  3;  $f^3 m^4$  3;  $m^2 f^4$  3;  $f^3 f^5$  3;  $f^1 f^2$  2;  $m^2 m^5$  2;  $f^1 f^3$  2;  $m^5$  2;  $f^1 f^2 m^3$  2;  $f^2 m^5$  1;  $f^1 m^3 m^4 f^5$  1;  $f^3 m^5$  1;  $f^1 m^2 f^3 f^5$  1;  $f^3 f^4$  1;  $m^2 m^3 f^4 f^5$  1;  $m^2 f^4 f^5$  1;  $m^3 m^5$  1;  $f^4$  1; total 1278.



*Frequency of elisions*

In the fourth book 491 verses, 38 per cent, have elision. There is 1 elision only in 387 verses, 30 per cent, two in 92, 3 in 10, 4 in 1 (741), and 5 in 1 (1207).

## BOOK V

## THE FIRST FOOT

*Caesura after monosyllables*

There are 553 instances of a monosyllabic arsis in the 1st foot, 38 per cent, as there are 1453 verses in the fifth book. Of these 12 are nouns, of which 9 are in word groups and 3 independent. There is 1 personal pronoun (248) in a word group, and 15 demonstratives, 5 proclitic and 10 in word groups; 56 proclitic relative pronouns and 8 in word groups, 64 in all; 10 interrogative pronouns, of which 5 are proclitic and 10 in word groups; 1 (362) proclitic indefinite pronoun, 1 proclitic adjective (94), 6 proclitic verbs, 1 (637) in a word group and 1 (869) independent. Of adverbs 51 are proclitic and 32 in word groups—83 in all. There are 50 proclitic prepositions; and 240 proclitic conjunctions and 67 in word groups—307 in all. There is 1 (1194) proclitic interjection. Of the 553, 548 are obscured.

*Masculine caesura in elision and ecthipsis*

There are 61 instances where the caesura is thrown back by elision or ecthipsis; added to the 553 monosyllables, the total number of instances of masculine caesura in the 1st foot is 614, 42 per cent. Probably all of the 61 are minimized.

*Caesura after trochee*

There are 188 instances of feminine caesura after trochaic words, and 11 others where the trochee is distributed between two words. Of these, 173 are obscured and 15 not minimized.

*Elision of first syllable*

There is no occurrence of elision of the first syllable.

*Elision of trochaic word*

There are 47 cases of elision of a trochee in the 1st foot; 11 are with atque.

*Elision of spondee*

There are 9 instances of elision of spondees.

*Elision of dactyl*

There are 26 instances of elision of a dactyl.

*Ecthlipsis*

There is no instance of ecthlipsis in arsis, but 5 of a trochaic word and 1 (589) of a dactyl, and none of a spondee.

*Monosyllabic thesis*

The thesis of the 1st foot is a monosyllable in 47 instances; of these there are 4 nouns, 3 in word groups and 1 proclitic (650); 1 reflexive pronoun (1328) in a word group, 6 relative pronouns in word groups; 1 proclitic adjective (328); 2 verbs in word groups; 8 adverbs in word groups and 8 proclitics; 4 proclitic prepositions; 6 proclitic conjunctions and 7 in word groups.

*Elision and ecthlipsis in thesis*

There is elision of a monosyllable in the thesis once, me in 97, and of pyrrichs 5 times.

*Dieresis*

The 1st foot is contained within a word 230 times. There is dieresis 527 times altogether, 36 per cent. Of these 363 are minimized.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

The 1st foot is a dactyl 1071 times, approximately 74 per cent; a spondee 382, 26 per cent.

## THE SECOND FOOT

*Caesura after monosyllables*

In the 2d foot there is caesura after monosyllables 298 times, 20 per cent. The caesura is obscured 277 times, leaving a valid caesura in 21 cases. There are 2 proclitic pronouns, 10 in word groups and 2 independent; 1 personal pronoun in a word group (349), 19 proclitic demonstrative pronouns and 4 in word groups, 14 proclitic relative pronouns, 1 proclitic interrogative (26), 7 reflexives in word groups and 1 (420) proclitic. There is 1 proclitic verb (192), 28 enclitic and 3 in word groups; 36 proclitic adverbs; 84 proclitic prepositions, and 85 proclitic conjunctions.

*Masculine caesura after polysyllables*

After polysyllables there are 579 instances, nearly 30 per cent, of masculine caesura in the 2d foot, making in all, with the inclusion of the monosyllables, 877 occurrences, 60 per cent. Of the 579, 477 are minimized, leaving a genuine caesura in 102 instances. Of the cases with polysyllables, 121 follow an iambus, 54 a spondee, 190 an anapest, 87 a molossus, and 127 a chor-iambus. There is also a masculine caesura through elision or ecthipsis in 60 additional verses. The grand total is 937.

*Caesura after trochee*

There are 74 instances of feminine caesura after an unelided trochaic word and 12 instances of double caesura, both masculine and feminine, in the 2d foot. In addition there are 128 cases of trochaic caesura after polysyllables: 34 after an antibacchius, 19 after a 3d paeon, 36 after a 4th epitrite, 13 after an amphibrach, and 26 after a dactyl-trochee. The trochaic caesura is obscured 199 times out of the 214.

*Elision in arsis*

There is no instance of the elision of monosyllables in arsis. Polysyllables are elided 103 times: 22 of a 1st paeon, 13 of an



antibacchius, 10 trochee, 13 pyrrich, 28 tribrach, 7 anapest, 3 choriambus, 2 molossus, 3 spondee, and 2 iambus—ego 55, modo 334.

#### *Trochaic caesura in elision*

There is elision of a trochaic word 26 times and of longer words as follows: dactyl-trochee 5, antibacchius 2, 3d paeon 12, amphibrach 1 (1041), 4th epitrite 4; in all 50.

#### *Elision of spondee, dactyl, etc.*

There is elision of a spondee in verse 156, and two instances of elision of a dactyl. There is no elision of monosyllables in the thesis, but 8 of pyrrichs—1 being doubtful, ubi in 1074.

#### *Ecthlipsis*

There is no instance of the ecthlipsis of a monosyllable in thesis. In the arsis in 2 places ecthlipsis occurs with trochaic words, and in 11 with longer syllables: 3 after a tribrach, 1 after a 1st paeon (839), 5 after an antibacchius, and 2 after a pyrrich. There are 4 instances of ecthlipsis in arsis with monosyllables. There is ecthlipsis with 9 trochaic endings as follows: 4 trochaic words, 2 dactyl-trochees, and 3 amphibrachs.

#### *Thesis a monosyllable*

There are 63 instances of a monosyllabic thesis in the 2d foot. There are 6 proclitic nouns and 2 in word groups; 1 possessive pronoun in a word group (420), 4 proclitic relatives and 6 in word groups, 1 interrogative in a word group (1446); 1 proclitic adjective (881); 6 proclitic adverbs and 15 in word groups; 4 proclitic prepositions; and 15 proclitic conjunctions and 2 in word groups.

#### *Dieresis*

The 2d foot is contained within a word 18 times and in 172 other instances there is dieresis at the close of the foot; 190 in all. Of these 156 are minimized.

*First and second feet in one word*

The 1st and 2d feet are contained within a word in 5 verses.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

In the 2d foot there are 670 dactyls, approximately 46 per cent, and 783 spondees, 54 per cent.

## THE THIRD FOOT

*Caesura after monosyllables*

In the 3d foot there is a masculine caesura after monosyllables in 176 verses, nearly 12 per cent; 142 are minimized. There are 4 proclitic nouns, 6 in word groups, and 1 in a genuine caesura (299). There is 1 personal pronoun in a word group (1427), and 1 proclitic interrogative pronoun (527). There are 9 enclitic demonstrative pronouns, 8 proclitic, 3 in word groups, and 1 independent (455); 12 reflexive pronouns in word groups and 2 proclitic; 2 proclitic relatives and 2 in word groups; 8 enclitic verbs, 16 in word groups, and 7 proclitic; 23 proclitic adverbs; 33 proclitic prepositions; and 36 proclitic conjunctions and 1 enclitic (836).

*Masculine caesura*

After polysyllables there are 1067 instances of masculine caesura without elision; including the monosyllables, 1243, 88 per cent. There is anapestic rhythm in 468 with polysyllables and 95 with monosyllables; 563 in all, 38 per cent. In 205 instances the caesura follows an anapestic word. There is spondaic rhythm in 680 places. Adding the 46 instances of caesura in elision or ecthipsis, the grand total of masculine caesuras in the 3d foot is 1289. The polysyllables consist of 447 spondees, 126 molossi, 194 iambs, 66 choriambi, 205 anapests, 11 dispondees, 10 1st epitrites, 2 anapest-spondees, 3 double anapests, 1 molossus-spondee, and 2 choriambi-spondees. The caesura is minimized in 142 cases with monosyllables and 519 with polysyllables; 661 in all.

*Caesura after trochee*

There are 96 instances of trochaic caesura and 71 of them are minimized. Feminine caesura after a trochaic word occurs 15 times and after longer words 72 times. In 9 verses there are both masculine and feminine caesuras. The trochaic caesura occurs after an antibacchius 45 times, after an amphibrach 6, after a 3d paeon 18, and after a dactyl-trochee, 3.

*Elision in arsis*

There are 2 examples of the elision of a monosyllable in the arsis: *me e coni.* in 64, and *te* in 91. There are 52 polysyllables: trochee 9, antibacchius 3, anapest 1 (1090), pyrrich 4, molossus 5, 1st paeon, 8, tribrach 17, spondee 3, antispast 1 (262) and a double dactyl 1 (305).

*Trochaic caesura in elision*

There is elision of a trochaic word 11 times, and of longer words 25: amphibrach 8, antibacchius 9, 3d paeon 1(197), 4th epitrite 3, ditrochee 1 (90), and dactyl-trochee 3. *Atque* occurs 9 times.

*Elision of spondee, dactyl, etc.*

There is elision of a dispondee once (106), and of an Ionic a minore once (888). In the thesis there is elision of a monosyllable once—*si* in 192. Pyrrichs are elided 7 times.

*Ecthlipsis*

There are 8 cases of trochaic ecthlipsis: 5 of an antibacchius and one each of a 3d paeon (1104) an amphibrach (847), and an amphibrach-trochee (1274). There is one occurrence of ecthlipsis of a monosyllable in thesis—*rem* in 100.

There are 22 cases of ecthlipsis before the arsis: 7 of tribrachs, 10 of trochees, 2 of pyrrichs, and 1 each of an antibacchius (885), a molossus-trochee (1023), and 1 of a monosyllable—*cum* in 1142.



*Monosyllabic thesis*

The thesis is a monosyllable 213 times: all are minimized. There are 14 nouns, 10 proclitic, 3 enclitic, and 1 (1152) in a word group; 3 proclitic demonstrative pronouns, 13 proclitic relatives and 7 in word groups, 3 proclitic interrogatives; 1 enclitic adjective (572); 5 proclitic verbs and 2 enclitic; 33 proclitic adverbs and 8 in word groups; 49 proclitic prepositions, and 75 proclitic conjunctions.

*Dieresis*

There is dieresis, where the foot is contained within a word, twice—inter in 554 and 452. There is dieresis after longer words 294 times, 20 per cent. The dieresis is obscured 278 times.

*First half of verse in one word*

The first half of the verse is contained within one word 4 times. Verse 305 is noteworthy: *inviolabilia haec*.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

There are 434 dactyls in the 3d foot, 30 per cent, and 1019 spondees, 70 per cent.

## THE FOURTH FOOT

*Caesura after monosyllables*

There are 95 instances of masculine caesura after monosyllables in the 4th foot, of which 75 are minimized. There are 3 proclitic nouns and 4 in word groups; 1 personal pronoun in a word group (1282), 3 proclitic demonstratives, 4 in word groups, and 4 enclitic, 8 proclitic relatives, 1 proclitic indefinite (1412), and 6 reflexive in word groups. There are 2 proclitic adjectives; 11 proclitic verbs, 5 in word groups and 6 enclitic; 8 proclitic adverbs, 2 enclitic and 2 in word groups; 4 proclitic prepositions; 19 proclitic conjunctions, 1 enclitic (720), and 1 in a word group (1061).

*Additional masculine caesura*

There are 712 additional instances of masculine caesura, 48½ per cent; if to these be added the 95 monosyllables and 89 in elision and ecthipsis, there are in all 896 instances, 60 per cent. The polysyllables comprise 24 choriambi, 438 spondees, 135 anapests, 59 iambi, 42 molossi, 10 dispondees, 3 1st epitrites, and 1 molossus-spondee (1208). The caesura is obscured in 75 instances with monosyllables and 534 with polysyllables, 609 out of 807. There is anapestic rhythm 218 times: 135 with anapestic words, 43 with monosyllables and 83 otherwise. There is spondaic rhythm with polysyllables 494 times.

*Trochaic caesura*

There is feminine caesura with an unelided trochaic word 2 times; with longer words 9 times: 6 after an antibacchius and 3 after a 3d paeon. There is a double caesura twice with monosyllables. Altogether trochaic caesura occurs 13 times, of which 12 are minimized.

*Elision in arsis*

There is no instance of the elision of monosyllables in arsis. After the arsis, elision of polysyllables occurs 43 times: tribrach 14, pyrrich 4, spondee 1 (233), antibacchius 1 (807), trochee 21, 4th epitrite 1 (47), spondee-tribrach 1 (1249).

*Trochaic elision*

There is trochaic elision 53 times: 15 of a trochaic word (8 with atque), 10 with a 3d paeon (once with que), 24 with an antibacchius (8 with que), and 4 of an amphibrach.

*Elision of spondees, dactyls, etc.*

Spondaic words are elided in 10 instances: 6 molossi, 3 Ionies a minore, and 1 spondee (1031). Dactylic words are elided twice: an Ionic a maiore in 164 and a dactyl in 378. In the thesis 2 monosyllables are elided: vi in 162 and quae in 900, and 2 pyrrichs: neque in 1053 and sibi in 1235.

*Ecthlipsis*

There is ecthlipsis before the arsis 5 times: 3 tribrachs, 1 trochee (369), and 1 antibacchius (535). In caesura there is ecthlipsis of a trochee 7 times, of an antibacchius 13, of a 3d paeon 5, and of an amphibrach 1 (173); in all 26. There is ecthlipsis of a monosyllable in thesis once—rem in 1439.

*Monosyllabic thesis*

The thesis is a monosyllable 204 times. Nouns are proclitic 12 times, in a word group once (110) and enclitic twice; 15 in all. Pronouns demonstrative are proclitic once (621), enclitic twice; relatives proclitic 13, and in word groups twice; reflexives proclitic once (458), enclitic once (1148) and in word groups twice; interrogatives proclitic 3 times. There are 3 proclitic adjectives, 20 enclitic verbs, 25 proclitic adverbs, 2 enclitic and 2 in word groups; 46 proclitic prepositions, and 66 proclitic conjunctions. All are minimized.

*Dieresis*

There is dieresis after the 4th foot 814 times: 56 per cent. The 4th foot is contained within a word 193 times. The dieresis is obscured 665 times. There is possibly bucolic dieresis in 4 verses.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

There are 332 dactyls in the 4th foot, nearly 23 per cent, and 1121 spondees, over 77 per cent.

## THE FIFTH FOOT

*Masculine caesura*

There are 47 instances of masculine caesura after monosyllables: 5 proclitic nouns; 11 proclitic relative pronouns and 1 in a word group (276), 1 proclitic interrogative (88); 2 proclitic verbs; 5 proclitic adverbs and 1 in a word group (920); 9 proclitic prepositions; and 12 proclitic conjunctions. After



polysyllables there are 6 occurrences: 1 after a choriambus (255), 2 after an iambus, and 3 after spondees. All 53 are minimized. Adding the 16 cases in caesura there are 69 instances of masculine caesura. One verse, 1452, is incomplete.

#### *Caesura after trochee*

There are 650 instances of trochaic caesura including two cases where there is both masculine and feminine caesura, nearly 45 per cent. The caesura is minimized 602 times. After a trochaic word it occurs 266 times, after an antibacchius 299, after a 3d paeon 74, a 4th epitrite 4, a dactyl-trochee 4, an amphibrach 1 (1235).

#### *Elision in arsis*

A monosyllable is elided in the arsis once, se in 1120, and 33 polysyllables as follows: 9 tribrachs, 13 trochees, 4 4th epitrites, 2 spondees, 2 dispondees, 1 dactyl (800), 1 1st paeon (829), and 1 antibacchius (69).

#### *Elision of trochees*

There are 15 examples of trochaic elision: 11 of a trochaic word, 3 of an antibacchius, and 1 (431) of a 3d paeon. Atque and que both occur 3 times.

#### *Elision of spondees, dactyls, etc.*

There are 21 instances of the elision of dactyls, and 12 of Ionics a maiore. A pyrrich is elided in the thesis once, quoque in 920.

#### *Ecthlipsis*

There is but one example of ecthlipsis before the arsis: eadem in 338. There is one instance of ecthlipsis of an antibacchius, in 82, and of a trochee, in 229.

#### *Monosyllabic thesis*

There is no instance of a monosyllabic thesis in the 5th foot.

*Dieresis*

There is dieresis 740 times, about 50 per cent; 607 instances are minimized. The foot is contained within a word 417 times.

*Fifth and sixth feet in a word*

The 5th and 6th feet are contained within a word in 44 verses.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

There are 4 spondaic verses in the 5th foot and 1448 dactyls out of 1452 complete verses.

## THE SIXTH FOOT

*Caesura*

There is caesura in the 6th foot 30 times, to which 5 in elision should be added, making in all 35. All are minimized. Eight follow monosyllables: 3 relative pronouns in word groups; 1 verb in a word group (362); 1 proclitic adverb (497), 2 proclitic prepositions; and 1 conjunction in a word group (1071). After polysyllables 8 follow an iambus, 9 a choriambus, and 5 an anapest.

*Elision and ecthlipsis*

There are 24 occurrences of elision before the arsis: 10 of a pyrrich, 7 of a tribrach, 5 of a 1st paeon, and 1 each of a choriambus and iambus-anapest. There are 5 instances of trochaic elision: 4 of amphibrachs and 1 (558) of a trochaic word. Ecthlipsis does not occur.

*Monosyllabic thesis*

The thesis is a monosyllable 34 times; all are minimized. Nouns are enclitic 13 times and in word groups 3; relative pronouns in word groups 3, and reflexives in a word group 1 (319). Verbs are enclitic 7 times and in word groups 3; adverbs in word groups 3; and 1 conjunction in a word group (1071).

*Dieresis*

The 6th foot is contained within a word 733 times, 50 per cent.

*Number of spondees and trochees*

There are 725 spondees, nearly 50 per cent, and 727 trochees. There is 1 hypermetric line, closing in an antibacchius (849).

## THE VERSE AS A WHOLE

*Constitution of the verses of Book V*

The various combinations are arranged in the order of their occurrence:

1. dsssd	327, 22½ per cent.	11. dsddd	39
2. ddssd	236	12. ssdsd	34
3. dsdsd	155	13. ddddd	33
4. sdssd	123	14. sssdd	29
5. dssdd	108	15. sdddd	11
6. dddsd	103	16. ssddd	6
7. ssssd	80	17. ddsds	2
8. ddsdd	65	18. sdsds	2
9. sddsd	57	19. sssds	1
10. sdsdd	39		
			1452

*Number of words in a line*

6	528 verses	4	11 verses
7	446	10	1
8	212	11	1
5	224		
9	29		1452

*Caesuras*

There are 559 verses without a logical caesura, but all may be accounted for: 457 have probably m<sup>3</sup>, 65 m<sup>4</sup>, 20 m<sup>2</sup>, 7 f<sup>2</sup>, 2 f<sup>3</sup>, 4 f<sup>5</sup>, and the remaining 4 have m<sup>3</sup> in elision. Including all of these the order of occurrences is as follows:



1. m <sup>3</sup>	970, 66 per cent.	12. m <sup>2</sup> f <sup>5</sup>	5
2. m <sup>4</sup>	204	13. m <sup>3</sup> m <sup>4</sup> f <sup>5</sup>	3
3. m <sup>2</sup>	110	14. m <sup>1</sup>	2
4. m <sup>3</sup> m <sup>4</sup>	29	15. f <sup>1</sup>	2
5. f <sup>5</sup>	29	16. m <sup>1</sup> f <sup>2</sup>	1
6. m <sup>2</sup> m <sup>3</sup>	20	17. f <sup>4</sup>	1
7. m <sup>2</sup> m <sup>4</sup>	16	18. f <sup>2</sup> f <sup>5</sup>	1
8. m <sup>3</sup> f <sup>5</sup>	15	19. m <sup>1</sup> m <sup>4</sup>	1
9. f <sup>3</sup>	15	20. m <sup>2</sup> m <sup>4</sup> f <sup>5</sup>	1
10. f <sup>2</sup>	15	21. f <sup>1</sup> m <sup>4</sup>	1
11. f <sup>2</sup> m <sup>3</sup>	10	22. f <sup>1</sup> m <sup>3</sup>	1
<hr/>			
			1452

### *Frequency of elision*

In the fifth book 517 verses, 35½ per cent, have elision. There is 1 elision only in 409 verses, 28 per cent, 2 in 90 verses, and 3 in 18.

## BOOK VI

### THE FIRST FOOT

#### *Caesura after monosyllables*

There are 466 instances of a monosyllabic arsis in the 1st foot, 36 per cent, as there are 1282 verses in the sixth book. Of these 11 are nouns: 2 proclitic, 7 in word groups, and 2 independent. There is 1 proclitic personal pronoun (92) and 1 in a word group (95); 22 proclitic demonstratives, 12 in word groups and 1 (1030) independent; 38 proclitic relatives and 14 in word groups; 4 proclitic interrogatives; 8 proclitic verbs, 24 in word groups and 2 independent; 49 proclitic adverbs, 33 in word groups and 1 (570) independent; 38 proclitic prepositions; 154 proclitic conjunctions, 49 in word groups and 4 independent.

#### *Masculine caesura in elision or ecthipsis*

There are 54 instances where the caesura is thrown back by elision or ecthipsis; added to the 466 monosyllables the total number of occurrences of masculine caesura in the 1st foot is 520, 40 per cent. Of these all but 10 are minimized.

*Caesura after trochee*

There are 142 instances of feminine caesura after trochaic words, and 14 others where the trochee is distributed between two words. Of these 141 are obscured, and there is a valid caesura in 15 cases.

*Elision of first syllable*

There is no instance of the elision of the first syllable.

*Elision of trochaic words*

There are 48 cases of elisions of a trochee in the 1st foot; 8 are with atque.

*Elision of spondee*

There is 1 instance of elision of a spondee—in verse 16, where the reading is doubtful.

*Elision of dactyl*

There are 20 instances of elision of a dactyl.

*Ecthlipsis*

There are 5 instances of ecthlipsis of a trochaic word; none of a dactyl nor spondee.

*Monosyllabic thesis*

The thesis of the 1st foot is a monosyllable in 49 instances. Of these there are 5 nouns in word groups; 3 personal pronouns in word groups, 2 demonstratives in word groups, 2 proclitic relatives, 1 proclitic interrogative (139), and 1 in a word group (1106); 1 proclitic verb (188) and 6 in word groups; 6 adverbs in word groups; 7 proclitic prepositions and 15 proclitic conjunctions.

*Elision and ecthlipsis in thesis*

There is elision of a pyrrich in thesis 21 times, and ecthlipsis once—quidem in verse 80.

*Dieresis*

The 1st foot is contained within a word 261 times. There is dieresis altogether 496 times, nearly 39 per cent. Of these 355 are obscured.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

The 1st foot is a dactyl 954 times, approximately 75 per cent; a spondee 328, 25 per cent.

## THE SECOND FOOT

*Caesura after monosyllables.*

In the 2d foot there is caesura after monosyllables 274 times, approximately 21 per cent. The caesura is obscured in 263 cases, leaving 11 valid occurrences. There are 11 proclitic nouns and 7 in word groups; 18 proclitic demonstratives, 1 enclitic (78) and 1 independent (146), 29 proclitic relatives, 2 proclitic reflexives, and 1 (1088) in a word group; 20 proclitic verbs and 2 enclitic; 19 proclitic adverbs, 2 in word groups, and 1 (167) enclitic; 99 proclitic prepositions and 2 enclitic, and 58 proclitic conjunctions and 1 (768) in a word group. After polysyllables there are 536 instances, slightly over 40 per cent, of masculine caesura in the 2d foot, making in all 810 occurrences, over 60 per cent. Of the 810, 683 are minimized, leaving a genuine caesura in 127 instances. Of the 536 cases after polysyllables, 98 follow an iambus, 41 a spondee, 168 an anapest, 99 a molossus, and 130 a choriambus. There is also masculine caesura due to elision or ecthipsis, in 38 verses. The grand total of occurrences is 848.

*Caesura after trochee*

There are 47 instances of feminine caesura after an unelided trochaic word, and 15 of a double caesura, both masculine and feminine, in the 2d foot. In addition there are 114 occurrences of trochaic caesura after longer words: 24 after an antibacchius, 16 after a 3d paeon, 35 after a 4th epitrite, 17 after an amphibrach, and 22 after a dactyl-trochee. The trochaic caesura is obscured 163 times out of 177.



*Elision in arsis*

There are 3 instances of elision in arsis of a monosyllable: 2 of *se* and 1 of *qui*; and 67 of polysyllables: 16 of a 1st paeon, 7 of an antibacchius, 3 trochees, 16 pyrrichs, 14 tribrachs, 5 anapests, 4 choriambi, and possibly 2 iambs—*ubi* in 175 and *eibo* in 771.

*Trochaic caesura in elision*

There is elision of a trochaic word 17 times and of longer words as follows: dactyl-trochee 4, antibacchius 3, 3d paeon 3, amphibrach 4, 4th epitrite 2; in all 33.

*Elision of spondee, dactyl, etc.*

There is elision of a bacchius in 1194, and of a dispondee in 1266. A dactyl is elided in 716 and a spondee-dactyl in 1231. Pyrrichs are elided in thesis 7 times.

*Ecthlipsis*

There is one instance of ecthlipsis of a monosyllable in thesis—*cum* in 1215. In the arsis there is no occurrence with trochaic words, but 8 with other polysyllables: once with a tribrach (171), 6 with pyrrichs; and once with an antibacchius (48), probably corrupt. There is ecthlipsis with trochaic words as follows: 1 4th epitrite, *tempestatem*, in 263, and 2 dactyl-trochees. There is one instance of ecthlipsis with a dactylic word—*innumerabilem* in 485.

*Monosyllabic thesis*

There are 68 instances of a monosyllabic thesis in the 2d foot: there are 6 nouns, 3 enclitic and 3 in word groups; 1 personal pronoun in a word group (702), 6 proclitic relative pronouns and 4 in word groups; 3 proclitic verbs and 1 in a word group (222); 9 proclitic adverbs and 5 in word groups; 9 proclitic prepositions, and 19 proclitic conjunctions and 5 in word groups.

*Dieresis*

The 2d foot is contained within a word 19 times, and in 162 other instances there is dieresis at the close of the foot; 181 in all. Of these 140 are obscured.

*First and second feet in one word*

The 1st and 2d feet are contained within a single word in 3 verses.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

There are in the 2d foot 591 dactyls, 46.4 per cent, and 691 spondees, 53.6 per cent.

## THE THIRD FOOT

*Caesura after monosyllables*

In the 3d foot there is a masculine caesura after monosyllables 161 times, 12 per cent. Of these 131 are minimized. There are 3 proclitic nouns and 13 in word groups; 8 proclitic demonstrative pronouns, 5 enclitic and 5 in word groups, 5 proclitic relatives and 1 (85) in a word group, 5 proclitic reflexives and 1 (1086) in a word group and 1 proclitic indefinite (434); 13 proclitic verbs, 8 enclitic and 5 in word groups; 12 proclitic adverbs, 2 in word groups and 1 (478) independent; 42 proclitic prepositions; 30 proclitic conjunctions and 1 (866) in a word group.

*Masculine caesura in the third foot*

After polysyllables there are 944 instances of masculine caesura without elision; including the 161 monosyllables there are 1105, 87 per cent. There is anapestic rhythm in 412 verses with polysyllables and 89 with monosyllables, 501 in all, 39 per cent; and in 195 instances an anapestic word precedes. There is spondaic rhythm in 532 places. Adding the 23 instances of caesura in elision the grand total of masculine caesuras in the

3d foot is 1128. The polysyllables consist of 379 spondees, 133 molossi, 154 iambs, 58 choriambi, 195 anapests, 12 dispondees, 5 1st epitrites, 1 anapest-spondee, 2 spondee-anapests, 2 iambi-anapests, 1 molossus-anapest, 1 choriambus-spondee, and 1 molossus-spondee. The caesura is minimized 131 times with monosyllables and 496 with polysyllables, 627 in all.

### *Caesura after trochee*

There are 101 instances of trochaic caesura and 68 are minimized. Feminine caesura after a trochaic word occurs 21 times, and after longer words 66 times; in 14 verses there are both masculine and feminine caesuras. The trochaic caesura occurs after an antibacchius 33 times, after an amphibrach 11, a 3d paeon 14, a dactyl-trochee 3, a 4th epitrite 3, an antibacchius-trochee 1 and a double dactyl-trochee 1.

### *Elision in arsis*

There is 1 example of the elision of a monosyllable in arsis, *te, e coni.*, in 245. There are 49 polysyllables: trochees 7, antibacchius 4, anapest 1 (50), spondee 7, antispast 3, pyrrich 5, tribrach 17, molossus 3, 1st paeon 1, and choriambus 1.

### *Trochaic caesura in elision*

There is elision of a trochaic word 5 times and of longer words as follows: amphibrach 3, antibacchius 3, 3d paeon 3, dactyl-trochee 2, 4th epitrite 3, tribrach 1 (710); total 15. Atque occurs 3 times and que 2.

### *Elision of spondee, dactyl, etc.*

There is elision of a molossus once (934), and of a dactyl once (701). In the thesis there is elision of a monosyllable twice, *qui*, in 844 and 1037. Pyrrichs are elided 9 times in the thesis.



*Ecthlipsis*

There are 2 cases of trochaic ecthlipsis—1 (39) of an anti-bacchius and 1 (1171) of a dactyl-trochee. There are 2 instances of ecthlipsis of a monosyllable in thesis: iam in verse 8 and cum in 955. In the arsis there are 11 occurrences: 2 of an anti-bacchius, 2 of tribrachs, 5 trochees, and 2 pyrrichs.

*Monosyllabic thesis*

The thesis is a monosyllable 174 times and all but one (879) are minimized. There are 13 nouns, 8 proclitic and 5 in word groups, 1 proclitic demonstrative pronoun (711), 24 proclitic relatives and 7 in word groups; 3 proclitic verbs and 1 in a word group; 24 proclitic adverbs and 7 in word groups; 49 proclitic prepositions; and 39 proclitic conjunctions and 6 in word groups.

*Dieresis*

There is dieresis, where the foot is contained within a word, once only—inter in 1067, and even there queam precedes it. There is dieresis after polysyllables 81 times; adding the 174 monosyllables the total is 255, nearly 20 per cent. Of these 240 are obscured.

*First half of verse in one word*

The first half of the verse is contained within a single word 3 times.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

There are 591 dactyls in the 3d foot, nearly 40 per cent, and 691 spondees, over 60 per cent.

## THE FOURTH FOOT

*Caesura after monosyllables*

There are 81 instances of masculine caesura following monosyllables, of which 70 are minimized. There is 1 proclitic noun (953), 2 enclitic, and 4 in word groups; 3 personal pronouns in word groups, 4 proclitic demonstratives, 1 enclitic (1002) and

3 in word groups, 1 proclitic relative (1061) and 1 in a word group (1243), 1 proclitic indefinite (847), 2 proclitic reflexives and 1 in a word group (1067); 14 proclitic verbs and 1 in a word group (1059); 9 proclitic adverbs and 4 in word groups; 16 proclitic prepositions, and 12 proclitic conjunctions and 1 (507) in a word group.

### *Masculine caesura in the fourth foot*

There are 666 instances of masculine caesura following polysyllables, 51 per cent; if to these be added the 81 after monosyllables and 48 in elision and ecthipsis there are in all 795 instances, over 62 per cent. The polysyllables comprise 13 choriambi, 368 spondees, 172 anapests, 64 iambi, 36 molossi, 5 dispondees, 5 1st epitrites, and 3 dactyl-trochees. The caesura is obscured in 70 instances with monosyllables and in 405 with polysyllables; 475 out of 747. There is anapestic rhythm 283 times: 172 with anapestic words, 31 with monosyllables and 80 otherwise. There is spondaic rhythm with polysyllables 414 times.

### *Trochaic caesura*

There is feminine caesura with unelided trochaic words 5 times and with polysyllables 16 times as follows: 12 after an antibacchius, 3 after a 3rd paeon, and 1 (518) after an amphibrach. There is double caesura with monosyllables 4 times. Altogether trochaic caesura occurs 25 times, of which 15 are minimized.

### *Elision in arsis*

There is no instance of the elision of a monosyllable in the arsis. Elision of polysyllables occurs 17 times: tribrach 6, pyrrichs 5, anapests 3, and spondees 3.

### *Trochaic elision*

There is trochaic elision 28 times: of a trochaic word 5—2 with atque—antibacchius 11, 3d paeon 8, amphibrach 4—9 with que.

*Elision of spondees, dactyls, etc.*

Spondaic words are elided 4 times: 2 spondees and 2 molossi. One Ionic a maiore is elided in 807. In the thesis a monosyllable, se, is elided in 441.

*Ecthlipsis*

There is ecthlipsis in arsis 5 times: 4 trochees and 1 (1234) tribrach. In caesura there is ecthlipsis of trochaic words 16 times: 6 of a trochaic word, 6 of an antibacchius, and 4 of a 3d paeon. There is ecthlipsis of a monosyllable in thesis twice: vim in 181 and cum in 469.

*Monosyllabic thesis*

The thesis is a monosyllable 184 times, of which 171 are obscured. Nouns are proclitic 21 times, enclitic 6, in word groups 4, and independent 2—33 in all. A personal pronoun is in a word group once (81), demonstratives are proclitic 7 times and enclitic once (1206), relatives proclitic 12, reflexives proclitic once (443), and in word groups 3; verbs proclitic 11, enclitic 2, and in word groups 3; adverbs proclitic 19 and in word groups 2; prepositions proclitic 49 and enclitic 2, and conjunctions proclitic 38.

*Dieresis*

There is dieresis after the 4th foot 729 times; 545 with polysyllables and 184 with monosyllables; almost 57 per cent. The 4th foot is contained within a single word 93 times. The dieresis is obscured 561 times. There is possibly bucolic dieresis in 5 verses.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

There are 311 dactyls in the 4th foot, approximately 24 per cent, and 970 spondees, nearly 76 per cent.



## THE FIFTH FOOT

*Masculine caesura*

There are 54 instances of masculine caesura after monosyllables in the 5th foot: 2 enclitic demonstrative pronouns, 4 proclitic relatives, 4 in word groups, and 1 (427) independent, 1 (64) proclitic interrogative; 4 proclitic verbs; 2 proclitic adverbs and 2 in word groups; 13 proclitic prepositions; 17 proclitic conjunctions and 4 in word groups.

After polysyllables there are 5 occurrences: 1 after an antibacchius (41), 3 after iambs, and 1 (292) after a choriambus. Fifty-three are minimized after monosyllables and all after polysyllables. Adding the caesuras in elision in 13 instances, there are 72 cases in all of masculine caesura in the 5th foot.

*Caesura after trochee*

There are 592 instances of trochaic caesura including 3 where there is also a masculine caesura; 46 per cent. The caesura is minimized 527 times. After a trochaic word it occurs 241 times, after an antibacchius 289, 4th epitrite 6, 3d paeon 47, dactyl-trochee 3, double amphibrach 1 (264), amphibrach 1 (838) and molossus-trochee 1 (611).

*Elision in arsis*

No monosyllable is elided in the arsis, but 28 polysyllables as follows: 9 tribrachs, 7 4th epitrites, 9 trochees, 1 (242) dispondees, 1 (686) pyrrich-dactyl, and 1 (1077) 1st paeon.

*Elision of trochees*

There are 11 instances of trochaic elision: 6 of a trochaic word, 2 of an antibacchius, and 3 of a 3d paeon. *Atque* occurs twice and *que* once.

*Elision of spondees, dactyls, etc.*

There are 22 instances of the elision of a dactylic word and 10 of Ionics a maiore. In 569 a pyrrich-dactyl is elided if *repraehendere* is read there, but if the word is spelled *reprendere* it will be an Ionic a maiore. A pyrrich is elided in thesis in 897 and 1073.

*Ecthlipsis*

There are six instances of ecthlipsis in arsis: 2 of a 4th epitrite, 3 trochees, and 1 (1101) antibacchius. There are 2 instances of trochaic ecthlipsis in caesura—1 of an antibacchius in 58, and 1 of a trochee in 1065.

*Monosyllabic thesis*

There is no instance of a monosyllabic thesis in the 5th foot.

*Dieresis*

There is dieresis 672 times, 52 per cent. Five hundred and sixty-one are minimized. The foot is contained within a single word 378 times.

*Fifth and sixth feet in one word*

The 5th and 6th feet are contained within a single word in 33 verses.

*Number of dactyls and spondees*

There are no spondaic verses in the sixth book.

## THE SIXTH FOOT

*Caesura*

There is caesura in the 6th foot 52 times and possibly 1 more in elision, making 53. All are minimized. Twenty-three follow monosyllables: 1 proclitic demonstrative pronoun (238), 1 proclitic reflexive (325), 3 proclitic relatives, 1 proclitic adjective (1082), 2 proclitic verbs; 1 proclitic adverb (1063);

10 proclitic prepositions, and 4 proclitic conjunctions. After polysyllables 5 follow a choriambus, 5 an anapest, and 19 an iambus.

### *Elision and ecthipsis*

There are 27 occurrences of elision before the arsis: 12 of a pyrrich, 3 of a choriambus, 5 of a tribrach, 6 of a 1st paeon, and 1 (836) of a spondee-tribrach. If *in coeundo ut* is the correct reading in 846, there is 1 instance of the elision of an Ionic a minore. There is no ecthipsis.

### *Monosyllabic thesis*

The thesis is a monosyllable in the 6th foot 51 times; all are minimized. Nouns are enclitic 17 times and in word groups 4; an indefinite pronoun is in a word group in verse 167, reflexives are enclitic 4 times and in word groups 5; verbs are enclitic 6 times and in word groups 4; adverbs enclitic 4 times, and conjunctions enclitic 6.

### *Dieresis*

The 6th foot is contained within a single word 683 times, 50 per cent.

### *Number of spondees and trochees*

In the 6th foot there are 570 spondees, 45 per cent, and 711 trochees, 55 per cent.

## THE VERSE AS A WHOLE

### *Constitution of the verses of Book VI*

1. dsssd	284, 22 per cent.	9. sdsdd	42
2. ddssd	183	10. dsddd	40
3. dsdsd	140	11. sddsd	38
4. dddsd	119	12. ssdsd	36
5. sdssd	100	13. ddddd	22
6. dssdd	87	14. sssdd	19
7. ddsdd	77	15. ssddd	18
8. ssssd	66	16. sdddd	10

---

1281



*Number of words in a line*

6	446 verses	9	43 verses
7	403	4	7
8	193	10	3
5	186		
			<hr/> 1281

*Caesuras*

There are 412 verses without a logical caesura, but all may be accounted for. In 127 of them there is a logical pause at a dieresis; 65 after the 4th foot, 29 after the 5th, 14 after the 2d, 8 after the 3d, 6 after both the 4th and 5th, 2 after both the 3d and 4th, and 1 each after the 2d and 3d, 2d and 4th, and 2d and 5th. But of the 412 without logical caesura, 361 have  $m^3$  with 9 more in elision, 22  $m^4$ , 3  $m^2$ , 13  $m^2 f^3$ , 1  $f^2 f^5$ , and 3  $f^3$ . Including all of the verses in the sixth book the order of occurrences is apparently as follows, although there can be no certainty in the matter.

1. $m^3$	$391 + 370 = 761$ , 59.4 per cent.	17. $f^1 m^3$	5
2. $m^4$	$192 + 22 = 214$	18. $m^1 m^3$	4
3. $m^2$	$77 + 3 = 80$	19. $m^2 m^4 f^5$	3
4. $m^3 m^4$	36	20. $f^2 f^5$	$2 + 1 = 3$
5. $f^3$	$27 + 3 = 30$	21. $m^2 m^3 m^4$	3
6. $m^3 f^5$	26	22. $m^2 m^3 f^5$	3
7. $f^5$	22	23. $m^3 f^4$	2
8. $m^2 m^4$	18	24. $f^2 f^4$	2
9. $m^2 f^3$	$2 + 13 = 15$	25. $f^1 m^4$	2
10. $m^2 m^3$	10	26. $f^3 f^5$	2
11. $f^2$	6	27. $m^3 m^4 f^5$	2
12. $m^2 f^5$	5	28. $f^2 m^4$	1
13. $m^1$	5	29. $f^2 m^3 m^4$	1
14. $f^1$	5	30. $m^2 f^4$	1
15. $f^4$	5	31. $f^2 m^3 m^4$	1
16. $m^1 m^4$	5		
			<hr/> 1281

*Frequency of elisions*

In the sixth book 422 verses, about 32 per cent, have elisions. There is 1 elision only in 362 verses, over 28 per cent, 2 in 52 verses, and 3 in 8 verses.

## INDEX\*

- A, a alpha, MS of *Silvae*, readings of, 71, 72, 93, 102, 104, 106, 108, 114, 130, 162.
- Active and passive forms together in Statius, 167.
- Allen, James, Turney, *The Key to the Reconstruction of the Fifth-Century Theater at Athens*, 55-58.
- Alliteration, in Cicero and Lucretius, 144.
- Anacoluthon, with *quasi*-clauses, 212.
- Anaphora, with *hic*, 74.
- Apodosis, suppressed in conditional clauses of comparison in Cicero, 184, 195, 197, 208, 213, 236.
- Appuleia, wife of Lepidus, infidelity of, 63, 66, 67.
- Aratea*, of Cicero, 143.
- Aratus, 143, 168.
- 'As if' group of *quam si* clauses, 201 ff. *See also* *quam si*.
- Asteris*, 76.
- Asyndeton, in Statius, 115.
- Athens, The Key to the Reconstruction of the Fifth-Century Theater at*, 55-58.
- Autographa of John the Scot, The Supposed*, 135-141.
- Avantius, text of *Silvae*, 82, 157.
- Bacchus, for wine, 83.
- Baehrens, text of *Silvae*, 88, 91, 103, 106, 122, 123, 131, 132, 163, 167, 169, 178.
- Bamberg MS of John the Scot, 135, 136, 141.
- Barth, text of *Silvae*, 91, 104, 111, 159, 164; cited, 133.
- Benart, text of *Silvae*, 99.
- Bentley, text of *Silvae*, 78, 117.
- Bernegger, cited, 60.
- Brandes, text of *Silvae*, 94.
- Buecheler, text of *Silvae*, 130.
- C, confused with t in Statius, 164.
- Caesar, Use of Past Tenses in Cum-Clauses* by, 1-53.
- Caesar, Suetonius' life of, 59.
- Caesura, in Lucretian Hexameter, 253-334 *passim*.
- Cartault, cited, 70, 121; text of *Silvae*, 95.
- Casaubon, cited, 60, 64; text of *Silvae*, 158.
- Catilinarian Conspiracy, 64.
- Catulus, victor over Lepidus, 66, 67.
- Cicero, Conditional Clauses of Comparison in*, 183-251.
- Cicero, Lucretius and Verse of*, 143-154.
- Cicero, poetry of, 143, 144, 145; cited, 180.
- Cinna, recall bill of, 59; civil victory of, 64, 65, 66.
- Conditional Clauses of Comparison, Cicero's*, 183-251; use of primary tenses of subjunctive in by Cicero, 183 ff.; table of, 237; treatment of in textbooks, 183, 186; contrary to fact implication in, 184, 185, 186; element of pretense in, *see* *quasi*-clauses; introduced by unusual combinations, 235, 245; use of secondary tenses of subjunctive in, 236, table of, 237; coordinate type of, 236, 238; subordinate type of, 236; summary of cases in Cicero, 237 ff.; register of cases in Cicero, 246 ff. *See also* *ac si*, *quam si*, *quasi*, *quasi*-clauses, *ut si*.
- Copula, omitted with *ego* in Statius, 167.
- Cruceus, text of *Silvae*, 86.
- Cum*-clause, its date-determining force, 2; in Caesar, use of imperfect and pluperfect tenses in, 5, 8 ff.; expressing iterative action, 5, 43; causal use of imperfect and pluperfect tenses in, 8; motivating use of imperfect and pluperfect tenses in, 9 ff.; explanatory or static type of, 9, 11; forward-moving type of, 8, 11; complex-temporal use of imperfect and pluperfect tenses in, 18 ff.; temporal use of imperfect and pluperfect tenses in, 22 ff.; relative use of imperfect and pluperfect tenses in,

\* Univ. Calif. Publ. Class. Phil., vol. 5.

## Index

- 25 ff.; iterative use of imperfect and pluperfect tenses in, 28 ff.; concessive use of imperfect and pluperfect tenses in, 31; adversative use of imperfect and pluperfect tenses in, 31 ff.; attendant circumstantial use of imperfect and pluperfect tenses in, 33 ff.; explanatory or oppositional use of imperfect and pluperfect tenses in, 35 ff.; position of, 36 ff.; objective use of imperfect subjunctive in, 38; use of subjunctive in dependent relation in, 39 ff.; technically explicative use of subjunctive in dependent relation in, 39; use of *futurum in praeterito* in, 40 ff.; use of perfect tense in, 42 ff.; subjunctive, 43, indicative, 43, with past tenses in Caesar, classification of examples, 47 ff.
- Cum-clauses, Caesar's Use of Past Tenses in*, 1-53.
- Dactyls in Lucretian hexameter, 256-334 *passim*.
- Danube, text of *Silvae*, 166.
- Daremberg-Saglio, cited, 121.
- De Divisione Naturae*, of John the Scot, 135-141 *passim*.
- Degree, expressed by *quam si* with subjunctive in Cicero, 201, 204, 242.
- Delphin editor, text of *Silvae*, 104.
- Deutsch, Monroe E., *The Death of Lepidus, Leader of the Revolution of 78 B.C.*, 59-68.
- Domitius, text of *Silvae*, 91, 134, 125, 130, 157, 158, 172, 173, 174, 177, 178, 179.
- Dörpfeld, discoveries in theater at Athens, 55; cited, 56, 57.
- Ecthlipsis, in Lucretian hexameter, 255-334 *passim*.
- Elision in Lucretian hexameter, 255-334 *passim*; in *Silvae*, 73.
- Ellipsis of apodosis, *see* Apodosis.
- Ellis, cited, 73, 111, text of *Silvae*, 121, 169.
- Ennius, correspondence of Lucretius' verse with, 143; modifications of hexameter of, 144.
- Fiechter, quoted, 56.
- Floss, H. J., MS of John the Scot, 135.
- Futurum in praeterito*, with *cum* in Caesar, 40 ff.; with *quam si* in Cicero, 196, 197.
- Gale, Thomas, MS of John the Scot, 135.
- Gardner, cited, 56.
- Gevaert, text of *Silvae*, 81, 101, 108, 161.
- Graevius, on meaning of *nex*, 60.
- Grasberger, text of *Silvae*, 111.
- Greek Theater of the Fifth Century, The*, 58.
- Gronovius, text of *Silvae*, 81, 91, 104, 106, 118, 161, 169, 176; cited, 133, 134.
- Guido, cited, 103.
- Hale, theory of modal usage in *cum*-construction, 2.
- Halm, text of *Silvae*, 110.
- Hand, text of *Silvae*, 75.
- Haupt, text of *Silvae*, 100.
- Heinsius, text of *Silvae*, 78, 80, 90, 100, 107, 115, 116, 124, 132, 156, 158, 166, 168, 169, 177, 179, 180, 181.
- Hexameter, The Lucretian*, I, 253-296, II, 297-334.
- Hexameter, rhythm of, established in schools at Rome, 144; after Lucilius, 145; in Ovid, 145.
- Hexameter verse before Lucretius' time, fragments of, 143.
- Hofmann, cited, 219.
- Horace, 180.
- Housman, text of *Silvae*, 163; cited, 86.
- Imhof, cited, 91; text of *Silvae*, 175.
- Imperfect and pluperfect tenses, with *cum* in Caesar, *see* *Cum-clause*.
- Infinitive, present passive, in Statius, 167.
- John the Scot, the Supposed Autograph of*, 135-141.
- Karsten, cited, 175.
- Kalinka, text of *Silvae*, 129.
- Klotz, cited, 90; text of *Silvae*, 99, 122, 125, 126, 133, 157, 158, 159, 163, 169, 174.
- Koestlin, text of *Silvae*, 89, 175.
- Korsch, text of *Silvae*, 108.
- Krohn, text of *Silvae*, 87, 110, 120, 125, 131, 162, 173, 175.



## Index

- Laon MS of *De Divisione Naturae* of John the Scot, 135, 136, 141.
- Lepidus, *The Death of Lepidus, Leader of the Revolution of 78 B.C.*, 59-68.
- Lipsius, text of *Silvae*, 76, 175.
- Lucan, 99, 100.
- Lucilius, correspondence of Lucretius' verse with, 143; modification of hexameter of, 144.
- Lucretian Hexameter, The*, I, 253-296, II, 297-334.
- Lucretius, 93, 100, 103; supposed imitator of Cicero's poetry, 143, 144, 145; hexameter of, 145.
- Lucretius and Cicero's Verse*, 143-154.
- MS of *Silvae*, 70, 72, 74, 78, 79, 81, 88, 91, 92, 93, 103, 105, 118, 122, 123, 125, 128, 129, 130, 133, 134, 155, 158, 162, 176.
- Madvig, reading of Livy, 120.
- Manner, expressed by *quam si* with subjunctive in Cicero, 202, 205, 242.
- Marius, *see* Cinna.
- Markland, quoted, 69; cited, 157, 158, 182; text of *Silvae*, 71, 73, 74, 78, 81, 83, 85, 88, 89, 95, 96, 97, 99, 100, 102, 103, 104, 106, 108, 110, 112, 113, 119, 120, 124, 125, 126, 127, 128, 130, 131, 134, 155, 158, 162, 166, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 177, 179, 182.
- Marquardt, cited, 114, 134.
- Martial, 79, 82.
- Merrill, William A., *Notes on the Silvae of Statius, Book I*, 69-83, *Book II*, 85-100, *Book III*, 101-116, *Book IV*, 117-134, *Book V*, 155-182; *Lucretius and Cicero's Verse*, 143-154; *The Lucretian Hexameter, I*, 253-296, *II*, 297-334.
- Meursius, text of *Silvae*, 88, 108.
- Meyer, W., text of *Silvae*, 175.
- Migne, cited, 139.
- Monosyllabic thesis, *see* Thesis, of foot, a monosyllable.
- Mueller, L., cited, 71; text of *Silvae*, 170.
- Munro, quoted, 143.
- n, confused with r in *Silvae*, 92; corrupted to v in *Silvae*, 155.
- Nodell, text of *Silvae*, 74.
- Nutting, H. C., *Caesar's Use of Past Tenses in Cum-clauses*, 1-53; *Cicero's Conditional Clauses of Comparison*, 183-251.
- O, original of Reims MS of *De Divisione Naturae* of John the Scot, 136, 137, 139, 141.
- o, for n in *Silvae*, 126.
- Orchestra, in theater at Athens, 55, 56, 57.
- Otto, text of *Silvae*, 74, 76, 83, 94, 106, 110, 166.
- Ovid, hexameter of, 145.
- Oxymoron, in *Silvae*, 162.
- P, MS of *Silvae*, 80, 130, 131.
- Parallelism in *Silvae*, 81.
- Paraskenia*, in theater at Athens, 57, 58.
- Paris MS of *De Divisione Naturae* of John the Scot, 135, 136.
- Parmensis, MS of *Silvae*, 109, 182.
- Parodoi* in fifth-century theater at Athens, 58.
- Passive forms, with active, in *Silvae*, 167.
- Past tenses, with *cum* in Caesar, *see cum-clause*.
- Peck, Tracy, quoted, 143.
- Peerkamp, text of *Silvae*, 89.
- Perfect tense, with *cum* in Caesar, *see cum-clause*.
- Phillimore, text of *Silvae*, 74, 79, 80, 87, 90, 91, 93, 94, 97, 101, 105, 106, 112, 122, 125, 127, 157, 159, 165, 166, 167, 169, 173, 176.
- Plautus, contrary to fact construction in, 188; *quasi*-clauses suggesting pretense in, 189, 190.
- Pluperfect tense, rare in *Silvae*, 123; with *cum* in Caesar, *see cum-clause*.
- Politian, text of *Silvae*, 71, 87, 107, 115, 118, 122, 125, 157, 178, 181.
- Pollius, 92, 103, 116.
- Postgate, cited, 80; text of *Silvae*, 90, 95, 118, 122, 126, 127, 130, 133, 157, 159, 163, 174.

# Index

- Primary tenses of subjunctive, Cicero's use of in conditional clauses of comparison, 183 ff., *see also* introductory words; early Latin use of in contrary to fact construction, 187 f.
- Pronoun, omitted with accusative of present participle in Statius, 169.
- Proskenion*, in theater at Athens, 57, 58.
- Quasi-clauses, use of primary tenses of subjunctive in, 185, 216 ff.; loosely attached, 185, 212, 215, 216 ff., 221, 243; not future in outlook, 186, 187, 217; temporal force of perfect subjunctive in, 187; expressing notion of pretense, 189, 198, 208, 222 ff., 238 ff., 243; giving substance of person's thought in Silver Latin, 189, 211, 216, 223; with *similo* in Plautus, 189, 190, 211, 238; special type of unreality implied in, 208 ff.; contrary to fact implication in, 218, 238; subordination of, 209 ff.; use of secondary tenses of subjunctive in, 214 ff.; tendency to coördination in, 215, 221, 243; punctuation with, 221; formally indeterminate cases of, 221.
- Queck, text of *Silvae*, 110.
- Quintilian, 88, 180.
- R, MS of *Silvae*, 124.
- R, Reims MS of *De Divisione Naturae* of John the Scot, 135.
- r, confused with n in *Silvae*, 161; inserted r, 167.
- Rand, Edward Kennard, *The Supposed Autographa of John the Scot*, 135-141.
- Reims MS of *De Divisione Naturae* of John the Scot, 135-140 *passim*; plates of, following 141.
- Revolution of 78 B.C., The Death of Lepidus, Leader of the*, 59-68.
- Riese, text of *Silvae*, 121.
- Robert, quoted, 56; cited, 57.
- Roesch, cited, 144.
- Romanus edition of *Silvae*, 106.
- Rose, text reading of in Vitruvius, 133.
- Rossberg, text of *Silvae*, 105.
- Rothstein, text of *Silvae*, 91, 180.
- Ruediger, text of *Silvae*, 112.
- Saenger, text of *Silvae*, 106, 108.
- Salmasius, text of *Silvae*, 157.
- Sandstroem, text of *Silvae*, 156.
- Schrader, text of *Silvae*, 94, 113.
- Schwartz, text of *Silvae*, 69, 98, 169.
- Secondary tenses of subjunctive, Cicero's use of in conditional clauses of comparison, *see* introductory words.
- si-clause, substantive use of, 197.
- Silius, 171.
- Silvae of Statius, Notes on, Book I*, 69-83, *Book II*, 85-100, *Book III*, 101-116, *Book IV*, 117-134, *Book V*, 155-182.
- Silvae*, inferior MSS of, 70, 72, 81, 122, 124, 127, 168; vulgate, 81-180 *passim*; German editions of, 82, 83, 91, 92; modern or recent editors of, 83, 92, 101, 116, 118, 120, 124, 126, 128, 131, 133, 158, 159, 162, 164, 169, 173, 176; early editions of, 105, 114, 162; older editors of, 122, 123; *editio princeps* of, 123, 125.
- Skene*, in theater at Athens, 55, 56, 57.
- Skutsch, text of *Silvae*, 105.
- Slater, translation of *Silvae*, cited, 82, 97, 100, 107, 124, 125, 133; text of *Silvae*, 115, 123, 124, 175, 176.
- Spondees in Lucretian hexameter, 256-334 *passim*.
- Statius, Notes on the Silvae of, Book I*, 69-83, *Book II*, 85-100, *Book III*, 101-116, *Book IV*, 117-134, *Book V*, 155-182.
- Statius, elder, 174, 175.
- Subject, omitted, 2d person singular, in Statius, 114.
- Substantive verb, omitted in Statius, 102, 103.
- Sudhaus, text of *Silvae*, 176.
- Sulla, 64, 67.
- Suppressed apodosis, *see* Apodosis.
- Synaeresis, 71.
- Terminal dative in Statius, 70.

## Index

- 'Than if' group of *quasi si* clauses in Cicero, 191 ff.
- Theater, *The Key to the Reconstruction of the Fifth-Century Theater at Athens*, 55-58.
- Thesis, of foot, a monosyllable, in Lucretian hexameter, 255-334 *passim*.
- Third Catilinarian Oration of Cicero, its connection with death of Lepidus, 64, 67.
- Time at which, expressed by *cum* with imperfect in Caesar, 20, 24.
- Time within which, expressed by *cum* with imperfect in Caesar, 20, 24.
- Traube, Ludwig, discovery of handwriting of John the Scot by, 135, 136, 140, 141.
- Trochaic caesura, trochaic elision, trochees, in Lucretian hexameter, 264-329 *passim*.
- Turnebus, text of *Silvae*, 118.
- Tyrrell, quoted, 219.
- u, interchanged with l in Lucretian manuscripts, 172; confused with, in *Silvae*, 181.
- um, elided before *et* in Statius, 124.
- Unger, text of *Silvae*, 107, 112, 178, 179, 180.
- Valerius Flaccus, 171.
- Valpy, index of Statius by, cited, 167.
- Venice edition of *Silvae*, 106.
- Verb, omitted in Statius, 122.
- Verses of Lucretian hexameter, constitution of, 269-333 *passim*.
- Vibius Sequester, 122.
- Virgil, hexameter of, 145; simplicity of, 171; cited, 180.
- Vollmer, text of *Silvae*, 79, 88, 96, 116, 122, 123, 124, 125, 127, 130, 131, 132, 157, 159, 162, 163, 165, 169, 172, 175, 176; quoted, 124.
- Vulgate readings of *Silvae*, 81, 83, 85, 90, 101, 103, 104, 108, 112, 119, 123, 124, 129, 131, 133, 156, 159, 161, 163, 165, 176, 180.
- Waller, text of *Silvae*, 109.
- Weissenborn, reading of Livy, 120.
- Wernsdorf, cited, 127.

## INDEX VERBORUM

- ab, redundant, in Statius<sup>1</sup> and Lucretius, 103.
- ac, before s in Statius, 129; for at in Statius, 176.
- ac primum in Statius, 99.
- ac si, in Cicero, secondary tenses of subjunctive with, 232; primary tenses of subjunctive with, 233; coördinate type of clause with, 232, 233, 245; indeterminate cases of clauses with, 233, 234.
- adflare = blast, in Statius, 171.
- adque = at or beside, in Statius, 87.
- alio = elsewhere, in Statius, 163.
- animis, referring to single person in Statius, 125.
- at tu (tibi, te) in Statius, 94.
- aura, in Cicero and Lucretius, 144.
- bibit, of serpent, in Statius, 89.
- bromium = passion, in Statius, 94.
- caelo, locative, in Statius, 168.
- caere puer, without dative in Statius, 112.
- centum, joined to noun in *Silvae*, 157.
- cereus, of color or synonym of mollis, 164.
- consciis, used without a verb in Statius, 107.
- crinis, with vultus in Statius, 171.
- cum, indicative with, in early Latin, 1; relative word in Caesar, 7; use of past tenses with by Caesar, *see* cum-clause.

<sup>1</sup> All references to Statius are limited to the *Silvae*.



## Index

- cunctus, in Statius, *see* omnis.  
 discedere, with or without ab in Statius, 106.  
 domus = origin, in Statius, 87; used with dispensator, 164.  
 ducis, with adjective or alone in Statius, 165.  
 erat, in *Silvae*, 103.  
 est, omission of in Statius, 71.  
 et = even, in Statius, 76.  
 Euboicus, in Statius, 173.  
 excedere, with accusative in Silver Latin, 119.  
 famulatur, plural of preferred by Statius, 108.  
 famulum, Statian usage of, 159.  
 faustus, of person in Statius, 70.  
 fugit, length of u in Statius, 105.  
 futurum esset, periphrastic of in *quasi*-clauses in Cicero, 215.  
 gemere = dolere, 110.  
 genus = family, in Statius, 88.  
 gero = wear, in Statius, 101.  
 heu, with connotation of sorrow in Statius, 99, 177.  
 heus, in comic poets, 177.  
 hic, repeated in Statius, 79.  
 idem, balancing conditional clauses of comparison, 202, 215, 222, 240.  
 illic, in *Silvae*, 125.  
 in, omitted with gremio in Statius, 118; with local ablative, 159.  
 incompertus, 180.  
 incumbo, with accusative in Statius, 94.  
 inter, in Cicero and Lucretius, 144.  
 interitus, of violent death, in Cicero, 64 f.  
 ipse, used with another modifying word in Statius, 166; "yes, I," 169.  
 istius, non-occurrence of in *Silvae*, 86.  
 ita, resumptive in Cicero, 203, 205, 212.  
 iam, with nunc in Statius, 115.  
 iamne, in Statius, 85.  
 iamque, in Statius, 85.  
 iuvenis, adjective in Statius, 102.  
 lampas, singular of used of plural action in Statius, 72.  
 laetus, in Cicero and Lucretius, 144.  
 litus, used of river in Statius, 95.  
 macte, followed by quod in Statius, 164.  
 manus = armed force or violence, in Statius, 82.  
 mater, first syllable of long in Statius, 75.  
 ne, long or short before u in Statius, 80.  
 nec si, in Statius, 70.  
 nex, of violent death in Suetonius, 59, 61; = mors, 60; of death from illness, in Justin, 60; of death in general, in Seneca, 60, in Manilius, 61.  
 notae = scars, in Statius, 69.  
 nox, in Cicero and Lucretius, 144.  
 nubes, in Cicero and Lucretius, 144.  
 omnis and cunctus in Statius, 77.  
 premo, favorite word of Statius, 108.  
 pumilus, length of first syllable of, 83.  
 quam, standing for coördination in conditional clauses of comparison, 208, 238.  
 quam si, retaining identity or merged into quasi in Cicero, 183 ff., 237; expressing assumption or pretense in Cicero, 205, 242; "than if" in Cicero, secondary tenses of subjunctive with, 191 ff., coördinate type of clause, 193, 241, futurum in praeterito, 196, 197, 241, primary tenses of subjunctive with, 198 ff.; doubtful cases, 199; "as if" in Cicero, secondary tenses of subjunctive with, 201 ff., expressing degree, 201, 204, 242, expressing manner, 202, 205, 242, coördinate type of clause, 202, 205, 242, primary tenses of subjunctive with, 204, position of tam with, 203, 204, 205, 242.  
 quasi, loss of etymological force of in Cicero, 207; = quam + si in early Latin, 207, 238; reinforced in Cicero, 216; *see also quasi*-clauses.  
 que, position of in Statius, 96; repeated in Statius, 168.  
 quis, as contracted form in Statius, 71.

## Index

- ratione, in Cicero and Lucretius, 144.
- scandere, accusative with in Statius, 104.
- si, elided in Statius, 75.
- sic, position of with negative in Statius, 176.
- similis, used with conditional clauses of comparison, *see* idem.
- socius, dative of person to be supplied with, in Statius, 130.
- spatium, in Cicero and Lucretius, 144.
- stella, in Cicero and Lucretius, 144.
- sumo, used in connection with medicine, 180.
- sunt (erant), omitted in Statius, 90.
- tam, position of with quam si = "as if" in Cicero, 203, 204, 205.
- tamquam si = "as if," expressing manner, *see* quam si; position of clause with when subordinate, in Cicero, 203, 205.
- te, beginning verse in Statius, 73.
- teneo, object to be supplied with, in Statius, 115.
- tibi, corruption of ibi or ubi in Statius, 103.
- umerus, use of in Statius, 66.
- ut si, in Cicero, secondary tenses of subjunctive with, 266 ff.; coördinate type of clause with, 226, 232, 244; indeterminate cases of, 227, 231; loosely attached clauses with, 228, 229, 244; primary tenses of subjunctive with, 229 ff.; expressing idea of pretense, 231, 245.
- vel, postponed in Statius, 134.
- vero, in Cicero and Lucretius, 144.
- virum, genitive plural in Statius, 126.
- vitro = glass-mosaic in Statius, 161.
- voti, in sense of devoti, in Statius, 127.
- votum = joy in Statius, 77.

## INDEX LOCORUM

- Ammianus. XXVII. 15, 159.
- Ampelius, 19, 62.
- Anth. Lat. ed. Meyer, 865, 170.  
cf. 5th Eclogue.
- Appian. B.C. i. 107, 62.
- Attius, 104.
- Caelius. apud Cic. ad Fam. VIII.  
1. 2, 2 note 1.
- Celsus. ii. 8, 133.
- Caesar. apud Cic. ad Att. X. 8.  
b. 1, 6 note 4, 7 note 6, 25 note 25, 44, 46 note 58.
- B.C. i. 9. 3, 43; 16. 2, 18 note 17, 24; 32. 1, 17; 32. 3, 33; 34. 1, 17; 54. 1, 20; 58. 2, 5, 22 note 22, 43; 71. 1, 41; 79. 2, 29; 79. 3, 7 note 6, 25 note 25.
- ii. 7. 3, 23; 14. 1, 27; 17. 4, 5, 6 note 4, 22 note 21, 44, 46 note 57; 33. 2, 43; 34. 2, 38; 36. 3, 24; 39. 4, 30; 41. 6, 31; 44. 2, 34.
- iii. 1. 2, 9; 11. 3, 37; 15. 6, 20, 22; 21. 5, 22; 22. 2, 12; 26. 2, 24; 31. 4, 15; 34. 2, 9; 36. 2, 25 note 24; 41. 5, 23; 43. 3, 42; 44. 5, 29 note 30; 45. 3, 9; 47. 2, 29; 47. 6, 29; 48. 2, 30; 50. 1, 31 note 34; 61. 2, 32; 67. 5, 36; 68. 3, 33; 69. 4, 38 note 44, 40. 42 note 47; 72. 2, 38 note 44; 74. 2, 33 note 37; 75. 4, 21; 77. 3, 35; 82. 4, 36; 84. 4, 31 note 33; 86. 3, 43; 87. 1, 38; 87. 5, 18 note 18; 87. 7, 6 note 4, 44; 88. 1, 21; 91. 4, 18 note 18; 93. 1, 16; 94. 2, 36; 94. 6, 18; 101. 1, 9, 37 note 42; 102. 7, 22; 111. 5, 27.
- B.G. i. 4. 3, 24; 11. 2, 17; 16. 5, 26 note 26; 16. 6, 43; 20. 5, 17; 22. 1, 23; 23. 1, 26; 25. 3, 31; 26. 1, 20, 21 note 20; 26. 2, 43; 26. 4, 21; 27. 2, 14; 32. 3, 28; 35. 2, 38 note 45; 40. 5, 5, 26, 42 note 48, 46 note 57; 40. 10, 40; 41. 5, 26; 42. 2, 39; 42. 4, 9, 28 note 29; 50. 3, 19; 50. 4, 31 note 33.

# Index

- ii. 2. 2, 20, 44 note 55; 13. 2, 15; 19. 5, 24, 28 note 29; 20. 1, 30; 34. 4, 38; 33. 4, 27; 33. 6, 33.
  - iii. 1. 1, 23; 1. 6, 9; 2. 1, 24; 2. 4, 40; 9. 2, 44; 15. 1, 31 note 35; 17. 5, 28 note 29; 20. 1, 24 note 23; 22. 4, 13; 28. 3, 34; 29. 2, 23.
  - iv. 6. 2, 18; 12. 1, 32; 12. 5, 20; 12. 6, 22; 15. 1, 12; 16. 1, 40; 25. 4, 8 note 18; 28. 2, 23; 29. 3, 32; 32. 1, 24; 33. 1, 43.
  - v. 1. 6, 18; 2. 2, 18; 16. 2, 43; 17. 2, 27; 17. 3, 36; 18. 2, 18 note 17; 18. 5, 34; 21. 3, 43; 21. 4, 18 note 16; 23. 5, 21; 26. 3, 14; 27. 11, 40 note 46; 31. 4, 35; 32. 2, 21; 35. 1–3, 30; 35. 5, 35; 44. 3, 18 note 18; 54. 1, 35; 55. 2, 35 note 39; 57. 1, 10.
  - vi. 2. 2, 10; 12. 1, 6, 44, 46 note 58; 12. 5, 16 note 15; 12. 6, 37 note 42; 16. 5, 43; 17. 3, 43; 18. 3, 44; 19. 3, 43; 24. 1, 25; 25. 4, 43; 27. 4, 43; 27. 5, 44; 31. 1, 36 note 40.
  - vii. 5. 4, 21; 6. 1, 9; 7. 4, 18 note 17; 9. 4, 17; 9. 5, 18 note 17; 12. 4, 24; 16. 3, 29; 17. 4, 31 note 33; 19. 3, 30 note 32; 26. 3, 44; 32. 2, 27; 35. 5, 5, 22 note 22, 46 note 57; 41. 2, 36 note 41; 52. 2, 28 note 28; 62. 4, 31; 76. 5, 42; 82. 2, 19, 20; 83. 8, 19; 85. 2–3, 37 note 42; 88. 3, 37.
- Cicero. Acad. Prior. ii. 11, 33, 231 note 95, 244 note 113; 14, 44, 212 note 111; 15. 48, 229, 18. 58, 193 note 18; 27. 88, 228 note 84; 28. 89, 195; 34. 109, 217 note 65; 34. 110, 235; 39. 123, 184; 39. 123, 215 note 60; 45. 139, 207.
- Arat. 337, 177.
- ad Att. i. 10. 6, 214 note 58, 225 note 80, 243 note 42; 16. 10, 222 note 73.
- iii. 13. 1, 232.
  - iv. 14. 1, 233; 19. 2, 233.
  - v. 13. 1, 206 note 44; 20. 7, 191, 239; 21. 14, 193 note 18.
  - vi. 1. 2, 161; 5. 1, 195, 202 note 36; 9. 3, 215 note 161.
- vii. 1. 7, 193 note 17; 4. 2, 216; 9. 1, 196; 17. 2, 193 note 18.
  - viii. 9. 1, 198; 16. 2, 204.
  - ix. 9. 4, 196; 10. 8, 199; 19. 2, 193 note 18.
  - xi. 21. 3, 232 note 98.
  - xii. 13. 1, 193 note 18, 201 note 33; 51. 1, 192.
  - xiii. 49. 1, 233; 51. 1, 233.
  - xiv. 10, 194; 14. 2, 224.
  - xvi. 2. 2, 108.
- Balb. 3. 8, 193 note 18; 10. 26, 193; 13. 36, 315, note 62.
- Brutus 1. 5, 242 note 14; 12. 48, 239 note 105; 16. 62, 228; 33. 125, 66 note 7; 83. 287, 230, 231; 85. 293, 184, 201.
- ad M. Brut. ii. 5. 3, 228 note 83.
- p. Caec. 1. 2, 213 note 57, 217; 6. 16, 187, 213 note 57, 219; 20. 58, 204; 21. 61. 205, 222 note 73, 225 note 80; 23. 64, 193 note 18; 27. 64, 195, 201 note 33; 31. 89, 204.
- in Caecil. 13. 43, 232, note 99.
- in Cat. i. 10. 26, 25.
- ii. 10. 21, 200 note 32.
  - iii. 3, 6, 2; 10. 23, 64, 66; 10. 24, 64.
- Cat. Mai. 4, 12, 216; 5. 15, 25; 6. 17, 232, 232 note 97; 7. 22, 239 note 104; 23. 82, 215.
- p. Clu. 3, 8, 223; 13. 37, 210, 239; 31. 86, 196; 40. 112, 193 note 18; 50. 138, 187 note 8, 218; 52. 143, 233; 62. 173, 198; 66. 187, 215.
- Cons. 1, 148, 149; 2, 152; 3, 149; 5, 151; 10, 149; 150; 11, 152; 12, 150, 153; 16, 146; 18, 152; 25, 152, 154; 26, 150, 151; 28, 146; 29, 146; 30, 150; 33, 149; 37, 152; 38, 148; 41, 152, 154; 45, 150; 46, 149, 152; 60, 151; 64, 153; 75, 146, 153; 112, 150; fr. iii. 153.
- de Div. ii. 1. 1, 196; 20. 45, 217; 21. 48, 187 note 8, 213 note 57; 26. 56, 187 note 8, 220; 58. 119, 224; 64. 131, 202; 64. 133; 231.
- de Dom. Sua. 6. 14, 213 note 57; 12. 31, 213 note 57; 12. 33, 204; 36. 96, 66. note 7.



## Index

- ad. Fam. ii. 9. 2, 214 note 59;  
14. 1, 206, 226 note 81; 16. 7,  
205.
- iii. 5. 4, 233; 6. 1, 196, 198  
note 26; 6. 2, 195; 13. 1, 216  
note 64.
- v. 16. 3, 193 note 18.
- vi. 4. 3, 193 note 18; 8. 2, 211,  
216; 12. 3, 223 note 77.
- vii. 3. 5, 195, 201 note 33; 20.  
1, 228 note 83.
- ix. 6. 3, 213 note 57, 219; 22.  
3, 223 note 77; 24. 1, 216 note  
64.
- xi. 17. 2, 200 note 32; 28. 2,  
234.
- xii. 29. 2, 193 note 18.
- xiii. 14. 2, 193 note 18; 21. 2,  
227; 33. 233; 43. 2, 206 note  
43, 233; 45. 185, 201.
- xv. 4. 8, 37; 14. 3, 193 note  
18; 14. 4, 184 note 3.
- xvi. 5. 1, 204.
- de Fato iii. 5, 187 note 8.
- de Fin. ii. 3. 7, 217 note 67; 6.  
17, 217 note 67; 7. 21, 235; 26.  
84, 200 note 32; 27. 87, 200  
note 32.
- iii. 3. 44, 193 note 18; 9. 31,  
199; 14. 46, 226 note 81; 14.  
48, 193 note 18.
- iv. 6. 14, 226 note 81; 12. 31,  
235, 241; 14. 36, 226, 243 note  
111; 24. 65, 232; 26. 72, 199  
note 27; 27. 76, 235 note 101.
- v. 1. 2 200 note 32; 9. 26, 223  
note 77; 12. 35, 229 note 88,  
230; 20. 56, 191; 31. 94, 213.
- p. Flacc. 38. 95, 199.
- de Har. Resp. 18. 39, 193 note  
18; 25. 54, 66 note 7.
- ad Her. ii. 13. 19, 234; 23. 45,  
235; 26. 40, 230 note 91; 26.  
42, 225 note 79; 29. 46, 230.
- iii. 2. 2, 230 note 91, 230 note  
94; 9. 17, 229 note 90; 18. 31,  
235; 20. 33, 230 note 91, 230  
note 93; 22. 37, 229 note 90.
- iv. 3. 4, 221; 28. 38, 222 note  
73; 32. 43, 230 note 93; 34.  
49, 229 note 90; 53. 66, 225  
note 79; 53. 67, 229 note 89;  
54. 67, 229 note 87.
- de Invent. i. 5. 7, 229 note 87,  
229 note 90; 14. 19, 230; 32.  
54, 234; 33. 56, 225 note 79;
49. 92, 230 note 94; 50. 93,  
228, 230 note 94; 50. 94, 229  
note 88; 54. 104, 234.
- ii. 1. 3, 242 note 111; 9. 28,  
229 note 90, 230 note 93; 18.  
55, 229 note 88; 25. 76, 225  
note 80; 30. 90, 226 note 81,  
228 note 85, 230 note 92, 244  
note 114; 30. 104, 229 note  
87; 43. 126, 225; 45. 133, 200;  
57. 172, 199.
- Lael. 4. 14, 199 note 29, 214,  
216, 222 note 73, 241; 14. 50,  
199 note 29; 16. 57, 184 note  
3; 16. 59, 228.
- de Leg. ii. 3. 6, 222 note 73; 5.  
13, 200; 22. 56, 193 note 17,  
239 note 106.
- iii. 10. 23, 193 note 18; 13.  
30, 216.
- de Leg. Agr. i. 4. 13, 220 note  
70; 5. 14, 220 note 70.
- ii. 12. 30, 202 note 34; 18. 47,  
209 note 49, 222 note 74; 20.  
51, 214 note 58; 21. 53, 214;  
25. 67, 193 note 18; 31. 85,  
217 note 65, 220 note 70.
- Limon. 147.
- Marius. 146, 150, 154.
- pro Milone 5. 13, 66 note 7; 6.  
15, 66 note 7; 7. 17, 187, 199,  
218; 7. 19, 217 note 65; 7. 20,  
66 note 7; 19. 51, 66 note 7;  
29, 79, 66 note 7; 31. 84, 217  
note 65; 35. 98, 66 note 7.
- p. Mur. 4. 10, 233; 36. 77, 224.
- de Nat. Deo. i. 419, 198, 8. 18,  
242 note 111; 35. 97, 204.
- ii. 43. 111, 214 note 59.
- iii. 3. 7, 209 note 50; 3. 8, 234;  
14. 36, 223; 31. 76, 231; 32.  
79, 200; 35. 86, 186.
- de Off. i. 7. 23, 204; 14. 42, 231;  
16. 51, 222; 25. 87, 227; 28.  
97, 228; 40. 144, 229 note 88;  
40. 145, 230.
- ii. 10. 35, 207.
- iii. 9. 38, 192 note 16; 13. 55,  
197, 204; 15. 62, 228 note 83;  
24. 93, 198; 27. 100, 195; 30.  
110, 212.
- de Opt. Gen. Orat. 7. 10, 228  
note 83.
- Orat. 24. 82, 201; 48. 162, 193.

# Index

- de Orat. i. 35, 161, 242 note 111;  
35, 162, 184 note 3; 53, 230,  
228 note 84.  
— ii. 49, 200, 196, 198.  
— iii. 3, 11, 65; 13, 79, 193 note  
18; 23, 88, 229 note 90; 31,  
122, 221; 53, 202, 225 note 79.  
Parad. iii. 1, 20, 192 note 19; 2,  
23, 199, 234.  
Part. Orat. 24, 84, 234; 38, 134,  
203.  
Phaen. 1, 146; 6, 148; 8, 148;  
13, 147; 15, 147; 22, 154; 26,  
154; 27, 147, 149; 29, 144; 31,  
148; 32, 149; 33, 148; 37, 153;  
39, 152; 40, 148; 47, 148; 52,  
153; 54, 149; 57, 149; 60, 147;  
61, 152; 69, 146, 147; 71, 145,  
148; 72, 154; 74, 149, 153; 80,  
147; 81, 149; 88, 152; 89, 152;  
90, 147; 93, 147; 95, 150; 99,  
148, 152; 100, 146; 104, 146,  
149; 106, 146; 108, 149; 110,  
148, 151; 111, 147; 112, 151;  
113, 151, 154; 116, 146; 120,  
147; 130, 153; 132, 150; 137,  
153; 145, 149; 146, 146, 147;  
151, 149; 154, 149; 157, 151;  
159, 148; 166, 146; 170, 150;  
175, 153; 177, 145, 152; 185,  
147; 186, 149, 150; 188, 149,  
152; 189, 148; 192, 148; 193,  
145, 149, 150; 194, 154; 196,  
152; 197, 154; 198, 146, 154;  
212, 145, 148; 213, 145; 215,  
152; 219, 151; 222, 148; 223,  
151; 225, 152, 153; 226, 153;  
227, 147; 228, 147, 150; 230,  
145; 231, 147; 232, 152, 154;  
233, 150, 152; 234, 150; 235,  
154; 236, 152; 237, 152, 153;  
240, 146; 245, 150, 151; 246,  
150; 247, 153; 250, 152; 252,  
151; 255, 148; 262, 151; 264,  
148; 268, 153; 271, 151; 275,  
150; 280, 153; 281, 152; 282,  
152; 287, 150; 288, 153; 289,  
149; 297, 147; 300, 146; 301,  
153; 305, 146; 312, 150; 313,  
151; 314, 152; 318, 153; 324,  
151; 327, 152; 329, 153; 330,  
150; 331, 148; 332, 147, 152;  
337, 152; 240, 153; 341, 147;  
342, 151; 345, 150; 349, 151;  
350, 145; 352, 148; 355, 150;  
356, 150; 359, 149, 150; 363,  
153; 364, 154; 365, 151; 369,  
147, 151, 154; 370, 150; 371,  
148; 372, 151; 375, 151; 380,  
146; 381, 150; 380, 151, 152;  
388, 150; 389, 148; 390, 151,  
153; 391, 149, 150; 393, 151;  
394, 149; 395, 153; 403, 151;  
405, 145, 151; 407, 151, 154;  
408, 149, 153; 410, 149; 417,  
153; 418, 151; 429, 146; 431,  
154; 433, 149, 153, 154; 435,  
154; 438, 149, 154; 447, 154;  
451, 146, 149; 447, 147; 449,  
150; 452, 146; 458, 147; 462,  
150; 466, 151; 472, 145, 150;  
473, 147; 475, 146; 478, 150;  
479, 151; fr. ii, 153; iii, 147,  
154; iv, 149; vi, 149; ix, 145,  
152; xiii, 148; xiv, 153; xv,  
150; xvi, 147, 149; xvii, 153,  
154; xxii, 146; xxiii, 151; xxv,  
148; xxvi, 154; xxvii, 148,  
153; xxxii, 145, 154.  
Phil. ii. 3, 7, 242 note 111; 11,  
27, 66 note 7; 18, 44, 242 note  
111; 23, 56, 215 note 62; 35,  
88, 66 note 7; 37, 95, 66 note  
7; 41, 106, 203.  
— iii. 8, 19, 66 note 7; 12, 30,  
66 note 7.  
— vi. 2, 4, 227; 4, 10, 205.  
— viii. 4, 11, 214 note 59.  
— ix. 5, 10, 200; 5, 12, 226; 6,  
13, 232.  
— x. 7, 15, 217 note 65.  
— xi. 2, 6, 217 note 65; 11, 26,  
200 note 32; 13, 32, 66 note 7.  
— xii. 7, 8, 209 note 53; 10, 25,  
66 note 7.  
— xiii. 19, 40, 187, 221.  
— xiv. 4, 11, 66 note 7.  
in Pis. 23, 55, 213 note 57; 41,  
99, 193 note 18, 201 note 33.  
p. Planc. 12, 28, 200 note 32; 23,  
55, 222 note 75, 223; 25, 60,  
195, 201 note 33; 25, 61, 187  
note 10; 25, 62, 220 note 70;  
27, 65, 239 note 106, 242 note  
111; 27, 66, 192; 29, 71, 220  
note 70.  
Progn. i, 150; ii, 153; iii, 150,  
151, 154; iv, 145, 148, 152; v,  
145, 148; vi, 145, 152; vii,  
145, 151; viii, 150.  
p. Quinct. 5, 19, 195.

# Index

- ad Quint. Frat. i. 1. 6. 17, 226  
note 81; 1. 2. 4. 14, 200 note  
32.  
— ii. 13. 2, 193 note 18.  
— iii. 2. 2, 202.  
p. Q. Rosc. 5. 15, 234.  
p. Rab. Perd. 6. 19, 232 note 99.  
post red. in Sen. 8. 20, 233.  
post red. ad Quir. 1. 4, 193 note  
18.  
de Re Pub. i. 6. 10, 199; 17. 28,  
225 note 79; 34. 51, 204, 227  
note 82, 242 note 110.  
— iii. 23, 34, 233; 33. 45, 185,  
188, 201.  
— iv. 10. 11, 192, 194 note 23.  
in Sall. 2. 4, 220.  
p. Scauro 16. 36, 200 note 32;  
16. 37, 193, 201 note 33.  
p. Sest. 12. 28, 194, 201 note 33;  
19. 44, 66 note 7; 23. 51, 66  
note 7; 28. 61, 187, 220; 32.  
69, 66 note 7; 67. 137, 197;  
67. 140. 66 note 7.  
p. Sex. Rosc. 7. 20, 26 note 26;  
32. 91, 202; 36. 102, 217.  
p. Sulla 13. 39, 202, 240; 18. 51,  
232; 19. 54, 213.  
Tim. 7. 23, 223 note 77.  
Top. 3. 15, 185 note 4, 193 note  
18. 4. 24, 229 note 89; 5. 27,  
229 note 89; 7. 31, 229; 7. 32,  
222.  
p. Tull. 12. 30, 193 note 18; 16.  
39, 224; 22. 51, 199.  
Tusc. Disp. i. 4. 8, 225; 7. 13,  
223 note 77; 7. 14, 217 note  
65; 22. 50, 217 note 65; 24.  
57, 184 note 3; 35. 85, 213;  
36. 86, 185; 38. 92, 216, 231;  
78. 116, 41.  
— ii. 7. 18, 184 note 3; 12. 29,  
185, 190; 14. 34, 3; 20. 47,  
209 note 48, 223 note 77.  
— iii. 5. 11, 217; 27. 65, 66 note  
7; 29. 71, 220 note 70.  
— iv. 11. 26, 223, 242 note 111,  
243 note 111; 18. 41, 231; 23.  
51, 228 note 84; 35. 76, 200.  
— v. 3. 9, 235 note 101; 11. 33,  
199 note 29; 26. 74, 230, 231.  
in Vat. 3. 7, 217.  
in Verr. ii. 1. 17. 44, 232 note  
99; 1. 27. 69, 196; 1. 39. 99,  
220 note 70; 2. 10. 27, 192; 2.  
17. 42, 196; 2. 30, 75, 209 note  
51; 2. 66. 160, 196; 2. 67. 161,  
196; 2. 74. 183, 215; 3. 87.  
203, 217 note 67; 3. 88. 204,  
225, 243 note 111; 3. 91. 213,  
193 note 18; 3. 95. 222, 225  
note 80; 4. 22. 79, 209 note  
52, 215, 243 note 111; 4. 60.  
200 note 32; 5. 43. 111, 215;  
5. 43. 113, 196; 5. 49. 129,  
210; 5. 66. 169, 187 note 8,  
217; 5. 71. 182, 222 note 73.  
Cicero. de petit. Cons. i. 2, 222  
note 74; xi. 45, 235.  
Dio 44. 28. 2, 63.  
Claudian. Bell. Gild. 7, 77.  
iv. Cons. Hon. pr. 18, 115; vi.  
68, 77.  
Rapt. Pros. i. 150, 129.  
Ennius. Ann. 91, 146; 128, 146;  
334, 147; 345, 150; 352, 146;  
374, 149; 396, 146; 455, 146;  
472, 145; 473, 150; 478, 148;  
481, 149; 505, 149; 530, 152;  
545, 151; 602, 148.  
Sc. 184, 148; 200, 148; 367, 147.  
I. 23, 145.  
Euripides. Suppl. 893, 97.  
Florus. ii. 2. 7, 62.  
Homer. Il. i. 250, 172; iii. 223,  
172.  
Horace. A.P. 163, 164.  
C. i. 1. 15, 179; 2. 1, 94.  
Epod. ii. 41, 158.  
Hyginus. Fab. 9, 156; 74, 89.  
John the Scot. De Divisione  
Naturae i. 49, 139.  
Julius Exuperantius. p. 4, 63.  
Justin. xli. 6. 9, 60; xlii. 1. 1, 60.  
Livy. i. 20, 175; ii. 37. 8, 119; vi.  
25.7, 120; viii. 3. 7, 62 note 2;  
xxi. 10. 4, 197; xxvi. 27. 8,  
197.  
Per. xc. 62.  
Lucan. iv. 488, 159.  
Lucilius. 40, 152; 51, 147; 105,  
153; 344, 147; 346, 147; 397,  
154; 436, 147; 456, 151; 527,  
153; 770, 151; 868, 148; 870,  
146; 987, 147; 993, 152; 1024,  
147; 1073, 153; 1094, 151;  
1141, 152; 1236, 148.  
Lucretius. For lines of first re-  
ference paralleled in Cicero,  
see table, 145-154.  
i. 10, 127; 175, 120; 378, 145;  
403, 146; 570, 146; 674, 172;



# Index

- 846, 147; 907, 147; 924, 146;  
988, 148; 1062, 153; 1087, 146.  
ii. 39, 145; 109, 146; 235, 146;  
264, 149; 299, 147; 377, 147;  
392, 146; 400, 146; 404, 146;  
414, 148; 424, 146; 462, 146;  
485, 147; 491, 145; 541, 147;  
610, 144; 654, 146; 707, 146;  
713, 146; 759, 146; 761, 147;  
857, 147; 907, 147; 978, 146;  
1008, 147; 1014, 147; 1033,  
148; 1073, 147; 1084, 147;  
1105, 146.  
iii. 14, 145; 25, 146; 62, 147;  
95, 148, 172; 117, 146; 138,  
149; 158, 146; 181, 146; 191,  
146; 198, 146; 201, 146; 213,  
149; 216, 150; 218, 148; 223,  
150; 227, 149; 258, 149; 261,  
147; 276, 149; 279, 150; 281,  
149; 309, 149; 320, 149; 350,  
145; 351, 149; 358, 146; 374,  
148; 389, 149; 396, 147; 399,  
147; 418, 146; 467, 156; 553,  
147; 564, 149; 572, 147; 588,  
146; 608, 149; 636, 149; 735,  
147; 764, 149; 799, 149; 854,  
148; 903, 145; 1055, 146.  
iv. 71, 147; 73, 147; 81, 151;  
95, 146; 97, 147; 102, 150;  
143, 149; 163, 147; 167, 148;  
185, 148; 203, 145; 204, 147;  
239, 149; 268, 151; 292, 149;  
298, 150; 310, 146; 377, 147;  
383, 147; 447, 150; 449, 148;  
456, 150; 512, 148; 542, 148;  
557, 150; 595, 145; 608, 148;  
625, 146; 642, 146; 643, 147;  
659, 146; 674, 150; 689, 147;  
734, 146; 742, 147; 749, 146;  
751, 147; 754, 147; 768, 145;  
777, 146; 780, 146; 793, 151;  
811, 146; 836, 151; 843, 146;  
863, 146; 882, 147; 887, 149;  
905, 150; 987, 149; 1008, 151;  
1021, 149; 1037, 147; 1042,  
149; 1054, 149; 1104, 149;  
1111, 149; 1143, 151; 1171,  
147; 1214, 146; 1231, 149;  
1233, 146; 1276, 146; 1283,  
145.  
v. 64, 145; 91, 145; 104, 147;  
122, 146; 206, 145; 211, 146;  
237, 146; 261, 145; 273, 149;  
278, 150; 285, 146; 345, 148;  
397, 149; 400, 150; 405, 148;  
451, 151; 465, 148, 151; 486,  
151; 498, 152; 530, 152; 531,  
146; 543, 149; 556, 150; 564,  
152; 580, 148; 584, 151; 629,  
147; 640, 152; 657, 146; 666,  
145; 684, 149; 693, 152; 698,  
146; 719, 151; 741, 152; 757,  
151; 772, 145; 779, 148; 791,  
152; 819, 147; 837, 146; 855,  
146; 860, 146; 906, 151; 910,  
147; 931, 146; 943, 146; 970,  
171; 975, 150; 976, 151; 999,  
148; 1002, 149; 1016, 148;  
1099, 150; 1160, 147; 1181,  
146; 1199, 145; 1204, 148;  
1213, 146; 1241, 145; 1242,  
146; 1344, 147; 1377, 148;  
1389, 147; 1437, 152; 1455,  
147.  
vi. 9, 148; 10, 150; 86, 153; 91,  
146; 113, 146; 184, 151; 214,  
145; 215, 148; 219, 145; 239,  
149; 252, 151; 285, 150; 313,  
146; 316, 150; 350, 146; 386,  
150; 389, 148; 406, 150; 411,  
146; 423, 145; 446, 154; 524,  
154; 530, 151; 540, 146; 549,  
150; 559, 147; 588, 146; 612,  
148; 649, 151; 660, 152; 686,  
154; 723, 149; 760, 148; 773,  
147; 797, 146; 801, 151; 804,  
151; 815, 151; 829, 152; 836,  
154; 863, 146; 886, 146; 890,  
148; 903, 146; 906, 145; 908,  
148; 976, 146; 1000, 145;  
1006, 151; 1008, 149; 1101,  
153; 1166, 146; 1181, 151;  
1197, 153; 1215, 146; 1267,  
146; 1282, 146.  
Manilius. ii. 581, 127; 729, 153.  
iv. 14, 61; 16, 61; 22, 61; 23, 61.  
Martial. iv. 1. 8, 118; 64. 19, 121;  
86. 8, 132.  
v. 37. 4, 128; 25. 13, 97.  
vii. 7. 5, 124.  
viii. 51. 12, 120.  
ix. 2. 9, 128; 13. 5, 129; 14. 1,  
127; 43. 1, 130.  
xii. 6. 9, 172.  
xiii. 23, 132; 28, 132.  
xiv. 31, 134; 213, 83.  
Maximian. iv. 11, 179.  
Ovid. Am. i. 7. 15, 110; iii. 427,  
93.  
Ep. x. 76, 110.  
Ibis 63, 161.

# Index

- Ex Pont. i. 4. 35, 106; iii. 4. 58, 106; iv. 2. 19, 168; 4. 37, 128.  
Fasti ii. 181, 93; iii. 473, 110; v. 474, 132; 598, 166; vi. 507, 73.  
M. vi. 312, 156; x. 538, 78.  
Rem. 396, 78.  
Tr. iii. 10. 28, 106; 13. 17, 181; v. 11. 27, 106.  
Paulus Fest. 97. 10, 108.  
Persius. iv. 30, 133.  
Petronius. 124, 289, 166.  
Plautus. Amph. 198 ff., 190.  
Asin. 427, 188.  
Aul. 369, 190; 719, 188.  
Cure. 51, 207.  
Mil. 481 ff., 207; 796 ff., 189; 1181, 189.  
Pers. 356, 193 note 18.  
Pseud. 631 ff., 212.  
Pliny. viii. 52, 157.  
ix. 126, 136; 127, 106; 133, 106.  
xx. 93 156.  
xxiii. 84, 133.  
xxxv. 6, 96; 83, 129.  
xxviii. 168, 133; 181, 133.  
Pliny, Elder. N. H. vii. 36. 122, 62; 53. 186, 62.  
Pliny, Younger. Ep. ii. 20. 9, 25.  
Plutarch. Pompey 16. 62.  
Sulla 10. 65 note 4.  
Propertius. ii. 1. 9, 179.  
Prudentius. Cath. v. 22, 134.  
Rutilius. Itin. i. 163, 92.  
Sallust. B.C. 46. 4, 10 note 10.  
Serib. Larg. 201, 133.  
Seneca. Dial. xi. 5. 1, 98.  
Herc. F. 215, 115.  
de Ira ii. 33. 1, 224.  
ad Marciam de Consolatione 21. 6, 60.  
N.G. 1. 17. 8, 113.  
Silius Italicus. i. 208, 92; v. 470, 78; x. 587, 117.  
Statius. Ach. i. 68, 182; 103, 125; 150, 106; 172, 102; 183, 157; 196, 166; 281, 161; 289, 169; 312, 115; 352, 166; 391, 87; 408, 125; 588, 102; 616, 129.  
ii. 93, 182; 95, 88, 166; 120, 170; 121, 164; 239, 158; 274, 73; 313, 75; 332, 164; 357, 158; 410, 159.  
Silvae. For main line references *see* text of *Notes*.  
—i. Praef. 15, 69.  
—i. 1. 15, 71; 17, 119; 20, 69; 26, 75; 28, 105, 163; 40, 71, 115, 176; 51, 92; 58, 115; 65, 122; 66, 103; 71, 99; 78, 167; 82, 70; 102, 105, 104; 106, 119; 107, 163, 181.  
—i. 2. 2, 157; 4. 116; 14, 111, 171; 33, 169; 36, 74, 74; 43, 70; 44, 70, 75; 53, 73; 55, 167; 61, 113; 68, 158; 78, 124; 80, 72; 82, 167, 181; 83, 112; 86, 70, 176; 98, 173; 99, 116; 100, 74; 102, 74; 108, 126; 119, 124; 148, 106; 150, 71, 80; 160, 99; 161, 78; 171, 161; 178, 117; 179, 71; 180, 82; 187, 117; 204, 75; 212, 70; 213, 71; 219, 114; 221, 74, 79; 223, 74; 226, 74, 79; 227, 74, 79; 229, 172; 235, 87; 250, 104; 260, 94; 267, 116, 122; 273, 94, 176; 277, 82.  
—i. 3. 12, 113; 16, 92; 20, 161; 26, 75; 37, 91; 41, 71, 126; 51, 129; 90, 160; 91, 114; 102, 130.  
—i. 4. 10, 128, 156, 181; 13, 181; 20, 89, 101; 29, 156; 41, 77, 176; 43, 166; 47, 161; 52, 108; 61, 126; 68, 88; 69, 172; 77, 107; 82, 82; 95, 103, 112; 95, 117; 113, 166; 128, 70.  
—i. 5. 16, 161; 23, 91; 42, 166; 45, 128; 53, 70; 59, 102; 60, 70.  
—i. 6. 39, 117; 41, 176; 54, 123, 164; 57, 83; 68, 99; 83, 99; 93, 103; 98, 82.  
—i. 7. 63, 71; 72, 71.  
—ii. 1. 2, 85; 8, 85; 10. 70; 17, 123; 20, 180; 21, 85; 27, 70, 85; 28, 130; 31, 78; 33, 87; 34, 85; 40, 97; 58, 72, 130; 63, 79; 66, 166; 78, 73; 83, 83; 88, 75; 113, 132; 120, 70, 102; 122, 182; 138, 81; 150, 73, 132, 164; 162, 174; 168, 71; 173, 103; 184–185, 90; 186, 167; 192, 169; 198, 162; 203, 104, 169; 204, 99, 134; 209, 160; 214, 94; 218, 108; 219, 166; 226, 164; 228, 71.  
—ii. 2. 4, 131; 11, 93, 123; 14, 87, 107; 19, 103; 25, 79, 92; 25–28, 74; 28, 105; 35, 93; 45, 108; 47, 155; 66, 103; 67, 129;

# Index

- 85, 109; 89, 80; 90, 74, 91;  
92, 74 94, 156; 95, 132; 108,  
172; 138, 176; 199, 85.
- ii. 3. 3, 159; 6, 104; 7, 165; 9,  
71; 12, 123; 15, 93; 20, 105;  
55, 166; 77, 126; 136, 110.
- ii. 4. 5, 169; 30, 124; 33, 165;  
36, 102.
- ii. 5. 5, 94; 16, 175; 20, 170;  
21, 124.
- ii. 6. 1, 181; 4, 124; 10, 110;  
13, 86, 109; 20, 156, 181; 45,  
132; 46, 163; 65, 114; 67, 76;  
74, 99; 75, 129; 81, 94; 85,  
71; 92, 156.
- ii. 7. 22, 73; 31, 71, 166; 36,  
104; 38, 102, 182; 75, 178; 84,  
96; 94, 108; 96, 118; 98, 176;  
107, 100, 124; 108, 174; 111,  
100; 113, 100; 114, 78; 128,  
129, 160.
- iii. 1. 14, 165; 18, 105; 19,  
164; 20, 72; 23, 165; 30, 155;  
38, 125; 44, 96; 46, 109; 62,  
155; 71, 124; 72, 95, 164, 176;  
79, 77; 86, 159; 90, 182; 91,  
110; 102, 103; 110, 88; 114,  
169; 124, 163; 130, 103; 132,  
122; 143, 103; 152, 121; 154,  
169; 164, 169; 175, 102; 178,  
166; 182, 126.
- iii. 2. 33, 108; 35. 87; 51, 176;  
64, 175; 78; 105; 107, 178;  
129, 75; 176, 142, 104; 204, 92.
- iii. 3. 14, 71; 22, 87; 25, 99;  
43, 172; 45, 88; 52, 99; 58,  
156; 64, 181; 65, 161; 82, 87;  
88, 112; 106, 158; 115, 118;  
130, 103; 133, 171, 179; 137,  
104; 154, 127; 158, 124; 165,  
104; 177, 70, 182; 178, 115;  
185, 182; 196, 115; 201, 130;  
204, 161, 168.
- iii. 4. 1, 113; 6, 113; 7, 130;  
17, 114, 181; 28, 99; 31, 113;  
39, 132; 53, 156; 56, 178; 57,  
159, 167, 181; 62, 75; 65, 122,  
182; 76, 104; 81, 113; 97, 83;  
99, 176; 103, 92.
- iii. 5. 1, 130; 13, 80; 14, 166;  
22, 114; 24, 155; 25, 119, 175,  
182; 26, 114; 28, 128; 29, 111;  
30, 173; 36, 107; 43, 115; 45,  
115, 110; 48, 170; 52, 73, 115;  
54, 178; 57, 176; 59, 125; 61,  
132; 62, 156; 63, 109; 69, 156;  
70, 74; 71, 110; 74, 158; 75,  
170; 78, 160; 80, 72; 87, 128;  
88, 124; 96, 96; 107, 130; 119,  
118.
- iii. 9. 80, 119.
- iv. 1. 11, 167; 17, 112, 118;  
29, 119; 36, 117.
- iv. 2. 14, 112; 15, 117; 17,  
119, 176; 23, 69; 30, 162; 37,  
124; 39, 159; 42, 162.
- iv. 3. 3, 78; 13, 74; 27, 121;  
36, 176; 47, 164; 62, 71, 167;  
63, 181; 64, 178; 76, 115; 89,  
121; 94, 173; 104, 182; 107,  
121; 119, 177; 124, 79; 130,  
117; 134, 74; 139, 119; 145,  
174; 149 ff., 92; 161, 103.
- iv. 4. 2, 93; 21, 176; 22, 117;  
39, 117, 162; 50, 130; 51, 124;  
53, 179; 55, 124; 56, 94; 61,  
170; 71, 110, 168; 76, 102,  
182; 77, 117; 86, 119; 87, 115;  
95, 163.
- iv. 5. 7, 102; 10, 125; 46, 75,  
170; 78, 173.
- iv. 6. 24, 176; 25, 126; 28, 71;  
31, 109; 46, 78; 51, 95; 59, 76;  
65, 71, 182; 76, 103, 130; 83,  
102; 85, 110; 89, 174; 91, 130.
- iv. 7. 28, 158; 50, 159; 54, 71,  
117.
- iv. 8. 8, 176; 11, 125; 14, 169;  
15, 105; 17, 163; 26, 102; 34,  
158; 36, 132; 45, 132; 51, 72;  
59, 158.
- iv. 9. 19, 108; 21, 111; 28, 83;  
47, 131; 50, 111; 97, 157.
- iv. 16. 50, 71.
- v. 1. 8, 129; 10, 71; 18, 182;  
30, 115; 37, 112; 42, 74; 43,  
74; 46, 73; 52, 76; 61, 134; 64,  
118; 81, 108; 84, 118, 164; 93,  
88; 111, 69; 113, 176; 115, 75;  
119, 169; 105, 124; 125, 124;  
144, 105, 163; 146, 171; 155,  
156; 178, 104; 179, 98; 188,  
169; 191, 162; 192, 176; 194,  
130; 203, 87; 245, 71; 261, 99.
- v. 2. 11, 85; 12, 125; 19, 117;  
40, 76; 44, 165; 46, 167; 51,  
75; 56, 111; 66, 166; 71, 94,  
97; 102, 159; 103, 104; 113,  
75, 95; 118, 166; 131, 92, 161;  
148, 83, 169; 157, 88; 164,  
176; 177, 79, 160.



## Index

- v. 3, 7, 126; 10, 170; 13, 111;  
19, 94; 32, 179; 36, 110; 40,  
70; 42, 70; 45, 73; 46, 174;  
54, 174; 61, 103; 73, 124; 78,  
94; 84, 94; 86, 74; 98, 71; 99,  
78; 100, 71; 101, 156; 105,  
179; 107, 126; 116, 108; 127,  
93; 132, 126; 147, 76; 153,  
163, 165; 157, 111; 161, 128,  
167; 178, 174; 188 ff., 74; 198,  
117; 207, 156; 210, 178; 211,  
71; 219, 71, 132, 163; 240,  
156; 245, 176; 248, 72; 258,  
111, 175; 262, 167; 277, 106;  
280, 126; 285, 172.
- v. 4, 14, 99.
- v. 5, 22, 104; 29, 86; 38, 167;  
40, 167; 45, 98; 53, 156; 58,  
166; 59, 99; 74, 119.
- Theb. 188, 169.
- i. 50, 174; 177, 88; 188, 101;  
219, 158; 225, 108; 251, 120;  
257, 107; 283, 75; 284, 172;  
314, 125; 358, 122; 405, 101;  
413, 166; 420, 165; 444, 163;  
501, 108; 572, 174; 608, 111;  
620, 162; 649, 112; 671, 122;  
696, 118; 709, 173;
- ii. 20, 176; 32, 108; 43, 92;  
46, 169; 141, 79; 204, 156;  
240, 162; 249, 94; 266, 101;  
360, 72; 404, 176; 437, 96;  
462, 165; 513, 88; 603, 125;  
640, 155; 655, 111; 684, 108;  
730, 106.
- iii. 31, 168; 38, 167; 128, 75;  
134, 118; 151, 182; 175, 107;  
176, 182; 183, 111; 210, 174;  
230, 169; 232, 127; 265, 111;  
271, 168; 320, 159; 378, 170;  
454, 167; 473, 168; 508, 176;  
510, 159; 519, 169; 522, 159;  
530, 164; 577, 77; 593, 122;  
627, 170; 628, 167.
- iv. 1, 101; 60, 107; 94, 159;  
133, 72; 226, 118; 251, 252,  
97; 278, 171; 430, 176; 467,  
114; 491, 76; 579, 170; 602,  
169; 604, 95; 623, 110; 631,  
108; 664, 159; 687, 122; 715,  
167; 744, 160; 801, 78; 823,  
167.
- v. 62, 171; 90, 163; 107, 174;  
113, 76; 167, 158; 194, 171;  
407, 159; 251, 111, 159; 271,  
125; 364, 158; 393, 122; 443,  
110; 455, 156; 483, 162; 517,  
89; 527, 171; 539, 105; 550,  
162; 576, 125; 595, 94; 677,  
77; 693, 167; 750, 121; 753,  
75.
- vi. 63, 86; 73, 179; 83, 180;  
87, 70; 88, 175; 117, 122; 123,  
121; 151, 121; 172, 110; 212,  
75; 233, 159; 234, 75; 299,  
91; 411, 91, 159; 469, 125;  
481, 115; 493, 162; 576, 94;  
622, 111; 706, 158; 714, 157;  
731, 167; 755, 129; 776, 125;  
779, 125; 802, 169; 838, 157;  
844, 126; 888, 125; 896, 132.
- vii. 71, 132; 95, 179; 112,  
167; 120, 174; 170, 167; 224,  
77; 230, 124; 340, 111; 385,  
96; 402, 115; 566, 157; 584,  
114; 599, 167; 615, 122; 651,  
131; 689, 182; 694, 111; 708,  
159; 725, 73; 727, 125; 795,  
167.
- viii. 28, 158; 100, 87; 102,  
180; 132, 125; 249, 165; 250,  
70; 290, 125; 312, 125; 374,  
167; 388, 175; 412, 167; 429,  
172; 441, 166; 487, 113; 515,  
120; 562, 156; 596, 167; 614,  
165; 633, 114; 690, 174.
- ix. 91, 92; 151, 174; 243, 115;  
254, 122; 267, 166; 332, 166;  
422, 107; 505, 125; 530, 159;  
644, 159; 675, 75; 705, 86;  
767, 110; 770, 105; 821, 123;  
876, 107; 900, 179.
- x. 28, 123; 63, 182; 83, 91;  
95, 122; 108, 94; 115, 125;  
135, 123; 254, 119; 255, 86;  
274, 160; 305, 108; 346, 123;  
357, 89; 370, 73; 382, 108;  
391, 167; 410, 101; 427, 105;  
445, 179; 463, 123; 497, 132;  
538, 159; 541, 164; 542, 164;  
596, 168; 633, 167; 674, 171;  
715, 115; 739, 123; 758, 91;  
819, 164; 858, 168.
- xi. 140, 123; 195, 105; 232,  
121; 314, 89; 320, 94; 327,  
159; 335, 164; 449, 125; 490,  
89.
- xii. 1, 108; 26, 115; 56, 107;  
75, 182; 107, 169; 167, 164;  
245, 177; 246, 125; 285, 110;  
392, 121; 422, 123; 483, 88;  
530, 75; 537, 115; 548, 87;

# *Index*

- 659, 162; 758, 159; 809, 119.  
 Sueius. i. 3, 152.  
 Suetonius. Aug. 10. 1, 59; 11, 189;  
 13. 2, 59; 35. 1, 59; 66. 2, 59;  
 95, 59.  
 Cal. 12. 3, 59; 23. 3, 59; 24. 3,  
 59; 57. 2, 59.  
 Claud. 11. 3, 59; 29. 2, 59.  
 Dom. 8. 4, 59; 14. 4, 59.  
 Galba 9.2, 59.  
 Jul. 3, 59; 5, 59; 14. 2, 59; 20.  
 5, 59; 36, 59; 74. 1, 59.  
 Nero 3. 1, 59; 26. 2, 59; 33. 1,  
 59; 34. 5, 59; 35. 5, 59; 49.  
 2, 59.  
 Otho 1. 3, 59.  
 Tib. 11, 189; 60, 59.  
 Tit. 1, 59; 9. 1, 59.  
 Vit. 10. 2, 59; 14. 1, 59.  
 Vit. Plin., 59.  
 Tacitus. An. ii. 52. 5, 30 note 32;  
 53, 103.  
 Terence. Eun. 61 ff., 200 note 30;  
 276, 177.  
 Valerius Maximus. ii. 8. 7, 62, 66.  
 Velleius Paterculus. ii. 19, 65 note  
 4.  
 Virgil. Aen. i. 358-359, 38; v. 149,  
 77; vi. 166, 103; 416, 176;  
 479, 97; 647, 179; ix. 168, 70;  
 473, 157.  
 Bueol. ii. 53, 164.  
 Georg. i. 344, 87; ii. 60, 120;  
 112, 93; iv. 464 ff., 160.  
 Vitruvius. 1. 5, 133.  
 Zonaras. x. 2, 63.

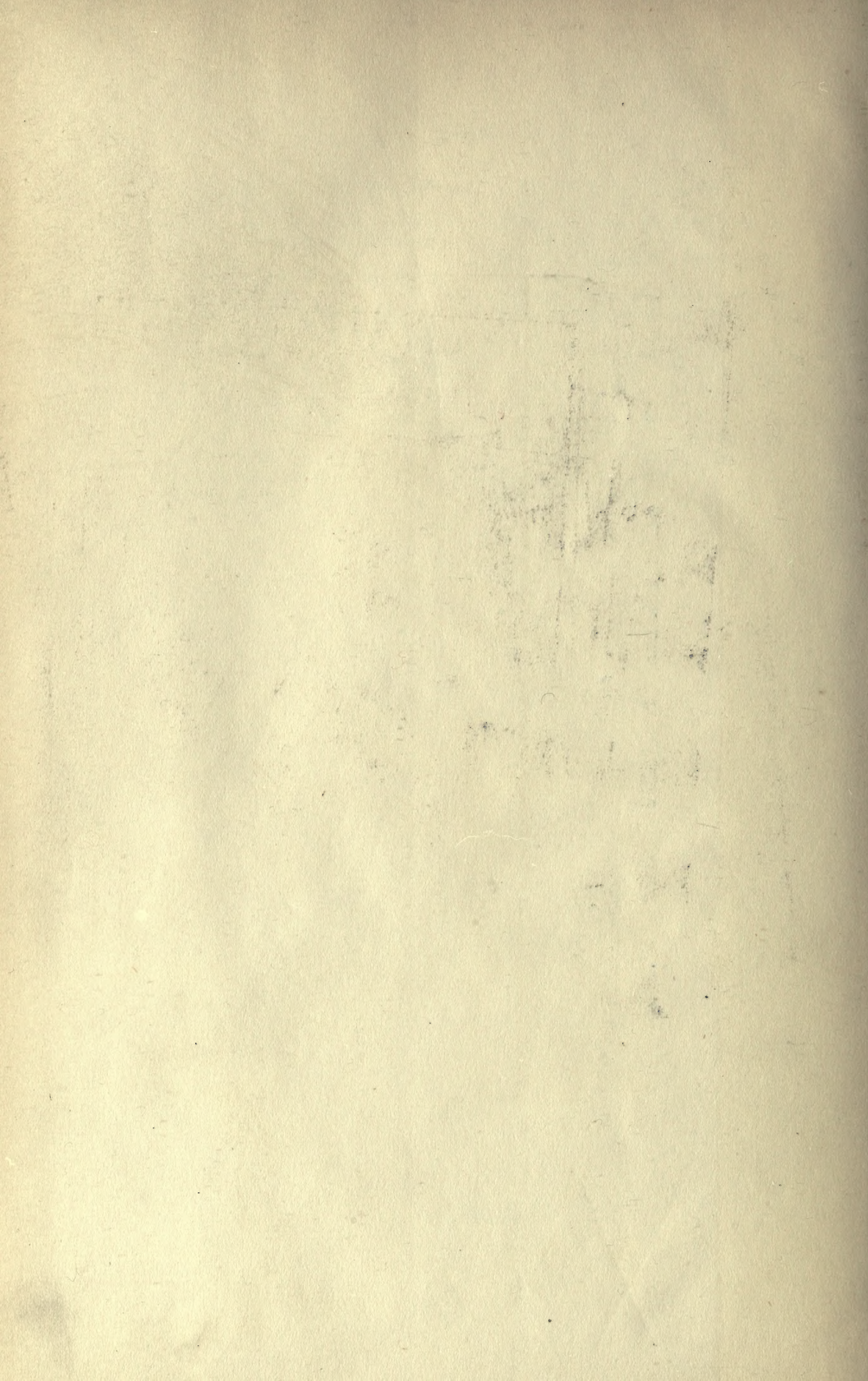














PA  
25  
C3  
v.5

California. University  
University of California  
publications in classical  
philology

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH



